



Kaipara te Oranganui

**KAIPARA
DISTRICT**

Two Oceans Two Harbours

Kaipara District Council Open Briefing Agenda

Date: Wednesday 7 April 2021
Time: 9.30 am
Location: Conference Room
Northern Wairoa War Memorial Hall
37 Hokianga Road
Dargaville

Elected Members: Mayor Dr Jason Smith
Deputy Mayor Anna Curnow
Councillor Victoria del la Varis-Woodcock
Councillor Karen Joyce-Paki
Councillor Jonathan Larsen
Councillor Mark Vincent
Councillor Peter Wethey
Councillor David Wills
Councillor Eryn Wilson-Collins

*For any queries regarding this meeting please contact
the Kaipara District Council on (09) 439 7059*

Wednesday, 7 April, 2021

9:30 am

Conference Room, Northern Wairoa Memorial Hall, Dargaville

	Pages
1. Te Tai Tokerau Water Trust	2
2. Response to Notice of Motion from Cr Jonathan Larsen	6
To be circulated separately from this agenda. This item was circulated on 6 April 201 at 1.04 pm.	
3. 2021 Representation Review – April Update	50
4. Long Term Plan 2021 – 2031 Update	58
5. District Plan Review – April 2021 Update	60
6. Draft Stormwater Drainage Bylaw	80
7. Draft Wastewater Drainage Bylaw	102
8. Review - Policy on Dogs and Dog Management Bylaw	166
9. Kaihu Water Treatment Plant and Truck Filler	168
10. Kaipara Spaces and Places Plan	184
11. Mangawhai Community Plan – Transition to a New Way of Working	262
12. Mangawhai Network Operating Framework	268

Te Tai Tokerau Water Trust

Meeting: Council Briefing
Date of meeting: 07 April 2021
Reporting officer: Matt Smith, Infrastructure Planning Manager

Purpose | Ngā whāinga

To provide Council with an update on progress towards creating a community scale water storage and distribution scheme near Te Kopuru.

Context | Horopaki

The principal objective of the Trust project is to develop storage reservoirs and water delivery for two schemes within Northland that would enable a shift towards sustainable higher-value horticultural land uses which will lift the wellbeing of local communities, whilst caring for the environment.

The areas identified for development are near Kaikohe in the Mid North and on the northern Pouto peninsula, south of Dargaville. The schemes will provide infrastructure to develop approximately 7000ha of new horticulture, significantly increasing Northland's area in horticultural production.

The project has suffered some minor setbacks within the Kaipara District due to unfavourable ground conditions, but an option is currently in progress that looks promising and is set to be delivered by 2021/2022.

Kaipara District Council have included investment to connect to the reservoir through the construction of a water treatment system at Te Kopuru and a connection to the Dargaville System.

Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

As council is aware the above water scheme is in the process of consenting and construction with stage 1 set to start within the next 3 months.

Whilst the scheme is not primarily set to provide water for municipal services, there is the option for council to connect to the scheme and to secure a raw water source that will benefit the communities of Dargaville, Bayllys, Te Kopuru and possibly Glinks Gully. Councils focus is about water resilience and being able to mitigate the effects of drought, now and into the future.

The TTWST have confirmed that to be able to access the water shares will need to be purchased, this is currently identified at \$25,000 per 3,000cu.m of water, for the 300,000 cu.m of water desired this will be an indicative cost to council of \$2,500,000. This cost is calculated on the value recoverable for the costs of the scheme construction, very similar to a Development Contribution and would guarantee council the volume of water indicated.

There would also be a yearly annual charge, this would be to cover operational costs such as depreciation of assets, interest repayments etc. An indicative cost of \$1200 per 3,000cu.m of water annually or \$0.4 per cu.m of water, this is currently proposed as a volumetric charge; Council currently recovers its cost through volumetric charges at approx. \$3.42 per cu.m. there is also an option of securing priority rights to the water with a 5% - 10% increase on the annual volumetric charge, the annual charge would also be susceptible to an increase to recover costs if there are not enough users in the system to cover the interest charges at the outset.

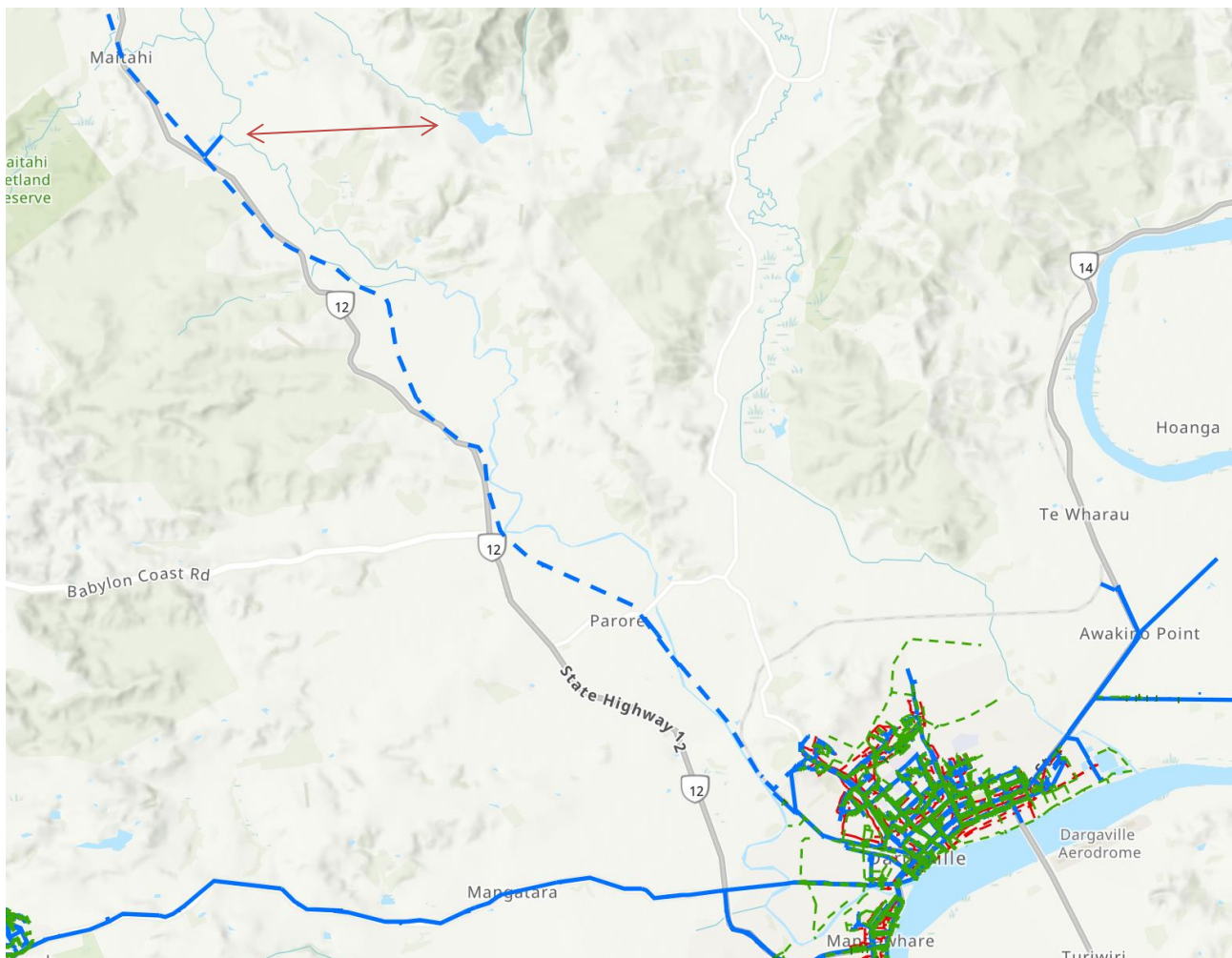
There are benefits to the scheme that will be outlined in a paper to council fully once we have been able to explore options, but the most significant is the ability for the scheme to expand as more users buy into the scheme, with the fully constructed scheme incorporating a string of connected dams, and harvesting water from as far afield as the Kaihu.

Council has identified an agreement in principal with the scheme, but there are further investigations required to be able to bring a decision paper to council, such as:

- Cost benefit analysis, of the scheme and all soft benefits including benefits to other communities,
- Payment and costs share options,
- Funding options from external agencies,
- Cost share with interested local parties,
- Benefits of full control vs scheme participation,
- Investigation, design, and cost analysis of alternative construction options.

Council has currently included \$2,100,000 within the Long-Term Plan budgets. If approved in the 2021 Long Term Plan, a Detailed Business Case will be developed which will provide clarification of costs and benefits. The full costs to council and the community will not be realised until a full investigation has been completed on the option decided by the council, and the apportioning of costs with other external and local interested parties has been agreed.

The Business Case will also assess an alternative option which is for the existing reservoir at 700 Opanake Road, Parore (Lot 1 DP 513991). This connection would allow for water to be pumped from the intakes on the Kaihu River when extraction from the river is favourable, and drawn from the dam in periods of drought. Costs have not been calculated at this stage however investigations are underway.



Next steps | E whaiake nei

- Funds approved in LTP 21-32 utilised to completed investigations and cost analysis.
- Final Decision paper to council no later than April 2022.

Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga

- Presentation delivered by Te Tai Tokerau Water Trust,

Notice of Motion – Mangawhai Community Wastewater Scheme

Meeting: Council Briefing
Date of meeting: 7 April 2021
Reporting officer: Sue Davidson, GM Sustainable Growth

Purpose | Ngā whāinga

This purpose is to respond to Councillor Larsen's Notice of Motion and to provide clarification on the future capacity of the Mangawhai Community Wastewater scheme (MCWWS).

The key issues in the Notice of Motion to cover are Debt Outstanding and Capacity of the Scheme.

Context | Horopaki

Kaipara is the fastest growing district and Council has to forecast growth for its district and for connections to the wastewater treatment plant. When the plant was constructed the maximum connections forecast by Beca was used as the formula to calculate the then capital contributions with the balance being attributed to debt and development contributions. Increased capital expenditure and a new number of connections are forecast in the Long Term Plan 2021-2031.

Councillor Larsen has put forward a Notice of Motion and this is attached.

Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

Debt Outstanding

Kaipara selected a land based disposal system for its wastewater system and this made it an expensive but extremely environmentally friendly system.

The original cost of the plant covered:

- Treatment plant
- Storage tanks, blower room, sludge tank, aeration basins
- Cass tanks (which were subsequently upgraded to new plant and sand filters)
- Lab and office
- Odour control unit
- Pump Stations -18
- Reticulation - 112 km
- Farm Browns Road - irrigation field

There have been additions since 2012 primarily in reticulation and minor plant.

What is Councils debt profile for this scheme?

The scheme had \$58million of debt in 2012 and detail of who this was allocated to, along with the situation detailed:

Who will this debt be recouped from?	Original Debt 2012	Current Outstanding	Comments
Existing Properties that connected, or capable of being connected, and opted not to pay the full capital contribution in 2012.	13.4m	9.6m	The debt timeline to be repaid depends on what the specific ratepayer decided they want to repay - ranges from 23 years to 31 years. Ratepayers who have paid their capital contribution won't have this debt - it is only those that chose to pay the capital contribution over time. Those that chose A3 and A4 debt (over a shorter period) have already been repaid.
Future property developers / subdivision	26.2m	24.9m	At 30 June audited accounts state this balance is \$24.867m.
District wide general rates debt, charged to every ratepayer	18.4m	0	This has now been fully repaid from proceeds from OAG, GST refunds, and property sales.
Total	\$58m	\$34.5m	

The investment plan for the MCWWS has changed since the first roadmap developed for the scheme. There have been renewals and upgrades to pumps and the aerators over the last couple of years. Key expenditure has also been incurred for new reticulation to connect new subdivisions to the scheme.

Future Capital Expenditure

Balance Tank 2021

The final LTP includes the balance tank which improves operations and is future proofed to be changed into a treatment chamber, along with improved odour controls and inlet screen. The balance tank will moderate the flow to the treatment plant at peak times and reduce the demand on the aeration system. In 2021 the balance tank will be installed (approximately \$2.5m funded from development contributions and debt) to extend capacity of the current wastewater system. In later years further expenditure of \$2.5m is forecast (primarily 2026-2027) to extend capacity, all funded from development contributions.

Reticulation 21-31

A big investment is provision for disposal through a connection to the golf club land for irrigation and the replacement of the pipe from the plant to the reservoir at Browns Road which requires a bigger diameter to cater for flows. In addition, there is further reticulation for new subdivisions occurring.

Treatment Plant 21-31

Design for what expansion will be required will start in 2021/22 and allow for a number of options to manage growth. \$10m has been provided for this. One action is to provide for an increase in

membrane filters to accommodate growth. The preferred options if the membrane filter system allows us to reuse more water which subsequently reduces the risk of needing to go to an outfall pipe or buy another farm.

In the 30 years of the infrastructure Strategy council has allowed for another \$10m of investments which will increase the plant to around 7000 connections (with the provision of additional filters) and these works will future proof Council, in terms of providing sufficient space.

From this Council can see that planning for the future is robust and most of the expenditure will be funded by development contributions.

A copy of the information given by GM Infrastructure at the Plan Change 78 Hearing is attached.

Will payments be satisfactory in the future to recoup the debt owed by development contributions?

As part of the planning for this Long Term Plan, engineers look at:

- Life left in key components of the treatment plant
- The growth profile that Council has had produced from Infometrics
- Future Capital expenditure that will be needed to provide for the growth
- Complete an assessment as to how much of the future capital will be utilised by the current ratepayers
- The debt gets interest added to it which ranges from 4.56% to 2.47%.
- Part of the interest is charged to general rates for payment by the general ratepayer as per previous Council agreement (\$404kpa)
- The debt gets interest added to it which ranges from 4.56% to 2.47%.
- Part of the interest is charged to general rates for payment by the general ratepayer as per previous Council agreement (\$404k pa).

Development contributions are then recalculated. The LTP 2021-31 budgets \$20m as budgeted revenue from development contributions.

Capacity of the scheme

The capacity of the system is referred to in terms of

- Treatment Capacity – related to the number of connections the plant can treat.
- Disposal Capacity – the amount of recycled water we can dispose of

Whilst the treatment capacity is linked to the biological capacity of the treatment ponds, the ability to get water into the Treatment Tanks (through inlet screens and filters) is a key part of how we manage the performance of the plant.

The take up of capacity is a factor of both the number of properties as well as the peak flow. Generally, the system is well within capacity (treatment) however it is the summer period that will dictate the required capacity. If we don't have enough capacity, there is an increased risk of the system being bypassed resulting in possible environmental impacts.

The most significant challenge from a disposal perspective is stormwater. In significant events we have more water coming to the plant and subsequently going out to the disposal fields.

There are currently 2,411 connections (actual properties connected) and the existing capacity of the treatment system is circa 2800 (based on treatment capacity). The Roadmap (described below) sets out how we will grow this capacity to 5000 in the current LTP and future proof for 7000.

The Spatial Plan is a 30 year vision document and talks about 6000 connections. We also use forecasting and scenarios to look at how soon this demand might occur. The LTP includes

forecasts from Infometrics and therefore the investment planning looks at a range of growth so that things can be brought forward or delayed.

The Infrastructure Strategy developed as part of the 2021 Long Term Plan includes a roadmap for the Mangawhai Plant. This table was presented to the community in 2020 and is still the strategy.



A new Balancing Tank is being constructed and this will provide additional protection to the harbour by increasing the flow to the treatment works at peak flows. Additionally, in peak summer periods, daily peak flow can be buffered to reduce the demand on the aeration system.

Over the next ten years we have assumed 84 connections will be made each year, combining to an additional 840 connections. Over the time of the last LTP we have seen 77 connections a year. We have investigated future options for between 70 and 100 new connections, which allows us to prepare for lower or faster rates of growth.

The balancing tank helps us manage peak flows for most of the year the plant is dealing with 600m³ of sewage – in storm events this increases to 5000m³!

Future connections will be distributed across the Mangawhai urban area and the Spatial Plan encourages growth in areas that can connect to the system. The Mangawhai Central Development will be connected to the system (noted that 500 houses are currently allowed under the current District Plan and Plan Change 78 is seeking an increase to 1000). We will monitor the rate of take up (i.e. building consents) to keep ahead of it. It is expected as is normal for developers that sections will be subdivided and built in stages. As growth occurs and Council determines it needs more capacity the cost of the infrastructure has been planned for, and will occur just ahead of its requirement

The proposed direction in the Infrastructure Strategy is to continue to dispose to land rather than seek consents for a coastal or estuary outfall. The rationale for this is that there are many opportunities to reuse water – particularly given the high quality of water that the MCWWS produces.

We are changing the filtration system to improve water quality, which will provide new opportunities to use the water. Over time we will increase the number of filters, which will increase capacity of the plant, eventually allowing for 7000 connections. The Balancing Tank can be quickly repurposed as a treatment tank which will allow for the increase in connections to be accommodated.

The Mangawhai System already meets the Australian Standard Class C which allows irrigation under certain conditions. Class A will allow irrigation with fewer restrictions.

The Council is currently developing an irrigation system for the adjacent golf course and \$1.5m has been allowed for in years 1 of the LTP to allow construction. With our current water quality this can be used to irrigate at night. Improving the quality to Grade A will allow for further irrigation uses and increase the amount that can be reused for the benefit of the community.

We will still need to dispose of water in storm events and funding has been set aside to increase the size of the pipe from the plant to the reservoir at Browns Road.

The LTP includes \$300,000 to design the system in financial year 2021/2022. Construction will commence in financial year 2024/2025 with \$10m in this ten-year period and \$10m in the following 20 years. The current second stage of development beyond this LTP is to increase the capacity to 7000 connections.



Mangawhai Matters article

Wastewater has been already referred to above and the LTP consultation documents shows debt increasing as a result of the capital projects forecast over the LTP. Where debt is incurred for particular schemes the principal is collected through targeted rates typically over 20 years. Where debt is for development it is repaid through development contributions.

Mangawhai Central will pay both development and financial contributions as per our policies.

The initial contributions calculated have been offset by costs of moving the sewer pipe, and construction of part of the shared path as was reported to a previous Council meeting.

Next steps | E whaiake nei

Proposed changes to the draft LTP will be deliberated on.

Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Notice of Motion from Cr Jonathan Larsen
B	PPC78 Council Response to Hearings Panel Direction

Sue Davidson 6 April 2021

- a) That Council directs the Chief Executive to arrange a briefing on the Mangawhai Community Wastewater Scheme (MCWWS) capacity and debt as soon as possible and prior to Long Term Plan (LTP) hearings taking place; and
- b) That the briefing include clarification of the matters raised in the Kaipara Concerns column dated 19 March 2021 and Mangawhai Matters column in Mangawhai Focus dated 22 March 2021 regarding the MCWWS capacity and debt (both as attached); and
- c) That the briefing may be held as part of an already scheduled briefing.

Reasons for the notice of motion

- 1. There is considerable concern in the community about the MCWWS capacity and debt both in general and in relation to the proposed development of the Mangawhai Central property.
- 2. Submissions relating to this will likely be received during the LTP process and it is important that elected members have the full information on these matters before hearing and deliberating on submissions.
- 3. A full briefing will allow elected members to be better informed when discussing these issues with the public.

Signed



Councillor Jonathan Larsen

23 March 2021

KDC FINALLY ACKNOWLEDGES HISTORIC MCWWS DEBT 19.03.2021

The KDC has responded to a LGOIMA request (Official Information) and revealed how much of the historic MCWWS is still outstanding.

We know that the remaining part of the debt allocated to district-wide (\$1.4 million), and paid through the general rates by all ratepayers, has now been paid in full. (See posts below.)

The current amount of the historic MCWWS debt, as at March 2021, is \$34,430,745.

This is made up of the two remaining allocations.

Existing users' allocation - originally \$13.4 million

This allocation relates to the properties that were connected or connectable when the scheme became operative. KDC has clarified why those users still owe money. Rather than paying the development contribution in one lump sum, some of those who connected in the early days opted to pay over time. This allocation represents that outstanding debt.

The KDC acknowledges that the current amount owing under this allocation is \$9,563,745

What the KDC has failed to tell us is whether the payments outstanding under the long-term payment arrangements are sufficient to satisfy this part of the debt. If they are not, then who will pay that part of the debt?

Future communities' allocation – originally \$26.2 million

This allocation is to be paid by “future communities”, being those who connected after the plant was first commissioned.

KDC acknowledges that the current amount owing under this allocation is \$24.867 million.

Error in calculation

In my LGOIMA request I suggested that in calculating its repayment model the KDC had relied on the promise of 4,500 connections from Beca. That figure would have provided sufficient development contributions to pay this part of the historic debt.

KDC has finally acknowledged that it made a fundamental error in calculating the repayment of the debt. It has this to say:

This was an error relating to connections (originally advised there would be 5000 not the 2800 that has eventuated).

Both of those figures seem to be suspect. However, there was clearly a fundamental error that was made many years ago, and it has finally been acknowledged in March 2021.

The concern is that it was blindingly obvious many years ago that the capacity of the plant was nowhere near what was anticipated and it would be impossible to recoup that part of the debt before the plant reached capacity.

For years the KDC has failed to acknowledge the situation and to adjust its debt management. It is now faced with a massive black hole for which it has no realistic solution.

Insurmountable problem

The KDC states in its response to the LGOIMA request:

We know that capacity will be reached in the next 4 years

The reality is that for several years the treatment plant has not been able to cope with peak flows in summers and during heavy rainfall when stormwater infiltrates the wastewater pipes. For that reason a balance tank costing \$2.8 million is being built as a matter of urgency. This will serve as detention tank to store the extra flow and discharge it to the plant when capacity is available.

In addition, the discharge field at Browns Road is close to capacity. The KDC is desperately searching for alternative disposal methods including, yet again, discharge to the golf course.

All of these issues will be exacerbated when Mangawhai Central comes on board.

The draft 2021/2031 LTP allocates \$20.04 million of funding for this deferred maintenance and increase in capacity over the next 10 years. (However the 2019 WSP report estimated that a new disposal field would be needed by 2026 at a cost of \$38 million.)

The point is that the KDC is faced with massive infrastructure costs in the future for the MCWWS. These will be funded by debt and that future debt will be repaid from development contributions from future connections.

However, if those development contributions are allocated to future debt, how will the current historic debt allocated to future communities of \$24.867 million be repaid?

The KDC has just revealed its hare-brained proposals to pay both the historic and the future debts from development contributions.

KDC's solution

KDC sets out the original model for repayment of the original allocation of \$26.2 million from development contributions:

\$6 million in the 6 years from 2013 to 2021

\$20 million over 10-30 years (2022-2042).

However the KDC acknowledges that the model has failed because it relied on a capacity of 5,000 connections when the plant was built. Even though “we decided we can’t recoup the \$26m over the next 4 years” the KDC is sticking with the same model. That means that the allocation of the historic debt to future communities will not be paid off until 2042

So, if all future development contributions until the year 2042 are allocated to repaying the historic debt, how is the \$20.04 million of future debt in the draft LTP to be repaid? This is the KDC’s simplistic solution:

The debt prior to new additions in the LTP 2021-2031 (ie old debt) is scheduled to be recouped by 2042 and new capital expenditure in 2021-2031 be recouped by 2051 when we reach 4600 connections in total.

In other words:

- The development contributions collected from 2021 to 2042 (the next 21 years will) will be used to pay off the remaining historic debt of about \$25 million (plus accrued interest). That means that the debt incurred in 2010 will take 32 years to pay.
- The new capital expenditure of \$20.04 million from 2021 to 2031 (page 10 of the Consultation Document for the 2021/2031 LTP), plus accrued interest, will be paid off from development contributions collected in 2042 to 2051.

This bizarre proposal appears to be an attempt to play for time so that those running the KDC will be long gone to greener pastures before the proverbial hits the fan. That presumably is why the various successive iterations of the KDC over the past eleven years have not revealed the dark secret of the historic debt.

Note that at the KDC briefing of 03 March 2021 the report on the balance tank stated that it is to be paid from development contributions. However, it seems that in fact that it will be funded by debt which will not be repaid until 2042-2051. That means 30 years of accrued interest in addition to the original cost.

Additional capital costs added to original debt

The KDC advises that there was \$2.009 million in capital expenditure on the MCWWS in the past ten years.

Can we trust that figure? The amounts allocated in the various LTPs and annual plan suggest that the figure is much higher. It is also unclear whether those additional capital costs are included as part of the historic debt.

Interest

KDC repeatedly makes the statement that capital expenditure is funded from development contributions. Well, yes, eventually if you wait 20, 30 or 40 years. The reality is that capital expenditure is funded through debt and it may take anything up to forty years for the debt to be repaid.

So how is the interest on that debt treated?

In the last 10 years \$7.5 million in interest payments has been capitalised. It is unclear if this figure is included in the total amount owing under the historic debt or whether it is dealt with separately in the accounts.

This is the KDC's muddled explanation of what happens to the interest:

The debt gets interest added to it which ranges from 4.56% to 2.47%. In the first year this is 1.3m and 404k is transferred through to the general rates rather than being charged to future development contributions. New capital expenditure is added each year.

The general ratepayer because of a Council decision pays 50% of the interest on its rates annually rather than putting 100% to the development contributions outstanding (10-20Years). This totals \$404,000 in the first year of the LTP and is about the same in most years of the plan.

Finally

You can search the Consultation Document for the draft 2021/2031 LTP but you will not find any of the above information. It is the KDC's dirty secret which it has been forced to reveal – very reluctantly. But it is not going to consult on it with the community.

The KDC's ineptitude in pursuing a model for repayment that was based on blatantly incorrect figures is mind-boggling. The secret solution to pay off the historic and future debts by 2051 is nothing more than KDC's version of a Ponzi scheme.

Following on from the bizarre misrepresentations re the current capacity of the MCWWS by KDC staff in the PC78 process, and the blow-out on the fit-out of the NRC new building in Dargaville, the latest revelations must raise serious doubts about the competence of the KDC to perform its functions in compliance with its statutory obligations, and with the fiduciary duties that it owes the community that elected it.

Mangawhai Central: You won't know what you've got until its gone

When it purchased Estuary Estates, Viranda Partners promised plenty of community focused amenities and engagement. Unfortunately, the reality is beginning to look woefully different. A supermarket and petrol station were inevitable, even under the existing 500 lot Estuary Estate consent. So, nothing has changed...or has it?



The well thought out and much debated Estuary Estate plans, contained in Chapter 16 of the District Plan (EE), allowed for 500 houses - say 1500 additional people - in our community (plus some retail, commercial, and light industrial activity). This alone would change the face of Mangawhai, but at least it was intended to be in keeping with the current character of our coastal community.

However, in Private Plan Change 78 the developer, Mangawhai Central Ltd (within which Viranda Partners retains a 10 per cent shareholding), is aiming for at least 1000 houses - say 3000 additional people - alongside the various other amenities already consented in EE. The shrinking of section sizes and expanding of zones clearly indicate a much more intensive urban landscape than was thought acceptable previously.

It can be assumed that Viranda Partners would have anticipated a profitable development under the plan provisions of Chapter 16 when it purchased the property. (It is interesting, though, that it was revealed during the recent hearing that consultants were working on the changes before the purchase). However, MCL can make substantially more profit if the changes proposed in PPC78 can be implemented.

These changes, though, throw up serious issues for the rest of us, some of which we address here.

The community has asked many questions without getting any clear answers from Viranda Partners, Mangawhai Central Ltd, or Kaipara District Council. Unfortunately, if history is anything to go by, the community will only get the answers when, and if, MCL secures the plan change and then lodges resource consent applications for individual parts of the development. Here are some of the outstanding issues.

Scale

It is obvious that the earthworks to date are far greater than what was required to give life to the consented Estuary Estate project, even though PPC78 is not yet consented. Indeed, the hillside has been irreparably carved out for a far greater density of visible houses than provided for Estuary Estates in the current district

plan. What restrictions will the Commisioners impose, if any, on the development of so many 350sqm sections and the dense development land? What would MCL plan to develop on this intense zoning?

Among other things, Pacifecon, the building intelligence company, has revealed Viranda Holdings' apparent intention to apply for and build a 6-storey, 60 bed hotel in Mangawhai Central. That announcement comes despite PPC78 providing for no more than four stories (which in itself greatly changes the character of Mangawhai).

PPC78 can be seen as pushing the sustainable limits of development in Mangawhai, but is MCL already looking beyond those limits?

Character

Viranda has always claimed that the smaller lots and the shopping centre will be shielded from public view by planting along Molesworth Drive. Bt it's a much taller ask if plantings are going to hide the incongruous and unsightly view of a 6-storey hotel or an intensely developed hillside.

Even if MCL does get consent to go down the path of urbanisation, it is to be hoped that KDC will at least impose serious landscaping requirements to try to disguise what will be an out-of-character development in a low density coastal environment.

Sell-off and the water dilemma

The reticulated water system to the proposed 500-600 small lots comes with huge costs for storage, pumping/piping and treatment to potable standards. The controversial water-take consent from NRC is a mockery in that there is little chance of the water from the consented stream off-takes ever filling or maintaining the proposed one million cubic litre reservoir. Indeed, the reservoir (or reservoirs) have not even been planned or consented.

Relying on taking high flows from the erratic stream tributaries of the upper harbour is a risky water supply strategy in the face of increasing drought prospects. More than that, it is potentially damaging to water quality in the harbour as high flows are part of the cycle of flushing sediment and contaminants arising from catchment development from the harbour's upper reaches.

MCL was unable to confirm to the Commisioners that it would continue to own and operate its costly water scheme. Nor did it appear to have contingency plans in place for prolonged low flow, periods when supplementary ground water is usually in heavy demand by existing households. Can we only assume that MCL hopes to lay off that risk to ratepayers by vesting the system in the KDC?

If PPC78 is consented then MCL will probably not want to be saddled with the many millions of dollars required to build and operate a potable water supply. One solution may be to dump its proposal for a large number of lots under 500sqm and, instead, create properties with the capacity to collect sufficient roof-top water for individual households, as the community has been arguing.

Another option that MCL might opt for would be to develop the bigger lots that don't need reticulated water, and sell off the higher density zoned land to other developers or housing companies, leaving the new owners to sort out water supply. The upshot is that the council cannot know who will be left standing to meet the cost of building and operating a water-supply plant unless it is considering ratepayers taking over this responsibility.

One rumour is that the smaller lots will be sold to Kiwibuild and other Government agencies for social and state housing. However, with a high cost or unreliable water supply and limited local employment capacity, it is hard to see takers for an affordable development on the site.

Sewerage connection

This is perhaps the biggest of several "elephants in the room". KDC has still not answered the key questions around the sewerage reticulation and treatment needs of the proposed development. We assume that MCL will be required to pay for the additional network, plant, and disposal capacity needed by its development. However we don't yet know the numbers of their connections, whether the full developer costs will be passed on, or when the development contributions will be paid.

What we do know is that development contributions, and other levies, were supposed to pay for the EcoCare debacle, yet there is \$26 million still owing with very few connections left available. There is no budget in the draft Long Term Plan to repay the outstanding debt but there is a published commitment to borrow more for any increased capacity.

Given that the wider Kaipara community has paid off its share of the EcoCare debt we can only assume that KDC will ask Mangawhai residents to pay the remainder alongside the cost of any increased capacity shortfall. However, seeking cost recovery for the additional capacity for Mangawhai Central and requiring its residents to contribute towards the existing plant through development contributions could put another nail in the coffin of high density development. Or is this going to be another cost of development that will be "socialised", i.e. shared through rates by the community at large. Or is it another reason to accept that, unlike Estuary Estates, Mangawhai Central is an exercise in planning for unsustainable development?

Even if the PPC78 is approved by the Commissioners, as more facts and fallacies emerge there is no guarantee that all that is planned will be consented.

n Want to join the Mangawhai Matters Society Inc. as a member and have a say? It's only \$20 per family per year. Please make deposits to 01-0204-0160241-00. Following your payment please email us at mangawhaimatters@gmail.com giving us your name, phone, and address so we can keep in touch.

BEFORE THE KAIPARA DISTRICT COUNCIL PC78 HEARING PANEL

UNDER

The Resource Management Act 1991

IN THE MATTER OF

Private Plan Change 78 (PC78) to the
Operative Kaipara District Plan

**STATEMENT BY JAMES ALEXANDER SEPHTON IN RESPONSE TO DIRECTIONS
FROM THE HEARING PANEL – INFORMATION REQUESTED FROM COUNCIL
OFFICERS IN RELATION TO WASTEWATER AND WATER SUPPLY
INFRASTRUCTURE PLANNING AND FUNDING DECISIONS**

ON BEHALF OF KAIPARA DISTRICT COUNCIL

16 DECEMBER 2020

Attachments

Attachment 1 – Statement of Qualifications and Experience

Attachment 2 – WSP Summary Letter – Mangawhai CWWTP 7 December 2020

Attachment 3 – Water Storage Options – Council Briefing 11 November 2020

Attachment 4 – Council Briefing Minutes 11 November 2020

Abbreviations Used in this Statement	
CWWTP	Mangawhai Community Wastewater Treatment Plant
IS 2018/2048	Infrastructure Strategy 2018/2048
IS 2021/2051	Infrastructure Strategy 2021/2051
KDC	Kaipara District Council
LTP	Long Term Plan
LTP 2018/2028	Long Term Plan 2018/2028
LTP 2021/2031	Long Term Plan 2021/2031
NPS:UD	National Policy Statement: Urban Development
PC78	Private Plan Change 78

1. EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

- 1.1 This statement has been prepared by James Alexander Sephton on behalf of Kaipara District Council (“**KDC**”) in response to the Hearing Panel’s directions dated 27 November 2020 for Private Plan Change (“**PC78**”) requiring KDC officers to prepare a written report answering specific questions (set out in the directions) in relation to infrastructure planning and funding for wastewater and water supply in Mangawhai (**directions**).
- 1.2 For wastewater, the responses in summary are:
- (a) The Mangawhai Community Wastewater Treatment Plant (“**CWWTP**”) currently has 2411 connections with the immediate capacity for a total of 2800 connections, meaning there is currently capacity for an additional 389 connections.
 - (b) An upgrade to the CWWTP is required in circa 2026 – 2029 (as signalled in the WSP report). Associated investment was allowed for in the current Long-Term Plan 2018/2028 (“**LTP 2018/2028**”) and is being reviewed as part of the development of the Long Term Plan 2021/2031 (“**LTP 2021/2031**”). Investment confirmed in the LTP 2018/2028 was expected to allow the number of connections to increase from 2800 to a total of 4300. The LTP 2021/2031 will be more closely aligned with the Mangawhai Spatial Plan which identifies the need for 6000 connections. Over the ten year period (2021-2031) covered by the LTP it is likely that investment will focus on achieving 5000 connections.
 - (c) Connections to the CWWTP are provided on a first come first served basis and there is planned capacity available for the Mangawhai Estuary Estates as well as PC78, if approved. The rate of growth and take up is monitored as building consents are lodged and where necessary, work is brought forward to align capacity with growth.
 - (d) Increases in capacity are aligned with actual demand to avoid over investment in the system. There have been no applications for residential building consent within the current plan change area and as PC78 has not been approved, the timing of capacity improvements has not been altered from the LTP 2018/2028. The implication of PC78 is that any additional demand for connections may cause the upgrade to be required sooner

(e.g. by 2026 rather than 2028, both dates of which are forecast by WSP). It is anticipated that this will be addressed in the LTP 2021/2031.

- (e) KDC have committed funding in its current LTP 2018/2028 and Infrastructure Strategy 2018/2048 (“**IS 2018/2048**”) for the upgrading of the CWWTP. This is primarily funded through development contributions, which are collected at the time of development with a targeted development contribution for wastewater in Mangawhai.
- (f) KDC are currently reviewing the LTP 2021/2031 and Infrastructure Strategy (“**IS 2021/2051**”). The IS 2021/2051 will consider the ultimate scenario for Mangawhai as set out in the Mangawhai Spatial Plan (adopted by Council on 16th December 2020) which is anticipated to require 6000 connections to the CWWTP (almost three times the current number of connections) by 2043. Growth projects will continue to primarily funded through Development Contributions
- (g) The construction of a Balancing Tank in 2021 has been approved by Council which will allow for peak flows in the summer to be accommodated. This has been designed so that it can be upgraded to a Cycle Activated Sludge System (CASS) tank in the longer term when required which will provide further increases in capacity.
- (h) KDC have commissioned modelling work which will inform the development of a more detailed ‘Road Map’ for the Wastewater System and clarify the timing and costs associated with further improvements including the replacement of sand filters and development of options to reuse water in the local area. It is anticipated that these recommendations will be accommodated in the 2024/2034 version of the Long Term Plan.

1.3 For water supply, the responses in summary are:

- (a) KDC staff have presented water supply options for Mangawhai to Councillors at a briefing on 11 November 2020, however currently there are no plans for KDC to fund or construct a reticulated water supply for Mangawhai.
- (b) Any reticulation for the proposed development in PC78 would need to be funded and constructed by the developer to service development within the subject site. It is possible that the system would be vested in KDC. Any such system would need to be designed and constructed so that it could

be operated to provide water that meets the standards set out in the Drinking-water Standards for New Zealand 2005 (revised 2018), as well as, in due course, any further requirements imposed by Taumata Arowai, the newly formed regulator for water suppliers.

- (c) Officers have been directed to investigate opportunities which will result in a reticulated water supply for parts of Mangawhai, however no funding has been specifically committed to securing potable water supply to service the Mangawhai community in the current LTP 2018/2028, IS 2018/2048 or any other adopted Council documents.

2. INTRODUCTION

- 2.1 My full name is James Alexander Sephton. I am a Chartered Civil Engineer and currently hold the position of General Manager in the Infrastructure Services department at KDC. A statement of my qualifications and experience is included in **Attachment 1**.
- 2.2 On behalf of KDC, I have been directed to respond to the Hearing Panel's¹ directions.
- 2.3 The purpose of this statement is to provide a factual response to the matters outlined in the directions in relation to wastewater and water supply infrastructure planning and funding decisions for Mangawhai as they relate to PC78. This statement does not provide any assessment or my opinion on these matters, just the facts in response to the questions asked by the Hearing Panel.
- 2.4 The matters to be reported on in the directions² are as follows:

- (a) *Wastewater for the Mangawhai area:*

- (i) *What is the infrastructure planning being undertaken for wastewater disposal given the issues raised in the PC 78 hearing about whether or not there is disposal capacity or potential capacity in the existing scheme, or an alternative scheme, to accommodate further development within Mangawhai, including the additional*

¹ See Hearing Directions dated 27 November 2020

² Ibid

capacity that would be enabled should PC 78 be approved as notified?

(ii) In relation to the above bullet point, what are the funding decisions that have been made or are being contemplated by the Council in relation to the provision wastewater treatment/disposal (i.e. what has been committed and what is contemplated in the Council's Long Term Plan (LTP) or the next review of the LTP.

(iii) We request this information be provided in relation to a 30 year time horizon, given this is the 'long term' as defined in the NPSUD.

(b) Water supply for the Mangawhai area:

(i) What is the infrastructure planning being undertaken for water supply/water security given the issues raised in the PC 78 hearing about whether or not there is sufficient water supply/water security to provide for the development within Mangawhai, including the additional capacity that would be enabled should PC 78 be approved as notified?

(ii) In relation to the above bullet point, what are the funding decisions that have been made or are being contemplated by the Council in relation to securing a potable water supply to service the Mangawhai community, (ie what has been committed and what is contemplated in the Council's Long Term Plan (LTP) or the next review of the LTP).

(iii) We request this information be provided in relation to a 30 year time horizon, given this is the 'long term' as defined in the NPSUD.

2.5 These matters are addressed below with reference to specific points listed above. I also provide brief comment on paragraph 7 and 8 of the directions which relate to the introduction of the new road connection to Old Waipu Road.

3. WASTEWATER FOR THE MANGAWHAI AREA

(a)(i) Infrastructure Planning for Wastewater

- 3.1 KDC staff are currently in the process of conducting its three-yearly review to prepare the LTP 2021/2031. The document is currently being drafted by Council staff and it is anticipated that a Consultation Document will be adopted for public consultation in March 2021, with formal adoption of the LTP 2021/2031 occurring sometime in mid 2021.
- 3.2 While a number of briefings with Councillors have occurred, the LTP 2021/2031 is currently in draft format at the time of preparing this statement. Therefore, no details can be currently provided for the Hearing Panel to review as the document has not been adopted by Councillors to be released for consultation. This may change prior to the reconvened hearing date³ or prior to a decision on PC78 being released. At that time, KDC staff would be able to provide an update as to the funding in the LTP for wastewater, should this be required by the Hearings Panel.
- 3.3 Council are also currently reviewing the *30 year Infrastructure Strategy* as part of the LTP 2021/2031. At the time of drafting this report, the IS 2021/2051 is scheduled to be taken to the next Council meeting at the end of February 2021. Similar to the LTP 2021/2031, the document is in draft format and still subject to change, and therefore no details can be currently provided. Again, this may change prior to the reconvened hearing date or prior to a decision on PC78 and KDC staff will be able to provide an update, as required.
- 3.4 At the time of preparing this statement, the latest available figures show that the CWWTP currently has 2411 connections with the immediate capacity for a total of 2800 connections. This means that there is currently capacity for an additional 389 connections.
- 3.5 Prior to the hearing, KDC made publicly available the Mangawhai Community Wastewater Treatment Plant: Future Options Development Report, prepared by WSP dated 28 November 2019. This report provides the most recent analysis of the capacity of the CWWTP and outlines the key upgrades required to the Mangawhai wastewater network and CWWTP to accommodate population growth in Mangawhai.

³ At the time of preparing this statement, it is understood that the hearing is scheduled for early February 2021.

3.6 Following the adjournment of the PC78 hearing and the issuing of the directions from the Hearing's Panel, WSP were asked to prepare a concise summary of their November 2019 report. This is included as **Attachment 2**. The following paraphrases the key points of this statement:

- (a) WSP used population projections from the Draft Mangawhai Spatial Plan which projects 6000 connections to the CWWTP (almost three times the current number of connections) by 2043.
- (b) WSP estimates growth of between 70-100 connections per year. In 2019, there were 77 connections.
- (c) Based on growth of 70 connections per year, WSP predict that the CWWTP will require an upgrade by 2029 and the irrigation field would reach capacity by 2032. Should 100 connections per year occur, WSP estimate that the upgrade of the CWWTP would be required by 2026 and the irrigation field would reach capacity by 2028.
- (d) To mitigate the risk of discharge of untreated sewage in severe storm events, KDC have bought forward building of a Balance holding Tank which will enable storage of an additional 900m³ of sewage, that can then be treated after the storm event. It is anticipated that the construction of this tank will be completed in 2021.
- (e) In collaboration with KDC and Ventia (maintenance operator), WSP has created a roadmap and poster that was presented to the community by the Mayor on 2 July 2020. This concisely outlines the process by which and when the proposed upgrades to the CWWTP will be consented, designed and constructed prior to the anticipated existing capacity limit being reached. This is based on growth triggers and is not a hard timeline for when the upgrade will occur.

3.7 Connections to the CWWTP are provided on a first come first served availability for development basis. The KDC Infrastructure Department bases its responses to growth and demand at the CWWTP on growth projections utilised by Council, including those referenced in the Draft Mangawhai Spatial Plan and the most recent report from Infometrics.⁴

⁴ See Addendum to s42A report dated 18 November 2020 for copies of these population projections.

- 3.8 There is currently planned capacity available for the Mangawhai Estuary Estates and if approved, PC78. The rate of growth and take up is monitored as building consents are lodged and where necessary, work brought forward to align capacity with growth. Increases in capacity are aligned with actual demand to avoid over investment in the system. There have been no applications for residential building consent within the current plan change area and as PC78 has not been approved, the timing of capacity improvements has not been altered from the LTP 2018/2028.
- 3.9 Technical reviews by Mr James Dufty on behalf of Mangawhai Central Limited and Mr Steve Rankin on behalf of KDC, have confirmed that there is additional capacity within the CWWTP and that there is the ability to upgrade the facility in the future. The WSP report and summary outline that infrastructure planning for future upgrades is already in motion, irrespective of the outcome of PC78. The implication of PC78 is that any additional demand for connections may cause the upgrade to be required sooner (e.g. by 2026 rather than 2028, both dates which are forecast by WSP). However, ultimately the timing of any development is unclear and (even assuming PC78 is confirmed), would depend on the developer. It is anticipated that this will be further addressed in the LTP 2021/2031.

(a)(ii) Infrastructure Funding for Wastewater

- 3.10 Funding decisions which have been made by Council are documented in the 2018 LTP, Infrastructure Strategy and Development Contribution Policy. Decisions include
- (a) the allocation of \$20.05 million in the 2018/2028 LTP over the 10 years to 2028 for the upgrade and extension of the scheme to accommodate new connections.⁵
 - (b) the establishment of a Development Contributions Policy which requires funding from developers for both the existing scheme (Surplus Projects) .⁶
- 3.11 KDC's current policy for development contributions was adopted in 2018. Development contributions are sought to meet the growth-related component of capital expenditure in selected areas for roading, wastewater treatment, water supply and stormwater management. For wastewater treatment in Mangawhai, the

⁵ See page 11 of the LTP 2018/2028 – Part One <https://www.kaipara.govt.nz/uploads/ltp2018-2028/LTP%202018-2028%20Pt%201%20Final.pdf>

⁶ KDC Development Contribution Policy Adopted

development contribution payable is \$22,113 per unit of demand.⁷ As highlighted in the LTP 2018/2028 and IS 2018/2048, development contributions are identified as the key mechanism for funding future upgrades to the CWWTP.

- 3.12 2020 / 2021 is the third year of the current LTP 2018/2028. KDC's most recent Annual Plan took effect from 1 July 2020. In terms of Mangawhai Wastewater Development, the Annual Plan has allocated \$650,000 for upgrades to the Wastewater Treatment Plant and a further \$1,650,000 for extending reticulation, both funded through development contributions and loans (with loans being used to cover the "shortfall", until sufficient development contributions are collected).
- 3.13 Council has recently approved the progression of the Balancing Tank project which is also funded through development contributions and loans.
- 3.14 Pending decisions include the level of funding to align with growth and associated development contributions. These will be established in the LTP 2021/2031, IS 2021/2051 and updated Development Contribution Policy.
- 3.15 The preferred option to support growth (outlined in the WSP report) will be included in the LTP 2021/2031 and IS 2021/2051 and will be subject to consultation as part of the Long Term Plan process.
- 3.16 Council will also approve the Development Contributions Policy as part of the LTP 2021/2031 process. A paper, "Changes proposed to Development Contributions Policy for inclusion in draft Long Term Plan 21-31" was presented to Elected Members on the 9th December and this signalled a continuation of funding identified growth projects through Development Contributions.

⁷ See page 11 of adopted Development Contributions Policy 2018
<https://www.kaipara.govt.nz/uploads/documents/d/Development%20Contributions%20Policy%20Adopted%202018.pdf>

4. WATER SUPPLY FOR THE MANGAWHAI AREA

(b)(i) Infrastructure Planning for Water Supply

- 4.1 KDC's most recent position on infrastructure funding for water supply was confirmed at the Council Briefing dated 11 November 2020. An item titled "Water Storage Options" (see **Attachment 3**) was taken to this briefing which sought direction from the Councillors with regards to water security across the District for the LTP 2021/2031. This included discussion on water supply options for Mangawhai and the following statement:

"We are seeking direction to continue investigating these options as they arise with a view to introducing through development agreements and/or a variation to the 2024 LTP security of water supply for Mangawhai with a view to mitigating future issues."

- 4.2 Minutes from the meeting are included in **Attachment 4**. These highlight that water supply in Mangawhai is not to be included within the LTP 2021/2031 at this stage.

- (a) At this time, there are no plans for Council to fund or construct a reticulated water supply for Mangawhai. Any reticulation for the proposed development in PC78 would need to be funded and constructed by the developer to service development within the subject site.
- (b) It is possible that, once constructed, the system would be vested in KDC. Any such system would need to be designed and constructed in order to provide water that meets the standards set out in the Drinking-water Standards for New Zealand 2005 (revised 2018), as well as, in due course, any further requirements imposed by Taumata Arowai, the newly formed regulator for water suppliers.

(b)(ii) Funding Decisions for Water Supply

- 4.3 Council officers have been directed to investigate any opportunities which will result in a reticulated water supply for parts of Mangawhai however no funding has been specifically committed to securing potable water supply to service the Mangawhai community in the current LTP 2018/2028, IS 2018/2048 or any other adopted Council documents. As for wastewater, reference to the LTP 2021/2031 and IS 2021/2051 cannot be made due to the draft status of these documents and because they have not been confirmed for notification or release from Council yet.

5. CONNECTION TO OLD WAIPU ROAD

5.1 KDC Counsel Warren Bangma will address the legal scope of introducing a new road connection to Old Waipu Road and providing a reticulated water supply in his supplementary legal submissions. In case it is of interest to the Panel, I note that, in relation to the connection to Old Waipu Road:

- (a) A connection between Molesworth Drive and Cove Road was first signalled in the Mangawhai Community Plan. It has subsequently been incorporated within the Mangawhai Spatial Plan which has been adopted by Council on 16 December 2020.
- (b) Through discussions with the New Zealand Transport Agency, the connection between Molesworth Drive and Cove Road has also been incorporated within the Draft Network Operating Framework for Mangawhai which is expected to be endorsed by KDC in March 2021.
- (c) The provision of a connection to the Old Waipu Road is consistent with longer term plans to connect to Cove Road.



James Alexander Sephton

16 December 2020

ATTACHMENT 1 – Statement of Qualifications & Experience

James Alexander Sephton is a Chartered Engineer with over 25 years experience in the planning, development and delivery of Infrastructure projects. He has a Bachelor of Engineering degree (with Honours) from Newcastle University in the UK.

Prior to joining Kaipara District Council as the General Manager for Infrastructure Services, he was a Principal Project Manager for five years at the New Zealand Transport Agency responsible for the development and delivery of projects in Te Tai Tokerau.

7 December 2020

Matthew Smith
Kaipara District Council
Private Bag 1001
Dargaville, 0340

Mangawhai CWWTP - Request for information

1-14129.15

Dear Matthew,

This letter follows KDC request to provide a concise and short summary of the report Mangawhai Community Wastewater Treatment Plant: Future Options Development, (WSP, 2019-11-28). The report outlines the key changes required in the Mangawhai Wastewater network and Community Wastewater Treatment Plant (CWWTP) and disposal to accommodate changes in population.

Included in this information is the basis for population growth used in the WSP forecasts in 2019 that were used as a basis for timelines and future plant sizing.

A route map is given below that outlines many of the key stages required to get a full understanding of the needs of the system and several key areas are being undertaken now to enable informed discussion with the community.

Growth

Spatial Plan population forecast (2019 from KDC) projection to reach 6000 connections by 2043, three times the existing population. Some of this growth will be commercial and light industrial units, with the majority being domestic housing.

WSP estimates in 2019 were based on 2000 connections in 2019, increasing by 70 -100 connections per year. This was deemed appropriate at the time of writing the options study as this matched growth rates from 2017 to 2019 provided by KDC to WSP. Growth in 2019 was 77 new connections.

WSP estimated that based on a growth rate forecast of 70 connections per year an upgrade of the CWWTP will be required by 2029. However, should 100 connections per year occur, this will require acceleration of the upgrade to 2026.

WSP estimated that the irrigation field will reach capacity in 2032 at 70 connections per year, and 2028 at 100 connections per year.

The limitations in the current system are described below.

Treatment Capacity.

The current CWWTP was commissioned in 2009 and consists of an inlet screen to remove inorganic debris, 2 activated sludge reactors for organic and nutrient removal, a flow balance tank, sand filtration and tertiary disinfection before transfer 12 km to Browns Road irrigation

site for disposal to land. Sludge is dewatered on site and currently disposed to landfill in Whangarei.

In 2019 the aeration systems were upgraded to increase treatment capacity (load) up to 2800 connections.

A plant upgrade to provide more biological treatment capacity is expected to be required before summer of 2028 (at additional 70 connections per year)

Hydraulic Capacity

There are currently 65.5 ha of land under irrigation. This is considered to be sufficient land available to dispose of all effluent up to 2032 (at 70 connections) or 2028 (at 100 connections per year). WPS estimated that at an additional 90-100 ha of irrigation land may be required at average flows for 7000 connections. Owing to limitations on land application, this could require purchase of 150 ha of additional land.

Finally, additional rising mains from the CWWTP will be required and storage on site to buffer wet weather when land application is not possible.

The CASS reactors, effluent balancing, sand filters and transfer main have a hydraulic limitation of 70 l/s maximum flow and need upgrade before higher flow can be passed through the treatment plant.

Due to the nature of the catchment being associated with roof tanks, this flow rate is rarely reached for sustained periods with a typical flow in dry weather being only 600m³/d or 7 l/s (with 1200 m³/d peak holiday season). However, as has been seen on several occasions in recent years, heavy storms and cyclone events can result in additional flow into the network with at least 70 l/s arriving at Outfall Pump Station for prolonged periods and being passed to the CWWTP. As the catchment grows and more wastewater and storm water enter the system, there may be an increase in storm related high flows. To mitigate the risk of discharge of untreated sewage in a storm event the Balance Tank (planned for build in 2021 and located at the WWTP) will enable storage of additional 900 m³ of sewage, that can then be treated after the storm event. The tank is sized and designed so that at the 2028 upgrade it can be repurposed to a treatment reactor as part of a flow and load upgrade.

Future Road Map

A roadmap was prepared in 2020 in collaboration between WSP, KDC and Ventia (maintenance operator) as per Figure 1 below. This was publicly presented to the community by the Mayor on the 2 July 2020 at the Mangawhai WWTP (as per Figure 2 below)

Mangawhai CWWTP Roadmap

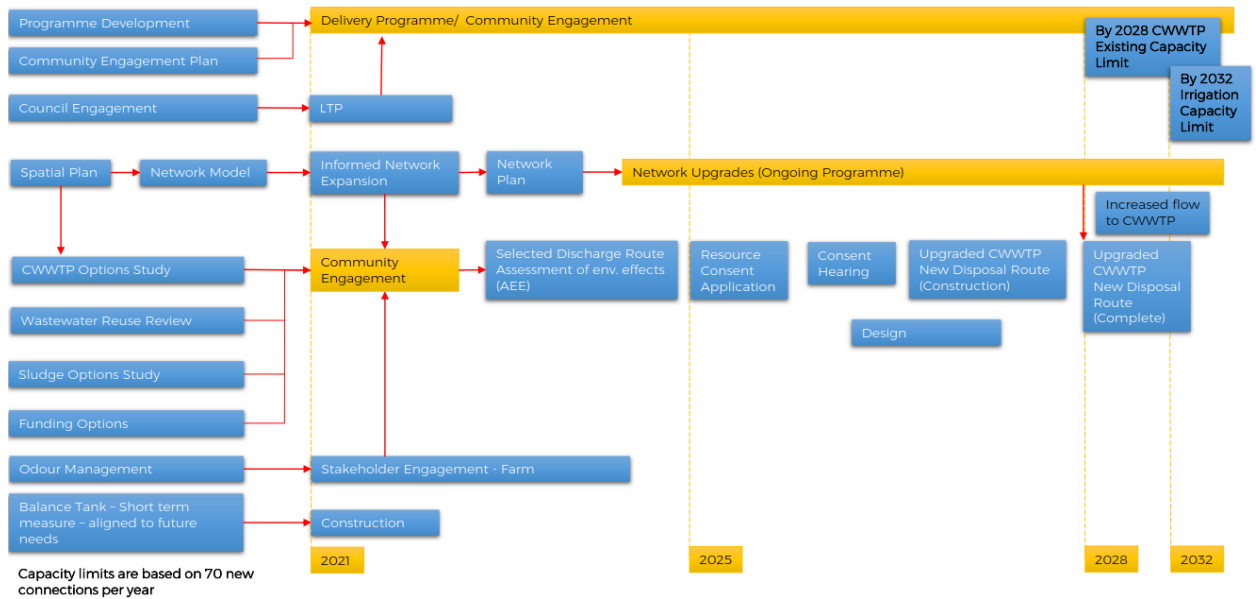


Figure 1 - Mangawhai CWWTP Roadmap



Figure 2 - Poster presentation (also on KDC website)

The scheme will require phased upgrades of wastewater network pump stations, mains and gravity sewers as new properties are developed and infill housing occurs. This will influence

the flow to be treated, which then influences the disposal route for treated high quality effluent.

The choice of disposal route will influence the standard of treatment required and the scope of the CWWTP upgrades. Community engagement with township and Iwi is seen as essential on this journey as the views will be considered and discussions on affordability and funding must be held.

Additional considerations are being given to the long term water supply requirements of the catchment. Currently the town is on roof tank supply, so consumption per capita is very low, but should potable water be available as a municipal supply, there will be an impact on the future flow received at the WWTP.

Progress

The Mangawhai Scheme Roadmap has been developed and shared with Council members.

Building of the wastewater network model is currently underway by WSP, with data collection for calibration to start in January 2021. A costed network strategy will then be developed.

Wastewater reuse options investigation, including reuse of water by the Mangawhai Golf Course, are currently under considerations including opportunities for treated effluent reuse to irrigation, gardens, recreational areas, or a domestic "purple pipe" system for households. A successful reuse scheme will substantially reduce the infrastructure needed and the impact on the environment from effluent disposal.

The additional balance tank is currently being designed with a 2021 build planned.

If you require any additional information, please contact me at andrew.springer@Wsp.com

Regards



Andrew Springer
Technical Principal Wastewater Treatment Engineer

Water Storage Options

Meeting: Council Briefing
Date of meeting: 11 November 2020
Reporting officer: Matthew Smith, Manager Infrastructure Planning

Purpose/Ngā whāinga

The purpose of this paper is to seek Council direction in this LTP with regards water security across the District. Specific questions which will be discussed at the briefing are:

- Is there a compelling need for increased water storage?
- Is the benefit District Wide or just in Dargaville/Mangawhai?
- Will Council (subject to community feedback) invest in water security projects in Dargaville and /or Mangawhai?
- How do we expect users to pay for this service?
- Should the cost be allocated to just the targeted area or shared?

Context

Kaipara has limited resilience in its existing Water Supply

The population of Kaipara has been well served by the water sources – rain water, rivers and bores – for many years. Our main centres which are served by a community system are reliant on rivers and streams which, for most parts of the year, are not constrained.

- Dargaville – River/Streams
- Maungaturoto – River and a private dam
- Mangawhai – Majority private tank and a very small council ground water
- Ruawai – Groundwater

A large proportion of District are reliant on water tanks and during drought require tank fillers

The changing environment (meteorological and political) is putting more pressure on our ability to provide water in summer

- The security of water supply for many of our townships is becoming an increasingly serious topic for consideration, NIWA is predicting that the climate in Northland (including Kaipara) is going to get slightly hotter, but with longer dryer periods, interspersed with periods of increasingly significant rainfall.
- In response to the deterioration of our streams and rivers in New Zealand, Central Government has also produced documents like the National Policy Statement(NPS) Fresh Water and the corresponding National Environmental Standards(NES) of the same, Regional council has started to adopt these outcome based guidelines within the regional plan as required by Central Government, the outcome of these combined documents are already making the ability to draw water from streams and rivers in Northland more and more difficult.
- Kaipara District experiences drought conditions on a regular occurrence, which is reinforced through the monitoring of river/ground water levels by the Regional Authority (NRC) as per our consent conditions, KDC typically then restricts the volume of water it can supply to residents who are on water networks and also in rural areas; as water suppliers are unable to access as much water at such times. In the 2019/2020-year water was being delivered from Whangarei and Auckland to our residents on tank supply in certain areas, Dargaville maintained a supply but it was severely limited.

With the above information the following issues are starting to present themselves to KDC:

1. The NPS specifically states that *“First, the health and well-being of water bodies and freshwater ecosystems, Second, the health needs of people (such as drinking water), third, the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural well-being, now and into the future.” Part 2: Objective and policies, 2.1 Objective* This means that our ability to vary the current consents now or to apply for consents with better conditions to supply our communities in the face of drought is secondary to the health of the water body, and we are unable to cite economic hardship or the fact that our businesses or farms can't run as a reason for a consent to be granted,
2. When our streams and rivers are low and we are unable to take raw water from them for treatment, will be at the same stage that water tanks on properties are dry (as per drought conditions 2019/2020), and water tanks on properties are controlled by the building act, which only states that *“an adequate supply”* is catered for, there is no mention of drought or drought security.
3. Unless we have a significant water supply or storage facility, we will be unable to draw water from sources when they are flowing above their mean annual low flow and store it for use during drought conditions.

There are emerging opportunities to increase resilience

The Tai Tokerau Water Storage Trust (TTWST) is constructing a large water reservoir within Kaipara utilising a loan from Central Government. This has created an opportunity for council to secure an alternative source of raw water.

In Mangawhai there are opportunities arising through developments that council would be able to take advantage of to secure a supply of water, the alternative option is through a connection to the Whangarei District Council water scheme if they have water available.

Maungaturoto, currently consumes water from a private dam which it purchases at a metered rate, there is an option to increase the capacity of this dam at councils cost to ensure resilience.

Discussion/Ngā kōrerorero

There is an immediate need to decide if KDC wishes to utilise the water storage from TTWST.

As TTWST are proceeding with the consent for construction of the dam along an advanced timeline, KDC need to decide if we are to enter negotiations for water, the infrastructure to support this will still need to be designed and accurately costed.

The recommended option from officers is that

- Council invests in infrastructure to connect from the dam to the existing reticulation in Dargaville
- Council becomes part of the trust (cost not known at this stage)
- Users will pay for water drawn from the dam (Option 2 – pay as use)

User pay options:

1. Purchase a specific amount of water within the dam for use by KDC in the Dargaville area, this is approximately \$2 million (still to be confirmed) this would currently secure a volume of 300,000 cu.m of water or roughly 3,000 cu.m of water per day for 100 days currently Dargaville under water shortage direction uses just under 3,200cu.m drawn from the Kaihu River at Rotu. KDC would still need to treat the water and supply it to town, this is proposed to be completed at the same time as the infrastructure is laid for the TTWST network as there would be savings on construction by utilising the same contractors digging one trench to contain both pipes. There would still be operational costs on top of this value, maintenance of the network, and infrastructure still owned by TTWST and as with any network the fewer people who are on it the higher the Opex costs, so there is a risk that in the early years the Opex costs will be higher,

2. Do not purchase water volume, but instead purchase water by volume as it is needed, these figure have not yet been delivered to us, but it may be as much as \$1.50/cu.m this will still include the same Opex costs as above, and the corresponding purchase value for that amount of water, but only for the water used. KDC would still need to treat the water and deliver it in the same manner as above.
3. Do not look to involve the council in any of the above options. Whilst the costs would be low KDC does not have any other option of securing water in our area, as drought frequencies increase we will be able to draw less water, and would be in constant conflict with the regional authority (or the new water reform body) to supply water to our townships, whilst our areas may be flooded with water (Kaihu) KDC would be unable to use or store this water for use in dryer conditions and it would all flow out to the Kaipara Harbour unused as it currently does, this raises three immediate options:
 - a. KDC invests in a water storage facility of its own, with no Government Support at the cost of rate payers (or targeted rate schemes), *highly unlikely as the costs would be significant, if council was able to get consent under the new NPS or NES to construct a dam over a stream in the future*
 - b. Force residents to construct extra storage facility on properties with a policy or bylaw, it would need to be significant (4 person household at 280l/p/d would use 1,120 litres of water a day (Mangawhai typically uses about 160l/p/d on average) this would mean that a four person household to cater for a 100 day drought (or whatever Council might dictate) would need to store about 100cu.m of water or 4x 25,000l tanks per property. I would predict that council in a similar manner to existing issues would be forced to step in and facilitate or purchase this storage at that stage. \$15,000 per tank x 4 x 500 households equals \$30,000,000 of investment.
 - c. KDC does nothing and relies on greater support from the new water body or Civil defence in emergency drought situations, alternatively we could look to Central Government for funds to construct water storage for our townships.

Options which could be explored in Mangawhai

We are seeking direction to continue investigating these options as they arise with a view to introducing through development agreements and/or a variation to the 2024 LTP security of water supply for Mangawhai with a view to mitigating future issues.

Options to be explored in Maungaturoto

We are seeking direction to continue discussions with the owners of the Private Dam to fully investigate the possibility and costs of increasing the volume of water to provide more resilience to Maungaturoto.

Next steps/E whaiake nei

1. Council employees will engage with the TTWST to ascertain what the likely costs for the above options would be storage, operational, metered water purchase.
2. A report will be brought to council outlining the above options and the likely costs associated them,
3. The resolution of the above options will be presented in the Long-Term Plan budgets in the appropriate year to be managed by council operatives.

ATTACHMENT 4 – Council Briefing Minutes 11 November 2020

Kaipara District Council

Long Term Plan Briefing Minutes

Date: Wednesday 11 November 2020
Time: 9:33 am – 3:52 pm
Location: Lighthouse Function Centre
32 Mount Wesley Coast Road
Dargaville

Members Present: Mayor Jason Smith
Deputy Mayor Anna Curnow
Councillor Karen Joyce-Paki
Councillor Victoria del la Varis-Woodcock
Councillor Mark Vincent
Councillor Peter Wethey
Councillor David Wills (from 9.42 item 2)
Councillor Eryn Wilson-Collins

Apologies: Councillor Jonathan Larsen

Meeting started at 9:33 a.m.

1. Opening

1.1 Karakia

Councillor Eryn Wilson-Collins opened the meeting with a karakia.

It was noted that the Mayor would leave the meeting from 10.45am to lay a wreath at the RSA for Armistice. The Deputy Mayor would take the Chair at that time. Members would hold a minute silence at 11.00am.

It was also noted that the agenda order had altered.

1.2 Project update

Michaela Borich (Strategic Planning Advisor) gave an update on the LTP 2021/2031 project.

Council discussed:

- Schedule and consultation dates
- Significant forecasting assumptions

Council Directed staff to:

- Check if the financial strategy is to go to Council via the Audit, Risk and Finance Committee, particularly the significant forecasting assumptions.

2. Financial Update – Part 1

Paul Cresswell (Financial Planning Lead), Jim Sephton (General Manager Infrastructure Services) and Sue Davidson (General Manager Finance, by phone) presented part one of the financial update and answered questions from elected members.

Council discussed:

- Principles adopted in the update of the Draft LTP.
- Definition of funding sources as 'subsidised' implying any source of funding external to council.
- Inclusion of the Regional Development Council Controlled Organisation (CCO).
- Charging and communication of the new solid waste recycling initiative.
- Mitigation options regarding bins being used for other purposes.
- Dargaville Community Development Board (DCDB) request to target a rate on their behalf, to deliver CCTV to Dargaville and Ruawai.

Council directed staff to:

- Keep Table 1 Climate Change and the CCO as is.
- Inclusion of Climate Change to cover Auditor General baseline with options above that for the community to consider.
- Ensure consistent and clear messaging across Northland on these topics particularly around the cost rises in the longer term.
- Keep Solid Waste as is.
- Include the cost per week in the report, and for communications work to illustrate in a simple way, the savings from general waste when recycling.
- Include the DCDB request but make Council's role clear; that DCDB is an external party and Council is only administering. The community is to be asked in the LTP document if they agree with council's role as administrator.

The Chair was passed to Deputy Mayor Curnow

Meeting adjourned for morning tea at 10:50 a.m.

A minute silence was observed at 11:00 a.m. for Armistice

Meeting reconvened at 11:02 a.m.

3. Consultation dates, updates and pre-engagement feedback

Ben Hope (Senior Communications Advisor) presented this item and answered questions from elected members.

Council discussed:

- Pre-engagement so far and the purpose of each step of the consultation process
- Waste in relation to climate change, and the three waters statistics presented.
- The value of the pre-engagement events for elected members to meet the community.

- Educational pieces occurring between now and March 2021.
- Staff confirmed that high level results of surveys (high level) will be circulated back to the community.
- There was confirmation of the stringent process the consultation document goes through with auditors including assumptions, ensuring it is clear and concise, the balancing between 'plain language' and appropriate language.

Council directed staff to:

- Proceed as presented

The Chair returned to Mayor Smith at 11:25 a.m.

4. Financial Update – Part 2

Paul Cresswell (Financial Planning Lead), Jim Sephton (General Manager Infrastructure Services) and Sue Davidson (General Manager Finance, by phone) presented part two of the financial update and answered questions from elected members.

Council discussed:

- Capital Growth Projects and the removal of some as discussed previously.
- The challenge of growth versus affordability and risk in the prioritisation process.
- The opportunity to revisit growth in the next LTP review in three years
- Development Contributions (DC) processes and policy
- Revised Rates increases from 2020-2021 Annual Plan
- Optional items not included in the rates
- Solid Waste
- Current pre-engagement events to clarifying complex points with the community

Council directed staff to:

- That the plan would show all growth projects with some in the prioritised list and others to be the enabler.
- Clearly communicate the solid waste impact on rates
- Rates invoices to clearly outline the council where the rates are attributed eg: Northland Regional Council versus Kaipara District Council, etc.
- Members expressed a degree of comfort with the current state of the financials understanding that it is the indicative foundations that will go through to the auditors, and that there is the equalisation process still to come.

Meeting adjourned for lunch 12:18 p.m.

Meeting reconvened at 12:49 p.m.

5. Dargaville Civic Precinct Options Assessment

John Burt (Property, Procurement and Commercial Manager), Gavin Flynn (AR & Associates Ltd, consultants) presented this item and answered questions from elected members.

Council discussed:

- Dargaville's important role as a civic centre for the Kauri Coast and the essential services required
- Future opportunities on government owned land
- A range of options for existing buildings and functions also considering the new ways of working
- Ensuring function of rooms enabled sharing facilities with other agencies and the community
- Requirements for a meeting room that can satisfy all functions of a Council Chamber
- The need for centrally located civic buildings for accessibility
- The proposed 2024 start time and the impact on current building remedial requirements
- 'Trust' models
- Capital costs versus demolition operational cost and depreciation assignment

Council directed staff to:

- Refine the level of detail in report based on today's discussions.
- Preference was to demolish the 1990's leaky addition at 37 Hokianga Rd with the necessary repairs/ reinstatement made to the two older buildings
- Council will consult with the Community about forming a trust to construct a new building adjacent to the War Memorial hall and Municipal building to house the Library and a community Hub. This facility will be multiuse and therefore also be suitable for holding Council meetings/ceremonies. Council contribution to this project will be in the order of \$2.8 million as well as providing the land
- Preference to demolish 42 Hokianga Road council building and convert land into green space and land bank it, once council staff had moved into new NRC building.
- Library conversation to continue to find interim solution
- Doing nothing is not an option. Present options for consultation with a 'preferred option' from council.
- Team to consider depreciation on those buildings to offset demolition.

Meeting adjourned for afternoon tea at 2:12 p.m.

Meeting reconvened at 2:20 p.m.

6. Water storage options

Matthew Smith (Infrastructure Planning Manager), Jim Sephton (General Manager Infrastructure Services) presented this item and answered questions from elected members.

Council discussed:

- The need for a secure water supply.
- Storage as an option.

- The growing population and potential reduction of water take from rivers in future based on the National Policy Statement (NPS).
- The need to remove reliance on current supplies from Auckland or Whangarei in future.
- Desalination and wastewater treatment as an alternative to water storage. Cultural aspects and public perceptions with regard to wastewater treatment.
- The need to communicate water conservation.
- The Dargaville storage option and central government funding to make it viable.
- Future proofing the areas along the pipeline route of the pipeline and availability of water for other uses.
- \$2 million capital investment for the infrastructure of the treated water line into Dargaville and a small package treatment plant at Te Kopuru.
- Water rates in the LTP financials include the \$2m and indicative costings.
- Mangawhai not included in LTP at this stage.
- Maungaturoto repair to existing system and operational issues to work through this summer. Funding has been approved through three waters. To be looked at in next LTP with possibility of designating as 'water storage' to give the protection it needs.

Council directed staff to:

- Desalination and treated waste water to be explored for the latest technology as a future option.
- \$2 million to include in LTP for connection to Dargaville from Tai Tokerau Water Trust water storage facility, funded from debt.
- Proceed as presented.

7. Financial Update – Part 3

Paul Cresswell (Financial Planning Lead), Jim Sephton (General Manager Infrastructure Services) and Sue Davidson (General Manager Finance, by phone) presented part two of the financial update and answered questions from elected members.

Council discussed:

- Notes regarding the 'Summary Draft Statement of Revenue and Expense (Year 1)'
- Water rates and penalties are not included.
- Budgets are working to Council's direction of \$60m borrowing which is well within the direction of Treasury for borrowing.
- Growth work.
- Water supply and waste water targeted rate equalisation.
- The cost of the two systems, water and wastewater, and options for distribution of the cost.
- The 'benefit to all' principle, equalisation, and transition across three years to avoid sharp costs for communities.
- The equalisation model alignment with 'Three waters' work.

- Allocating a percentage of the rate to the general rate for the benefit of the whole, and the balance targeted.
- The general rate already takes 10% to storm water.
- Failing wastewaters schemes.

Council direction:

- Yes, council will support equalisations and amendments for smoothing, but both options to go out to the community.
- Support general rate wastewater around 5%.
- No, around potable water.

Councillor Wilson Collins closed the meeting with a karakia.

Meeting closed at 3:52pm

2021 Representation Review – April Update

Meeting: Council Briefing
Date of meeting: 7 April 2021
Reporting officer: Michael Day, Strategy, Policy and Governance Manager

Purpose | Ngā whāinga

To provide an overview of the planned informal (pre-consultation) engagement that will be occurring with our communities during April 2021.

Context | Horopaki

There is a prescribed timetable and process that Councils are required to follow when undertaking a representation arrangement review. The March 2021 Council briefing provided a detailed overview of Kaipara District Councils proposed schedule. The key point to note is that the Initial proposal will be adopted at the 25 August Council meeting and the formal submission period is planned to run from 27 August 2021 to 27 September 2021.

Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

Preliminary consultation

The Local Government Commission's 'Guidelines for local authorities undertaking representation reviews' notes that:

Preliminary consultation can assist local authorities to identify issues relevant to the review process and enable them to consider a wider range of representation options when developing their formal proposal.

Preliminary consultation is not a required step in a representation review process, but many councils choose to undertake (informal) consultation with their communities before beginning the formal statutory representation review process.

Staff are proposing to undertake preliminary (informal) consultation between Monday 12 April and Friday 30 April 2021. We are proposing to engage with our communities in the following ways:

- **Communication**
 - Survey - online and hard copy (see **Attachment 1**)
 - Contextual leaflet - online and hard copy (see **Attachment 2**)
- **Channels**
 - People's Panel
 - Kaipara kōrero
 - Media release
 - KDC website
 - KDC Facebook page

A key aim of this campaign is to raise awareness of the representation review process, which is why we feel that the contextual leaflet will be a useful tool. As well as providing visual information about Kaipara's current ward system, including the geographic distribution, it will also introduce the concept of 'communities of interest', remind the community that Council has already determined that there will be a Māori Ward that is to be accommodated, and provide some general Q and As about representation reviews.

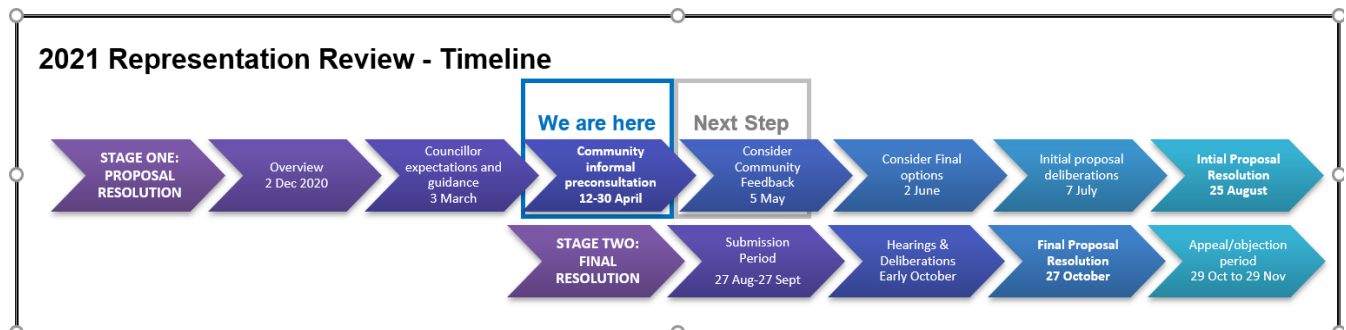
With regards to the survey questions, our starting point involved using the information/questions that we asked during the informal consultation stage for the last representation review (2018) and

then investigating what type of questions other district councils are asking in their preliminary consultation surveys.

We are also providing contextual information within the actual survey, which will hopefully lead to community members having a greater understanding of the process before they respond to the survey.

Next steps | E whaiake nei

Monthly briefings will Elected Members are scheduled between May and July 2021 to 'explore' the various representation review options and to further develop scenarios. The May briefing will focus on feedback received from the informal public consultation in mid-late April. This feedback will be used to help formulate an initial proposal.



Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Informal Consultation Survey Questions
B	Contextual leaflet



- Council's role includes acting as the voice of local people. That voice should represent all people who use and/or contribute to the facilities and services provided by Council. It must be able to represent and balance differing interests.

Because Council's democratic system is funded by rates, it's important the community feels their interests are represented fairly and effectively.

In order to ensure councils continue to provide fair and effective representation for individuals and communities, they're required by law (the Local Electoral Act 2001), to review their elected representation arrangements at least every six years.

Our last review was in 2018, so we're checking in with our community again in 2021, as we know the population numbers have shifted, plus Council voted to add a Māori ward.

Once final, the updated representation arrangements will stay in effect for six years (two election cycles) or until the next review.

- This is an informal review, but it will help us develop a formal proposal for public consultation later this year.

Read more about the 2021 Representation Review ([link to web](#))

- To start off with, could we get a few details from you -
 - Do you feel that you are fairly and effectively represented?
- 1.1 *Each elected member should represent a similar number of people, which, for Kaipara District's existing ward structure, is about 3000 people per councillor.*

- ☐ Yes, I am fairly and effectively represented
- ☐ On the whole I think I am fairly and effectively represented
- ☐ I don't think I am always fairly and effectively represented
- ☐ I am not fairly and effectively represented
- ☐ I don't know

- Which ward do you live in?
- 1.2

- ☐ Dargaville
- ☐ West Coast-Central
- ☐ Otamatea
- ☐ Kaiwaka-Mangawhai
- ☐ Outside of Kaipara District

- Which ward do you currently associate most closely with?
- 1.3

- ☐ Dargaville
- ☐ West Coast-Central
- ☐ Otamatea
- ☐ Kaiwaka-Mangawhai

• Elected representatives

- Do you know who your ward councillors are?

1.4

- ☐ Yes
- ☐ No

- Do you engage with your ward councillor/s?

1.5

- ☐ Yes, they know me well
- ☐ I occasionally encounter or contact them
- ☐ I rarely encounter or contact them
- ☐ No, never

• How we structure our representation

- Do you think we should have more or fewer councillors, or have we got it about right?

1.6

Currently there are 8 councillors plus a Mayor. Councillors are paid from a pool that doesn't change with councillor numbers and therefore doesn't affect your rates. This is set by the Remuneration Authority. You can see the current salaries [here](#).

- ☐ More
- ☐ About right
- ☐ Fewer
- ☐ Unsure

- How many councillors do you think is a good number to ensure fair and effective representation?

1.7

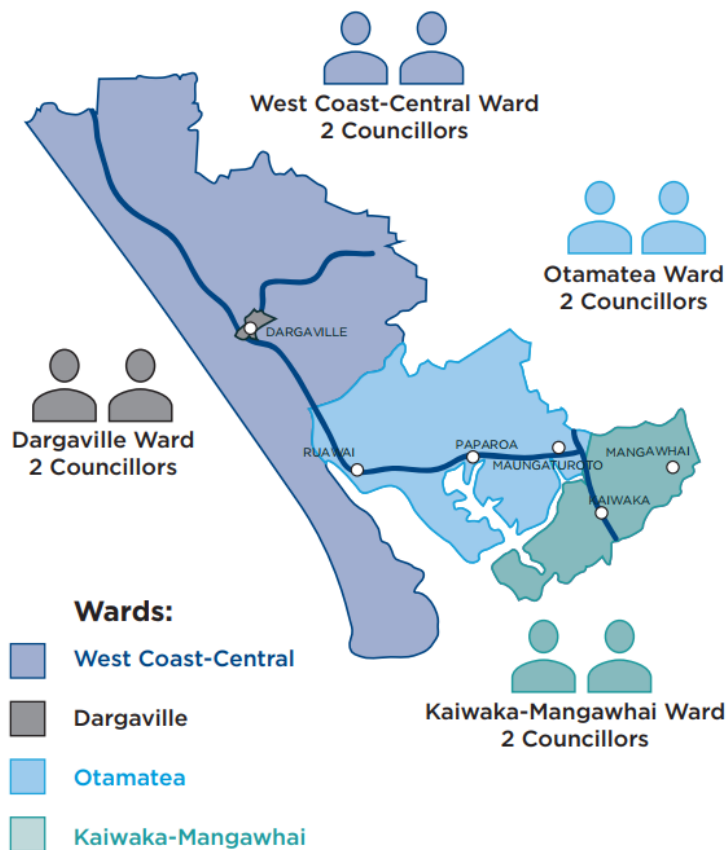
- ☐ 5 ☐ 6 ☐ 7 ☐ 8 ☐ 9 ☐ 10

- What structure do you prefer for electing councillors?
- 1.8 *Note – the current system is ward-based ensuring representatives are spread right across the district. Alternative systems are district-wide (elected at large) or a mixture of the two (wards and at-large).*

- ☐ Ward Based
- ☐ Elected at Large
- ☐ Mix of the two (wards and at large)

• Ward Boundaries

Current Council Wards (2019)



• In your opinion, should the ward boundaries above change or are they about right?

- ☐ Yes, they should change
- ☐ They are about right

• What do you like or dislike about the current set up?

• Do the current ward names accurately reflect the areas they represent?

What other options would you propose?

• Are there any communities of interest that council should be considering?

• Should community boards be established?

Please refer to the Community Board information provided here.

N/A

N/A Strongly Disagree

• Do you have any other comments to help inform councils proposal?

Elections for your local council are held every three years so you can decide who will represent you around the Council table.

To achieve fair and effective representation, council's must review their representation arrangements at least every six years.

The review asks how many elected members there should be in our district and from where they should be elected. For example, should councillors be elected from wards or 'at large' across the whole district?

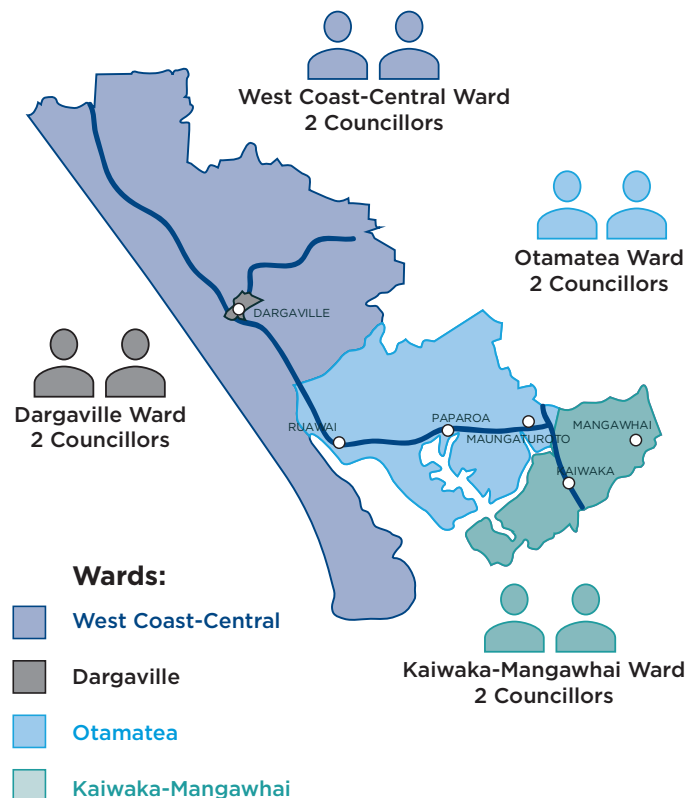
The review considers our wards, their boundaries, names, and how many councillors are elected to each. It is also an opportunity to consider other options such as community boards.

The number of councillors in each ward is based on the number of people living in each area. Each elected member should represent a similar number of people.

For Kaipara's existing structure, it is currently two councillors per ward. Two of those wards (Dargaville and Kaiwaka - Mangawhai) are now outside the variation allowed due to population growth.

The addition of a Māori ward also means we need to reset how the wards are set up.

Current Council Wards (2019)



What are Kaipara District's communities of interest?

As part of the review, we must identify Kaipara's communities of interest. Local Government Commission guidelines recognise a community of interest according to three criteria:

Perceptual	a sense of belonging to a place
Functional	meet service requirements – shops, amenities, etc
Political	ability to represent interests and reconcile conflicts of all members

There can be physical or topographical features that define a community of interest. Similar communities can be grouped. Communities can change over time.

Māori Wards

In October 2020, Kaipara District Council voted to establish a Māori Ward, under the Local Electoral Act.

Māori Wards are the local government equivalent of the Māori parliamentary electorates. Electors on the Māori electoral role will vote for and be represented by candidates contesting a Māori ward rather than candidates contesting a general ward. A councillor elected via a Māori ward represents the entire district in their decision making.

Our Journey

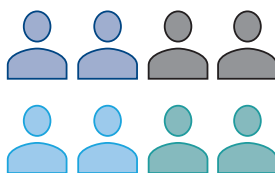
As a Council, we're wanting to ensure we continually reflect the communities that make up Kaipara, and ensure they have a voice at the table. In the past, representation had been removed from the people of Kaipara, and processes like this ensure it's safeguarded.

Current Situation

Mayor - Elected 'at large' (district-wide)



8 Councillors - Elected from four wards



56



We must have your feedback by 30 April 2021
www.kaipara.govt.nz/RepReview

Questions and Answers

Where and what does the review cover?

The whole Kaipara District council. This includes all wards and boundaries.

Who will this affect?

You! The people you elect are the voice of your community. That voice should represent all people who choose to make Kaipara District their home and must represent and balance differing interests. It is important that you feel you are represented fairly and effectively. If you feel well-represented with the current system, tell us. If you do not feel well-represented by the current ward system, tell us what you think will improve it.

What are Community Boards?

A Community Board's role is to represent the interests of their community to the Council. It gets its powers through delegation from the Council. This could be decision making, administering grants or anything else as granted by Council.

A Community Board is about advocacy for a Community of interest. Their contribution helps ensure Council takes account of what each local community wants as they make decisions.

The pay is set by the Remuneration Authority (same as the currently elected members), however, there are additional costs when you factor in more meetings, staff to support and report to the board etc.

TIMELINE

Now:

Collecting feedback on what you'd like to see change

August 2021:

We put out an Initial Option we think works for Kaipara District

You have your say on the proposed structure

September 2021:

You can speak to Council about your submission

October 2021:

We put forth the proposal for the next two elections.

10 April 2022:

Determination by Local Government Commission (if required)

How do I have my say?

You can visit www.kaipara.govt.nz/RepReview and complete the representation review survey online. Printed survey forms will be available from Council offices and libraries.



20 REPRESENTATION 21 REVIEW



We must have your feedback by 30 April 2021
www.kaipara.govt.nz/RepReview

Long Term Plan 2021 – 2031 Update

Meeting: Council Briefing
Date of meeting: 7 April 2021
Reporting officer: Diane Miller, Strategic Planning Advisor

Purpose | Ngā whāinga

To provide an update to elected members on the progress of the Long Term Plan process, including information about upcoming meetings, their format and timeframes.

Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

The Long Term Plan 2021-2031 (LTP) outlines Council's areas of focus and budget for the next 10 years. The consultation document (CD) highlights a number of areas where council are particularly interested in feedback as part of the LTP engagement process. Community consultation on the LTP runs from 1 March to 1 April 2021. Staff are collating submissions as they come in, as well as submissions regarding the proposed Revenue and Finance Policy and Development Contributions Policy. The Fees and Charges consultation is also running in parallel over the same period.

Hearings are scheduled from 20th – 23rd April. Staff will also analyse submissions in April to develop Issues and Options reports to inform decision-making at the Council Deliberations Meeting on 20th and 21st of May.

The schedule and format of upcoming LTP related meetings is outlined below:

Date	Meeting	Format
9 th April	Submissions shared with Elected Members and public	Agenda via usual channels
20 th April 21 st April 22 nd April 23 rd April	Hearing – Mangawhai Club Hearing - Mangawhai Club (extra day if needed) Hearing – Dargaville Town Hall Hearing - Dargaville Town Hall (extra day if needed)	The format for each of the hearings is to book 10 people into a 60-minute slot and give them 5 minutes each for their presentation. We anticipate two days of hearings should be sufficient to meet the demand. A second day has been pencilled in for both locations. EMs will be provided with the submissions in an electronic agenda, grouped alphabetically and have a hearing schedule for each day to refer to
5 th May	Council Briefing	LTP Update
20 th May 21 st May	Deliberations Meeting – Dargaville Town Hall Deliberations Meeting – Dargaville Town Hall	Elected members will be presented with Issues, Options and staff recommendations for decisions at these meetings.
26 th May	Council Meeting	Adoption of Fees and Charges
9 th June	LTP Briefing	LTP update including rates impacts following deliberation decisions.

		Share any changes to the Revenue and Finance Policy, the DC Policy and the Financial Strategy as a result of consultation and deliberation decisions.
30 th June	Council Meeting	Adopt LTP, rates and policies.

Next steps | E whaiake nei

Complete analysis of submissions, hold hearings and then work through Issues and Options ready for the scheduled Deliberations Meetings.

District Plan Review – April 2021 Update

Meeting: Council Briefing
Date of meeting: 7 April 2021
Reporting officer: Michael Day, Strategy, Governance and Policy Manager

Purpose | Ngā whāinga

To introduce the first two District Plan review ‘discussion documents’ to Elected Members and to get feedback on these discussion documents.

Context | Horopaki

The District Plan review is a significant, multi-year project, which is an opportunity to reconsider all matters contained within the Operative (2013) District Plan and to ‘test’ whether existing plan provisions are still fit for purpose and remain the most appropriate for our district. This review programme is an opportunity to ensure that the new district plan enables economic and residential growth, whilst protecting the things that make Kaipara unique and special.

The first step in this journey is the production (and subsequent community engagement on) of discussion documents. The intention is to engage with the community regarding the discussion documents after July 2021.

Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

The focus of this briefing will be to introduce the draft discussion documents for ‘Strategic direction and Zones’ (see **Attachment A**) as well as ‘Subdivision’ (see **Attachment C**). Members of the District Planning team will be in attendance to talk to key points of the discussion documents and to answer questions from Elected Members.

As their name suggests, the main idea of discussion documents is to start a conversation with the community about what the next district plan might look like. To do this, we discuss the following:

- How the topic (such as subdivision) fits into the National Planning Standards framework
- What’s the key legislation and higher order directives that we will need to consider
- Outline what the relevant provisions are from the Operative District Plan and what the key issues are that we will need to address in the new Plan
- What are the key public messages in respect to the key issues and the proposed way forward?

Resource Management Act reform

At the March 2021 briefing, staff outlined that Central Government has recently announced their intention to reform the resource management system this parliamentary term. However, at this stage, there is very little information about the details of the proposed reform (other than a proposed timeline for reform). Staff will provide a verbal update at the briefing if Central Government releases further information.

Additionally, at the March briefing, staff outlined that we will most likely need to ‘compress’ our overall District Plan review work programme to enable the proposed District Plan to be notified by the end of 2022. Staff are currently reviewing the key milestones in this work programme and the intention is to provide a further update at the May 2021 briefing.

Next steps | E whaiake nei

There will be monthly briefing sessions with Elected Members until July 2021 as we ‘workshop’ our way through the discussion document material. Community engagement on discussion documents is likely to commence in August 2021.

Following this briefing, Elected Members will have a further two-week period to provide their feedback to staff. This will be considered in the preparation of the final discussion document material.

Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Strategic direction and zones discussion document
B	Appendix 1 to Strategic direction and zones discussion document – Potential zones for the new District Plan
C	Subdivision discussion document
D	Appendix 1 to Subdivision discussion document

Strategic Direction and Zoning



Background

All District Plans include strategic direction to establish the over-arching objectives and policies for the district and they also include zones (e.g. rural, residential) to ensure activities are situated in appropriate locations so as to minimise adverse effects (i.e. reverse sensitivity effects) from occurring between incompatible zones. Rules accompany the proposed zoning to manage the effects of activities anticipated within each zone and the subdivision densities and requirements.

In Kaipara's next district plan, the strategic direction section will outline the key strategic or significant resource management matters for our district over the next 10 – 20 years and set out objectives that address these matters and guide decision making at a strategic level. Under the National Planning Standards 2019 (Planning Standards), the only mandatory strategic direction chapter is 'Urban Form and Development'. This gives us flexibility to work with our communities to determine what the significant matters are for Kaipara.

Urban Form

Urban form refers to the physical layout and design of the urban use. The way in which settlements and towns grow and their resulting urban form, can have significant impacts both positive and negative, on its environment, the quality of life for its residents and the economic well-being of business.

The location and form in which urban development occurs in the District affects how efficiently services can be provided. Inefficient design in terms of lay-out and density can lead to an environment that is less sustainable in physical and social terms.

Rural Issues

The Kaipara District benefits from an extensive rural area which contains a wide range of attributes and resources necessary of productive rural activities, including a variety of soils, mineral resources and landscapes that can sustain a diverse range of economic activities. A productive rural environment is

critical to ensure the economic health of the district and the wider sub-region and therefore needs to be recognised as a productive resource. Additionally, the rural zone should be valued for its landscape, character and amenity.

How does this topic fit into the National Planning Standards?

Part 2 (District-Wide Matters) includes the Strategic Direction Section. As mentioned above, the new plan will be required to include a 'Urban form and development' chapter and we have flexibility to include others.

Part 3 of the National Planning Standards identifies the zones to be used. A full list of all suggested zones for the next District Plan is attached as Attachment 1. The Zone-specific matters will need to be read in conjunction with the District Wide matters.

What is the legislation relevant to this topic and higher order directives (i.e. RMA, LGA, NPS, NES, RPS, Regional Plan)

- **Resource Management Act 1991:** *Part 2 purpose; sec 31(1)(a) and (aa) functions; sec 32 justification; Part 5 Standards; sec 74 and 75 District Plan*
- **Local Government Act 1974 and 2002** *sec 10(1)(b) purpose; sec 11 role; sec 43(1)(e) Admin of DP; Part 6 consultation and decisions; sec 93 LTP*
- **National Policy Statements;** *Urban Development (principles); Coastal Policy Statement, Prop Highly Productive Land; Prop Indigenous Biodiversity; NES Plantation Forestry; NES Contaminated Soil; Regulations*
- **Regional Policy Statement RPS for Northland;** *1.5 Integrated Management; 2.4 Regional Form; 2.6 Tangata Whenua relations; 2.7+2.8 Natural ;Part 3 Objectives; 3.11 Regional Form; 3.14 natural; Part 4-8 Policies—specifically 5.1 Regional Form plus Appendix 1-5—see App 2 Part A(t) re adopted growth strategies.*

Do our iwi environmental plans address this topic? Is this a topic of significant interest to iwi?

Strategic Direction is a topic of importance to iwi as it has impacts on the way in which land is developed. There are two iwi management plans relevant to the Kaipara District. They are as follows:

- **Te Roroa Iwi Environmental Policy Document 2009** *Relationship building; Cultural Landscapes; retention of Maori land and relationship with Marae; soil and mineral extraction*

*and use; Biodiversity and ecosystem management tolerating plantation forestry—
bioprospecting; climate change; control of GE;*

- **Te Uri o Hau Hapu Iwi Management Plan 2011** *Relationship building; Cultural Landscapes. Avoid inappropriate development; minerals and extraction; biodiversity; cultural landscapes; economic development; forestry; windfarms; agriculture; tourism; sites of significance and access. Mangawhai development. Important role in the Kaipara Moana settlement*
- **Ngati Manuhiri** *A Treaty settlement agreement is in place, but no HEMP is available*

What are the relevant provisions from the Operative District Plan?

The main chapters relevant to the Strategic Direction are included in Part A of the Operative District Plan which includes the “District Wide Strategy”. The key chapter would be Chapter 3 – Land Use and Development Strategy. This outlines that the provisions of this plan seek to provide direction so as to avoid ad hoc expansion of settlements, the under-utilisation of current Residential and Business zoned land, and to avoid intensive developments in areas which may be more appropriate for lower density or rural uses in the future.

Other relevant chapters include:

District Wide Resource Management Issues

Mangawhai Growth Area

Overlays such as Ecological areas (SNA), Outstanding Landscapes, Coastal environment, Natural Character areas Outstanding Natural Features

Tangata Whenua Strategy

The zone chapters are found in Part B (land Use). Key ones include:

Rural

Residential

Business, Commercial and Industrial

Estuary Estates

What are the key issues with the existing operative district plan provisions or new considerations which have emerged since the current plan became operative?

- The current district plan is outdated and does not give effect to the latest national and regional level policy guidance.
- Various new and revised National Policy Statements and National Environmental Standards have been promulgated, which will influence the strategic direction and zone chapters in the next District Plan.
- The current district plan is overly complex and difficult for plan users to navigate

- The current rural policy framework is too permissive and has resulted in multiple subdivision applications on highly productive soil being granted. This 'fragmentation' reduces the productive potential of the highly productive soil.
- The adoption of the 'Kaipara District Spatial Plan Nga Wawata 2050 Our Aspirations' is the major local document that will require several fundamental changes in the next District Plan, including the replacement of the Mangawhai Structure Plan 2005.
- Further information regarding key issues can be found in the June 2020 Efficiency and Effectiveness report of the Kaipara District Plan - https://www.kaipara.govt.nz/uploads/districtplan_operative/2020/KDC%202013%20DP%20Efficiency%20and%20Effectiveness%20Report%20Final%20for%20publication.pdf

What needs to change in the Proposed District Plan?

Objectives and policies will be included to assist in the management of urban growth that will enable a range of lifestyle options and types of buildings while recognising the constraints to development in the District.

The Strategic direction chapter with regards to urban areas will:

- Provide strategic direction on the appropriate location, shape and form of future urban development in the Kaipara District;
- Provide for a range of lifestyle choices and types of development, whilst managing the impact of urban development on existing activities and valued resources;
- Enable appropriate residential growth and development that is consolidated, compact, feasible; and well designed with the emphasis on:
 - ❖ Infill
 - ❖ Contiguous development (as opposed to leapfrog development).
 - ❖ Transition of densities towards lower densities on the outskirts with the higher densities around activity nodes; and
 - ❖ Choice availability.
- Recognise the importance of liveability, connectivity and affordability.

Additionally, the strategic direction chapter will need to set out how resource management issues of significance to iwi authorities are addressed in the new district plan (this is a requirement of the National Planning Standards).

The objectives in this chapter will guide decision making at the strategic level by:

- Ensuring that there are sufficient opportunities for the development of residential and business land to meet demand.
- Providing a range of zones in the Urban Area to enable appropriate use and development

- Promoting high quality urban design that responds positively to the local context and the expected outcome for the zone.
- Recognising that the planned urban built form may result in changes to the amenity values and characteristics of the Urban Area over time.

To achieve these objectives, we are considering the following changes:

- A range of residential densities will be identified - this is likely to differ from the present density provisions by providing for higher residential densities in certain locations.
- Updated urban design guidelines will be introduced.
- Providing for business/commercial zoning, which may indicate some form of hierarchy to allow for small scale local commercial needs and shopping centres with some mixed-use developments.
- Industrial areas will be zoned and especially where these have a potential negative impact on the quality of the liveability of the residential area, the location will be critically evaluated. Conversely, residential development will not be promoted near these industrial developments.
- The District Plan review needs to ensure that zones included in the Proposed District Plan reflect the National Planning Standards.
- Council needs to provide an adequate supply of zoning to ensure sufficient growth can occur over the life of the District Plan. This will be based upon the existing spatial plans adopted by Council, provided infrastructure can be provided. This might include the creation of 'future' urban zones.

Provision are likely to be developed to:

- Provide a range of zones with differing character, amenity values and expectations. These will concentrate on the rural areas by protecting the range of amenity values and characteristics in the rural area and therefore promote rural production.
- Accommodate future growth, by enabling urban consolidation and intensification of zones, while avoiding urban development sprawling into productive rural areas.
- Avoid conflicts between incompatible land use activities from new subdivision, use and development and will identify and protect the values and attributes of special places (such as historic heritage areas or significant natural areas).

- Where appropriate, ensure growth and development considers Māori cultural values.
- Maintain and enhance accessibility and safety for communities and integrate land use and transport planning to provide efficient and effective onsite and reticulated infrastructure in a sustainable manner, whilst co-ordinating new land use and development with the establishment or extension of infrastructure and services.
- Minimise the risks and impacts of natural hazard events, including the influence of climate change, on people, property, and infrastructure.

Our current thinking is to withdraw the Kaipara District Engineering Standard 2011 from the District Plan and let these Standards sit outside the District Plan, but being used as a method of compliance rather than as prescriptions in the District Plan – we are particularly interested in feedback on this approach.

It is also expected that various National Policy Statements will be published during the near future—these documents will be used in developing the Strategic Direction. The matter of the applicability of the NPS Urban Development is being considered but the principles of good planning will be incorporated into the Strategic Direction regardless of whether or not Kaipara district is deemed to have one or more ‘urban areas’ as defined under the NPS UD.

Moving Forward

Does this topic require technical expertise or further work to be undertaken in order to assist with plan development and the s32. If yes, do we know what the costs potentially are?

To achieve objectives and policies covering rural areas (production as well as rural living), urban form and development (including residential, commercial and industry), open space and regional infrastructure, some input may be required from technical experts to develop the framework.

Guidance and direction will be taken from the ‘Kaipara District Spatial Plan Nga Wawata 2050 - Our Aspirations’ document, which will provide the following:

- Kaipara District in a Regional Context;
- Recognition of the rural production (including Kaipara Kai), the coastal significance (both coastal areas and the harbour), as well as the role and function of towns and settlements;
- Protecting the unique ecological network, outstanding landscapes and outstanding features whilst protecting the Natural Character of the coastal environment;
- Celebrating the cultural richness of the District and its inhabitants;

- Recognising the importance of transport connections between the Auckland markets and Northland including water traffic.

What are the key public messages in respect to the key issues and Council's way forward in the District Plan review?

- Certain parts of the district are experiencing high growth pressures and this needs to be addressed through the District Plan Review. Council wants to know what the viewpoints of the communities are in respect to preparing and delivering on the issue of sustainable growth, including our proposed number of new zones.
- Strategic Direction is needed in the District Plan to ensure the District achieves the goals and aspirations for its communities for the next 10 - 20 years, whilst also ensuring consideration is given to other competing matters (i.e. heritage, rural issues). Council wants to know if it has captured all these matters and what the new strategic direction should look like.
- The National Planning Standards will mean that our next District Plan will look quite different to our existing one. This aside, it's likely that our next District Plan will still have a greater variety of zone 'types' than the current one – please refer to Attachment 1 of this document for a list of likely zones for the new plan. We welcome your thoughts on whether we are proposing too many zones or not enough.
- The interface between and activities provided for within rural versus residential environments need to be more clearly set out, which will include a rural-lifestyle zone, distinct from the rural-production zone.

Attachment 1 – Potential Zones for the new District Plan

(from the National Planning Standards 2019)

Residential zones

General residential
Medium density residential

Rural zones

General rural
Rural Production
Rural lifestyle
Rural settlement

Commercial and mixed-use zones

Commercial
Town Centre
Mixed Use

Industrial zones

Light Industrial
General industrial

Open Space zones

Natural open space
Open space
Sport and active recreation zone

Special Purpose Zones

Future Urban Zone
Maori purpose
Treaty settlement

Precincts/ Development areas

Estuary estates/Mangawhai central

Subdivision



Background

Subdivision is the process of dividing a site or building into one or more additional sites or units or changing an existing boundary location. The way in which land is subdivided is important as it determines the character of development and can have impacts on adjoining or adjacent sites and determines the future use of the land.

In the urban context, it is critically important to ensure land zoned for subdivision development is supported by infrastructure and that environmental impacts and natural hazard risks are managed prior to development occurring. Conversely in the rural context, it is important to ensure the productive potential of the rural zone is given primacy and is protected.

How does this topic fit into the National Planning Standards?

Subdivision is one of the chapter topics identified in the National Planning Standards, which must include all relevant subdivision rules for the respective zones across the District. Subdivision rules will be provided for in the draft District Plan for both urban and rural environments, including: residential, commercial and industrial rural and rural residential zones.

The National Planning Standards do not direct what the minimum or average allotment sizes for subdivision need to be in the District Plan. These thresholds will be determined through the development of the District Plan and be shaped by public feedback during drafting and formal submissions, once the Proposed District Plan is notified.

What is the legislation relevant to this topic and higher order directives (i.e. RMA, LGA, NPS, NES, RPS, Regional Plan)

- Resource Management Act 1991 sections (i.e. s218)

- Local Government Act 1974 and 2002 sections
- National Policy Statements (i.e. Coastal Policy Statement)
- Northland Regional Policy Statement
- Proposed Regional Plan for Northland

Do our iwi environmental plans address this topic? Is this a topic of significant interest to iwi?

Subdivision is a matter of interest to iwi, as it has impacts on the way in which land is developed. There are two iwi management plans relevant to the Kaipara District. They are as follows:

- **Te Uri o Hau Kaitiakitanga o te Taiao Te Uri o Hau Environmental Management Plan**
- **Te Roroa Iwi Environmental Policy Document 2009**

Both documents refer to subdivision and development and aim to ensure that any adverse effects from subdivision are managed and mitigated to ensure protection of the environment where the subdivision occurs.

What are the relevant provisions from the Operative District Plan?

Appendix 1 summarises the existing subdivision provisions within the Operative District Plan.

What are the key issues with the existing operative district plan provisions or new considerations which have emerged since the operative provisions were drafted?

- The current rule framework is complex and confusing.
- The district plan needs to direct good subdivision design outcomes to accommodate the purpose and function of the relevant zone. This may include urban design guidance and infrastructure requirements.
- Subdivision densities need to reflect the desired outcomes for towns and villages (as already identified in the Council adopted spatial plans).
- Infrastructure must be planned for in an integrated way to ensure cohesion between different land parcels.
- Avoid land from being landlocked from future development.
- Consideration of the management of earthworks during subdivision, particularly large scale residential, commercial or industrial developments.
- Consideration of non-serviced areas ensuring primacy is given to the productive potential of the land and its site suitability for building platforms and non-residential development.
- Council should secure esplanade reserves and strips where subdivision occurs on lots with frontages to waterways and the coastline.

What needs to change in the Proposed District Plan (if anything does need to)?

- As required by the National Planning Standards, a separate chapter on subdivision is to be included in the next District Plan under “District-wide Matters”. This chapter will include a separate objective and policy framework setting direction as to the outcomes sought from subdivision and rules for the different zones (i.e. urban subdivision, rural subdivision).
- Subdivision provisions could provide for boundary adjustments, general subdivision, environmental benefit subdivision and other types of subdivision.
- New provisions to ensure subdivisions are designed and located to suit the role and function of the particular zone.
- Requirements for the management of earthworks relating to subdivision need to be provided.
- Subdivision design should achieve high levels of amenity.
- Subdivision design will need to ensure connected and integrated infrastructure is provided.
- Access and linkages to open spaces and recreational areas is provided for in residential zones.
- Development of subdivision design and stormwater guidelines.

Moving Forward

Does this topic require technical expertise or further work to be undertaken in order to assist with plan development and the s32 evaluation? If yes, do we know what the costs potentially are?

Urban Zones

With regards to subdivision densities, the minimum and average lot sizes have largely been signalled through the recently adopted Kaipara spatial plans. For example, the ‘Urban Area’ spatial plans signal 300 – 600m² lot sizes for high density development and 500 – 1000m² for medium density development. However, the district plan review provides a fresh opportunity for the public to direct the subdivision outcomes for particular areas and to either adopt the signalled lot size densities as rules in the District Plan or signal a new preferred option. Further work is anticipated with regards to determining lot size densities in conjunction with the availability of services and infrastructure and ensuring that the land to be zoned for smaller lot densities is suitable for development of the recommended sizes.

Rural Zones

Additional work is required to define the rural zones, as per the National Planning Standards. This work needs to be undertaken by a planning expert using available information, such as the Kaipara Kai report, which includes soils classifications and discusses the key land use activities across the District. Once Council obtains some direction as to how we define the rural zones, we can then investigate what the subdivision options are for the rural zones. With much stronger directives such as the National Policy Statement on Highly Productive Land (NPS – HPL) which is likely to be released during late 2021, and

the need to maintain and protect our primary industries across the District, a more restrictive subdivision regime to the current rules is possible, in order to reduce fragmentation of productive land.

Additional information will be required in respect to rural residential zoning and where Council might choose to zone these areas for lifestyle development. As demand for rural-residential development increases, it is crucial to ensure additional zoning does not undermine existing rural activities or jeopardise future urban development. Further investigation of the number of rural residential properties will need to be undertaken to determine where land is best zoned for this purpose and what the lot densities should be to ensure the most efficient use of rural land.

What are the key public messages in respect to the key issues and Council's way forward in the District Plan review (summarise into bullet points)?

- Council want to know what subdivision densities the public consider are appropriate for each zone to ensure Kaipara District Council's policy and rule framework is as enabling as it can be for the types of activities our communities want to promote and encourage development in. For example boundary adjustments, smaller lot sizes in towns, where infrastructure is available and large lot sizes in rural areas.
- Where does Council need to restrict subdivision development? For example, zones where we want to protect and maintain particular values (i.e. the rural zone for activities associated with primary production).
- What other types of subdivision activities should Council promote? For example environmental benefit lots, incentivised subdivision.

Appendix 1 - Current Operative Kaipara District Plan Subdivision Provisions

Residential Zone			
Provision	Zone/Overlay	Summary of Rule	Activity Status
Rule 13.11.1 General Residential Subdivision	Residential Zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimum net site area of 600m², where connected to reticulated wastewater infrastructure. Minimum net site area of 3,000m² where <u>not</u> connected to reticulated wastewater infrastructure. Needs to comply with Performance Standards. Not within an Outstanding Natural Landscape. 	Controlled
	Overlay Areas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimum net site area of 1,000m², where connected to reticulated wastewater infrastructure. Minimum net site area of 3,000m² where <u>not</u> connected to reticulated wastewater infrastructure. Needs to comply with Performance Standards Not within an Outstanding Natural Landscape. 	Controlled
Rule 13.11.2 Boundary Adjustment	Residential Zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The boundaries of two or more adjacent allotments are adjusted. No additional allotments will be created Net site area of the boundary is the same as or does not differ by more than 10% of the net site area as it existed prior to the adjustment. 	Controlled
Rule 13.11.3 Preservation of Natural and Cultural Heritage	Residential Zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Permanent physical and legal protection of the feature is achieved. Lot created must contain either an historic site; an area of significance to Maori or a heritage feature, a Notable Tree. Minimum net site area of 375m², where reticulated wastewater infrastructure is available with the exception of the lot containing the mapped site or feature. Minimum net site area of 3,000m² where <u>no</u> connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure. 	Controlled
	Overlay Areas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Permanent physical and legal protection of the feature is achieved. Lot created must contain either an historic site; an area of significance to Maori or a heritage feature, a Notable Tree. Minimum net site area of 750m², where reticulated wastewater infrastructure is available with the exception of the lot containing the mapped site or feature. Minimum net site area of 3,000m² where no connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure. 	Controlled
Rule 13.12.1 Integrated Development (for up to 10 lots)	Residential Zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Where connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is available the number of total lots shall be at least 1 lot per 500m² with a minimum net site area of 375m². Where connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is <u>not</u> available the number of lots shall be an average of at least 1 lot per 3,000m² with a minimum net site area of 2,000m² per lot. Where connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is not available but a private wastewater system is proposed to be established to service all lots in the subdivision, the number of lots shall be an average of at least 1 lot per 500m² with a minimum net site area of 375m² per lot. The site is not within an Outstanding Natural Landscape. 	Restricted Discretionary
	Overlays	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Where connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is available the number of total lots shall be at least 1 lot per 900m² with a minimum net site area of 750m². Where connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is not available the number of lots shall be an average of at least 1 lot per 3,000m² with a minimum net site area of 2,000m² per lot. Where connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is not available but a private wastewater system is proposed to be established to service all lots in the subdivision, the number of lots shall be an average of at least 1 lot per 900m² with a minimum net site area of 750m² per lot. The site is not within an Outstanding Natural Landscape. 	Restricted Discretionary
Rule 13.13.1 Integrated Development (for more than 10 lots)	Residential (excluding overlay areas)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Where connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is available the number of total lots shall be at least 1 lot per 500m² with a minimum net site area of 375m². Where connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is <u>not</u> available the number of lots shall be an average of at least 1 lot per 3,000m² with a minimum net site area of 2,000m² per lot. Where connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is <u>not</u> available but a private wastewater system is proposed to be established to service all lots in the subdivision, the number of lots shall be an average of at least 1 lot per 500m² with a minimum net site area of 375m² per lot. The site is not within an Outstanding Natural Landscape. 	Discretionary
	Overlays	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Where connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is available the number of total lots shall be at least 1 lot per 900m² with a minimum net site area of 750m². Where connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is not available the number of lots shall be an average of at least 1 lot per 3,000m² with a minimum net site area of 2,000m² per lot. Where connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is <u>not</u> available but a private wastewater system is proposed to be established to service all lots in the subdivision, the number of lots shall be an average of at least 1 lot per 900m² with a minimum net site area of 750m² per lot. The site is not within an Outstanding Natural Landscape. 	Discretionary
Rule 13.13.2 Subdivision of a site within an Outstanding Natural Landscape	Residential Zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Needs to meet rules 13.11 or 13.12 but does not provide for the permanent physical and legal protection of Outstanding Natural Landscapes as stated in Rule 13.12.1. 	Discretionary

Business Zones (Commercial, Industrial)			
Provision	Zone/Overlay	Summary of Rule	Activity Status
Rule 14.11.1 General Business Subdivision	Commercial Zone (not in an overlay)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Where connected to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is available the minimum net site area 250m². Complies with Performance Standards in 14.10 and 14.13. 	Controlled
	Industrial Zone (not an overlay)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Where connected to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is available the minimum net site area 500m². Complies with Performance Standards in 14.10 and 14.13. 	
	Industrial and Commercial Zones in an Overlay	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Where connected to reticulated wastewater infrastructure is available the minimum net site area 1,000m². Complies with Performance Standards in 14.10 and 14.13. 	
Rule 14.11.2 Boundary Adjustment	Commercial and Industrial Zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimum net site area of any proposed allotments is 250m² in the Commercial Zone or 500m² in the Industrial Zone, where sites can be connected to reticulated wastewater infrastructure. Minimum net site area of any proposed allotments is 2,000m² where sites are not connected to reticulated wastewater infrastructure. No additional allotments will be created. Net site area of any proposed allotment created by the boundary adjustment is the same as or does not differ by more than 10% of the net site area of that allotment as it existed prior to the boundary adjustment. Complies with Performance Standards in 14.10 and 14.13. 	Controlled
Rule 14.12.1 Subdivision - Unserviced	Commercial and Industrial (excluding overlays)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No minimum site area for sites with <u>no</u> connection to reticulated wastewater infrastructure. Performance Stand 14.13.6 applies Complies with performance standards in section 14.10 and 14.13. 	Restricted Discretionary
Rural Zone			
Provision	Zone/Overlay	Summary of Rule	Activity Status
Rule 12.12.1 General Subdivision	Outside Overlay Areas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimum net site area of 12ha Complies with performance standards in section 12.10 and 12.15. Allotment is not within an Outstanding Natural landscape 	Controlled
	Inside Overlay Areas (Kai iwi lakes, east coast, west coast, Mangawhai Harbour and Kaipara Harbour Overlays)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimum net site area of 20ha Complies with performance standards in section 12.10 and 12.15. Allotment is not within an Outstanding Natural landscape 	Controlled
Rule 12.12.2 Preservation of Natural and Cultural Heritage	All Rural Zone (including overlays)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimum net site area of 4,000m² and an area of at least 2,500m² exclusive of the heritage area being permanently protected Balance lot must be a minimum net site area of 4 hectares. Complies with performance standards in section 12.10 and 12.15. Allotment is not within an Outstanding Natural landscape. 	Controlled
Rule 12.12.3 Boundary Adjustment	All Rural Zone (including overlays)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Between two or more adjacent allotments No additional allotments will be created Net site area is the same as or does not differ by more than 15% of the net site area. Resulting titles comply with the minimum lot size as a controlled activity, except where the existing lot size is already non-complying. Complies with performance standards in section 12.10. Allotment is not within an Outstanding Natural landscape 	Controlled
Rule 12.13.1 Environmental Benefit	All Rural Zone (including overlays)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimum net site area of 4,000m² with an area of at least 2,500m² exclusive of the area being protected. Balance lot shall be a minimum net site area of 4,000m². Complies with performance standards in section 12.10 and 12.15. Allotment is not within an Outstanding Natural landscape. 	Restricted Discretionary
Rule 12.13.2 Rural Amenity Lot (for lots existing at date of notification of the Plan) Rural Amenity Lot is a site of net site area of more than 4,000m ² but less than 8,000m ² within the Rural Zone for the purposes of countryside living within the rural area whilst maintaining the rural amenity of the Zone. Rural amenity lots will be located in such a way so as to provide for the continued rural activities and character of the Zone.	All Rural Zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The parent lot existed at the date of notification (21 October 2009) No more than 2 Rural Amenity lots are created per parent site. Minimum net site area of 4,000m² and a maximum of 8,000m² If <u>one</u> rural amenity lot is being created in the Rural Zone (without an overlay), the balance shall be a minimum net site area of 4ha. If the site is in the Rural Zone with an overlay, the balance lot created shall be a minimum net site area of 20ha. If <u>two</u> rural amenity lots are being created and the site is in the Rural Zone (without an overlay) the balance lot shall be a minimum net site area of 8ha. Maximum of 2 lots. 	Restricted Discretionary
Rule 12.13.3 Small Lot Development (only for 5 hectare lots or less, existing at the date of notification)	All Rural Zone (provided it is not within an overlay area)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parent site must be five hectares or less and held in a separate Certificate of Title as at the date of notification (21 October 2009). 	Restricted Discretionary

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimum net site area of 4,000m² can be obtained, provided the minimum average lot size of one hectare can be achieved for the overall subdivision. No more than 3 additional lots are created per site. 	
Rule 12.13.4 Integrated Development (for up to 10 lots)	Rural (excluding overlay areas) OR Coast (East and West) and Kai Iwi Lakes overlay areas OR Kaipara Harbour Overlay OR Mangawhai Harbour Overlay	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> One lot per 4 hectares of the parent title with a minimum net site area of 4,000m² per lot. The site is not located within an Outstanding Natural Landscape. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Total lots obtainable shall be one lot per 12 hectares of the parent title in the Rural Zone. Minimum net site area of 4,000m² per lot. The site is not located within an Outstanding Natural Landscape. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Total lots obtainable shall be one lot per 6 hectares of the parent title. Minimum net site area of 4,000m² per lot. Site is not located within an Outstanding Natural Landscape. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Total lots obtainable shall be one per 6 hectares of the parent title. Minimum net site area of 4,000m² per lot. Total lots obtainable shall be one lot per 2 hectares of the parent title. Minimum site area of 4,000m² per lot, where there has been comprehensive mapping and identification by a suitably qualified ecologist of the valued natural environments on the whole of the site. The site is not within an Outstanding Natural Landscape. 	Restricted Discretionary
Rule 12.14.1 Small Lot Development (only for 5 hectare lots or less, existing at the date of notification of the Plan)	Within an overlay area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parent site must be 5 hectares or less and held in a separate Certificate of Title as of the date of notification (21 October 2009). Minimum net site area of 4,000m² provided minimum average lot size of one hectare can be achieved for the overall subdivision. No more than 2 additional lots are created. Complies with Performance Standards in Section 12.10 and 12.15. 	Discretionary
Rule 12.14.2 Integrated Development (for more than 10 lots)	Rural (excluding overlay areas) OR Coast (East and West) and Kai Iwi Lakes overlay areas OR Kaipara Harbour Overlay OR Mangawhai Harbour Overlay	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No more than one lot per four hectares with a minimum net site area of 4,000m² Site not within an Outstanding Natural Landscape. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Total lots one per 12 hectares. Minimum net site area of 4,000m² per lot. The site is not within an Outstanding Natural Landscape. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Total lots one per 6 hectares. Minimum net site area of 4,000m². Not within an Outstanding Natural Landscape. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Total lots one per six hectares. Minimum net site area of 4,000m². Total lots one per 2 hectares of the parent title with a minimum net site area of 4,000m² per lot where there has been comprehensive mapping and identification of the valued natural environments on the site. <p>*All proposed subdivision must comply with the Performance Standards under Rule 12.12 and 12.13.</p>	Discretionary
Rule 14.14.3 Subdivision of a site within an Outstanding Natural Landscape	Rural Zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Needs to meet rules 12.12, 12.13 or 12.14 but does not provide for the permanent physical and legal protection of Outstanding Natural Landscapes as stated in Rule 12.13.1. 	Discretionary
Estuary Estates – Table 16.10.5-1	Multiple Zones	Various Activities and Provisions – Refer to Table 16.10.5-1	Various

Draft Stormwater Drainage Bylaw

Meeting: Council Briefing
Date of meeting: 07 April 2021
Reporting officer: Mark Schreurs, Policy Analyst

Purpose/Ngā whāinga

To present a draft Stormwater Drainage Bylaw (The Bylaw) for feedback.

Context/Horopaki

The effective management of stormwater and maintenance of land drainage infrastructure is important across both rural and urban areas of the Kaipara District. In the rural environment, stop banks protect productive land from inundation by high tides and flood flows, while drains and flood gates allow stormwater to escape off the land, thereby avoiding ponding. In urban environments, rain falling on impervious surfaces needs to be appropriately managed to prevent nuisance.

Recognising this, [Part 11 of Council's Consolidated General Bylaw \(CGB\)](#) includes provisions on stormwater and land drainage (**Attachment A**). The review programme of the CGB previously introduced at the Council Briefing on 4 November 2020 outlined a project to create separate individual bylaws. A Stormwater Drainage Bylaw, to replace Part 11 of the CGB, is the first component of this project. Staff have prepared a draft Bylaw for Council to review and provide initial feedback on (**Attachment B**).

Discussion/Ngā kōrerorero

The purpose of the Bylaw is to protect people and property within the Kaipara District by:

- a) protecting Council's public drainage network
- b) ensuring drainage over private property is managed and maintained appropriately.

Council manages a diverse range of stormwater drainage infrastructure across the District. In many urban environments, stormwater is managed by small drains and water tables built into roads and may even be piped. Conversely, stormwater in rural areas is often managed in large open drains, which require regular machine cleaning. Bylaw provisions therefore need to be applicable to both scenarios. In some cases, different provisions are necessary to apply to drains in drainage districts as opposed to drains in other areas.

An important aspect in undertaking this review was to determine and confirm the range of powers Council already has under existing legislation (Land Drainage Act 1908, Local Government Acts 1974 & 2002, Resource Management Act 1991, Building Act 2004 and Public Works Act 1981). The focus of the review was therefore on capturing what additional powers are available and appropriate to include in the Bylaw.

Policy Team staff have worked closely with relevant staff across Council who have responsibilities for stormwater drainage and enforcing and implementing the Bylaw, to obtain advice and input during drafting.

The Bylaw covers the follow key areas:

Protecting the public drainage network

This includes provisions restricting people from damaging public drains, including by interfering with, blocking or allowing stock to access public drains.

Stormwater management on private property

Situations have been occurring where people have built across overland flow paths or filled in drains created by previous owners, causing flooding or ponding on a neighbour's property. The Bylaw allows Council to take action where these situations are occurring.

The provisions focus on avoiding nuisance, rather than restricting what people can do with drainage on their properties. This means people are able to fill in or alter private drains, as long as these works do not cause a nuisance to neighbouring properties.

Crossings

Properly constructed crossings are needed to allow people, vehicles, and stock to move across drains without damaging the drain. The Bylaw includes clauses requiring people wanting to have a crossing over a public drain to obtain a permit to ensure the crossing is constructed appropriately.

Stopbanks

The Bylaw prohibits people from damaging, interfering with or allowing stock to harm public stopbanks. Further clauses protect machine access to stopbanks, to allow for regular maintenance and inspection.

Herbicide use

Council uses herbicides to stop drains becoming choked with weeds. Some people do not like this use adjacent to their properties. The Bylaw clarifies that Council may use herbicides to maintain its drains and introduces the ability for other arrangements to be made, where adjoining land owners would prefer herbicides not to be used.

Spoil from drain cleaning

The cleaning of public drains inevitably results in spoil. This is usually deposited in heaps on private land next to the drain. Most land owners understand and accept this practice. The Bylaw includes a provision on this for clarity and transparency. The provision does not prevent all involved parties coming to a different, mutually acceptable, agreement.

Access to public drains

Council needs powers to access private land to inspect and maintain drainage infrastructure. For open drains, this includes machine access for mechanical cleaning. The Bylaw restricts certain activities of landowners that would obstruct access to public drains.

In summary, the draft new Bylaw is very similar in scope to Part 11 of the CGB, however a complete review has resulted in the removal of duplications, where Council already has authority to act under legislation. All remaining provisions have been reworded in 'plain English' and revised to ensure clarity and transparency. Additional information has been included in the Bylaw to make it easier for both staff and the community to understand the purpose of the clauses, as well as where other legislative provisions are available or apply.

Next steps/E whaiake nei

Staff will review the draft Bylaw in response to any feedback received at this briefing. Feedback on the Bylaw is also being sought from the members of the Raupo Drainage Committee and will inform a revised draft.

Depending on the feedback received at this briefing, a Statement of Proposal, including a final draft Bylaw, for adoption for community consultation, is scheduled to be presented to the May 2021 Council meeting.

Attachments/Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Kaipara District Council Consolidated General Bylaw 2020 Part 11 – Land Drainage
B	Draft Kaipara District Stormwater Drainage Bylaw

Kaipara District Council

Consolidated General Bylaw 2020

Made by Kaipara District Council by Resolution in Council: 28 October 2020

Commencement: 1 December 2020



Kaipara te Orangahui

**KAIPARA
DISTRICT**

Two Oceans Two Harbours

This Bylaw is made pursuant to the Local Government Act 2002 and the Land Transport Act 1998.

Consolidated General Bylaw 2020

Part 11 – Land Drainage

Contents

1. Purpose	2
2. Interpretation	2
3. Private Drains	2
4. Access to Council drains	3
5. Obstruction to flow	3
6. Use as waterway	4
7. Drains through watersheds	4
8. Artesian overflow	4
9. Artificial obstruction or addition of water causing damage	4
10. Alteration to public drain	4
11. Pollution	5
12. Maintenance and repair	5
13. Obstruction of officers	5
14. Damage	5
15. Repairing damage	5
16. Defence against waters	6
17. Crossings	6
18. Watering places	6
19. Inspection	7

1. Purpose

- 1.1 This Part of the Bylaw regulates the use and maintenance of Council drains and stopbanks. The purpose of this Part is to:
- circumstances where a private drain may connect to a Council drain
 - what cannot be discharged into a Council drain
 - requirements for crossings and stopbanks
 - requirements for repairs to any damaged drains.

2. Interpretation

- 2.1 In this Part of the Bylaw, unless the context otherwise requires:

<i>Act</i>	means the Local Government Act 1974
<i>Board</i>	means a Board of Trustees for a district constituted under the Land Drainage Act 1908.
<i>Crossing</i>	means any means by which any vehicle, livestock, or person may go over, through or under any drainage channel or water course or defence against water and includes a bridge, culvert or ford.
<i>Council drain</i>	means and includes every drain vested in or under the management or control of Council, and any canal or watercourse vested in, or under the jurisdiction of Council, or incorporated into its drainage system.
<i>Defence against waters</i>	includes any dam, weir, bank, carriageway, groyne, stopbank, or reservoir, and any structure or appliance of whatsoever kind which has or may have the effect of stopping, diverting, controlling, restricting, or otherwise regulating the flow or spread or subsidence, in or out of a watercourse, of water including flood waters.
<i>Private drain</i>	means any drain constructed by or vested in an owner and not being a Council drain.
<i>Stopbank</i>	means an embankment bordering one or both sides of a drainage channel or watercourse to contain flows of water.
<i>Watercourse</i>	includes all rivers, streams, and channels through which water flows
<i>Watershed</i>	Means the area that drains into a single river.

3. Private Drains

- 3.1 The owner of any property must obtain consent from the Council or the Board to:
- connect a private drain to a Council drain
 - connect a private drain to a private drain which is connected to a Council drain
 - extend a connected private drain
 - enlarge a connected private drain and any branches thereof
 - add new branch drains thereto.

- 3.2 Any owner applying for any such consent shall submit to Council or Board such plans and specifications as may be required by Council showing the exact location of the private drain and branches (if any) giving details of length, size and construction and indicating the approximate area sought to be drained.
- 3.3 An Authorised Officer may impose conditions regarding the connection or continuance of the connection of private drains including the payment to Council of a reasonable fee to cover the cost of inspection and any reporting relating to any such drain.
- 3.4 Council may impose a charge or annual fee for a contribution to the cost of the construction, maintenance or extension to Council's drainage system, and the construction and maintenance of any associated bridge or crossing.
- 3.5 The owner of any property for which consent is given under this Bylaw to construct a private drain shall, if required by Council:
- construct and thereafter maintain a sufficient bridge or crossing over such private drain
 - ensure that any such bridge or crossing shall be placed to enable Council's workers, or agents and their plant and machinery to pass along the banks of such Council drain for the purpose of cleaning or maintaining the same
 - Council may enter into any agreement in respect of any such bridge or crossing as it decides is reasonable.

4. Access to Council drains

- 4.1 Without the prior consent of Council and then only subject to conditions as the Council may impose, no owner of any land on the banks of any Council drain shall:
- plant or permit to grow any tree, shrub or hedge
 - erect or maintain any fence, building, bridge or other construction
 - make any excavation

in such a position as to interfere with or obstruct the free access of any Authorised Officer, plant or machinery to or along such drain or any part thereof, for a distance of 15 metres from the bank of the drain, or such other distance as Council may specify in respect to any particular drain or part thereof.

- 4.2 A person must not construct or maintain any road, or access way for the passage of stock, machines or vehicles along the bank of any Council drain or within 15 metres thereof, except pursuant to a consent, and subject to any conditions imposed in the consent.

5. Obstruction to flow

- 5.1 A person must not stop, obstruct or interfere with or divert the flow of water in any Council drain or private drain connected with a Council drain without the prior consent of Council.
- 5.2 A person must not put into any drain, or cause, permit or suffer to be put or to fall therein any material or thing causing or likely to cause obstruction of the drain.

- 5.3 No owner of the land on either side of any drain shall allow, permit, or suffer to grow therein or on the banks thereof any trees, plants, weeds or growths that may be likely to impede the flow of water in any such drain.
- 5.4 A person must not permit or suffer any debris, plants, weeds, growths or other cleanings cut or removed from the bottom, side, or banks of any drain to float along such drain or into any other drain or watercourse.
- 5.5 Any person who breaches clause 5.4 shall on request by an Authorised Officer remove such obstruction or Council may remove the obstruction and recover the costs of such removal as a debt due to Council.

6. Use as waterway

- 6.1 A person must not without the prior consent of Council, use any Council drain for the purpose of floating any timber, flax, or any other material or thing, or for any purpose of haulage, propulsion, water carriage or navigation. Any consent granted by Council may be subject to any conditions Council considers appropriate, including requiring payment of a charge for use of the Council drain.

7. Drains through watersheds

- 7.1 Without the prior consent of Council, no owner or occupier shall construct or maintain any drain or system of drains if such drain or system of drains passes through any raised level of land or watershed.

***Explanatory note:** Cannot put in a new drain through a watershed or through raised land without Council consent.*

8. Artesian overflow

- 8.1 No owner or occupier shall allow the overflow of any artesian well on property owned or occupied by them to fall, flow or percolate into any Council drain, or any private drain connected with a Council drain, without prior consent from Council.

9. Artificial obstruction or addition of water causing damage

- 9.1 A person must not in any manner cause, allow or permit any damage to any Council drain or private drain connected with a Council drain to be caused by the release of any water into any such drains other than by natural flow or by the abstraction of water therefrom, without first obtaining the consent of Council and then only upon such conditions and in such manner as Council shall direct.

***Explanatory note:** The collection and release of water needs to be managed and directed by Council. Water stored then released on mass has the ability to cause catastrophic failure and erosion of the asset.*

10. Alteration to public drain

- 10.1 A person must not make or cause to be made any Council drain wider or deeper than it is at the time, or stop or obstruct the same or alter the course thereof or in any way interfere with any public drain or associated works or structures without the prior consent of the Council.

11. Pollution

- 11.1 A person must not discharge, cause, permit or suffer to be discharged into a Council drain or private drain connected with a Council drain, any liquid, gaseous or solid matter which is likely to be a nuisance or cause injury to health or cause damage to the drain.
- 11.2 No owner or occupier shall permit or suffer any dead stock or any part thereof to be or remain in any drain on their property, and no owner or occupier of the land on either side of any drain shall permit or suffer to be or remain therein any dead stock or any part thereof which has strayed or fallen from their property into such drain.

Explanatory note: For clarity under clause 11.1 *injurious to health means to the health of people, the environment and to ecosystems.*

12. Maintenance and repair

- 12.1 An Authorised Officer may by notice:
- require the owner of the land through which any drain passes to clean, maintain and repair the said drain or any part thereof within such reasonable time as shall be allowed by an Authorised Officer
 - if the owner fails to comply with a request pursuant to clause 11.1, Council may execute the work and recover the cost thereof from such owner.
- 12.2 Notwithstanding the provisions of clause 11.1, an Authorised Officer may by notice:
- require the owner of the land through which a drain passes to remove from the banks all obstructions of any kind within such reasonable time as shall be allowed by an Authorised Officer
 - execute the work and recover the cost thereof from the owner.

In this clause obstruction shall include earth, stone, timber and materials of all kinds and trees, plants, weeds and growths of all kinds.

13. Obstruction of officers

- 13.1 A person must not, whether on private land or not, obstruct an Authorised Officer in the performance of any duty that the Authorised Officer is empowered to undertake under this part of the Bylaw.

14. Damage

- 14.1 A person must not destroy, cause any damage to or interfere with any dam, reservoir, stopbank, headworks or building or other installation connected with Council drainage works, or allow, permit or suffer any stock to damage or destroy the same.

15. Repairing damage

- 15.1 Where any drain is damaged by stock or otherwise an Authorised Officer may:
- require the owner or occupier responsible for such damage to repair such drain to the satisfaction of an Authorised Officer
 - may execute the necessary repairs and recover the costs thereof from the said owner.

16. Defence against waters

- 16.1 A person must not erect or cause or permit to be erected any defence against waters without the prior consent of Council and in accordance with such terms and conditions as may be imposed.
- 16.2 Any owner or occupier upon whose property a stopbank is located whether for the protection of that land or not shall:
- maintain such stopbank according to the requirements of an Authorised Officer
 - not remove it or suffer or permit it to be removed, lowered or breached without the prior consent of Council
 - not at any time, plant or suffer to be planted, any trees or other growths thereon or within 15 metres thereof or construct, erect or place any installation, building, roadway, fence or other structure thereon
 - not allow, permit or suffer any stock to have access, pass, graze, or trespass thereon
 - without the prior consent of Council and then only upon such terms and conditions as an Authorised Officer may direct.

17. Crossings

- 17.1 A person must not cross or pass over a Council drain with any horse or vehicle or drive any stock or convey any implement or machinery or goods or materials over it except at crossings appointed by Council.
- 17.2 A person must not construct any crossing in, upon or over any Council drain without the prior consent of an Authorised Officer and in accordance with any conditions imposed in the consent.
- 17.3 A person must not erect, build or maintain any elevated crossing over any Council drain except to such dimensions as will ensure there is no obstruction or danger of obstruction at any time to the free flow of water in the drain and only with the prior approval of an Authorised Officer.
- 17.4 An Authorised Officer may:
- require any owner of land which has or adjoins a Council drain to construct, maintain or renew crossings at places and in such manner required by Council
 - execute the works required and recover the cost thereof from any such owner.

18. Watering places

- 18.1 No owner or occupier shall construct, maintain or use a watering place for stock in any Council drain without the prior consent of an Authorised Officer.
- 18.2 An Authorised Officer may impose such conditions for the mode of construction, for fencing and otherwise of a watering place as the Authorised Officer considers appropriate. Consent may be suspended or revoked if the conditions are breached.
- 18.3 The owner or occupier of any land adjoining any watering place shall ensure that the watering place is used and maintained so that no damage to the Council drain will result from their use. In the event of damage, an Authorised Officer may require the owner or occupier of any land adjoining the watering place to repair the Council drain and if the

owner or occupier defaults, Council may execute the work and recover the cost thereof from the owner.

19. Inspection

- 19.1 An Authorised Officer shall have the power to inspect any installation set up for the withdrawal or diversion of water from any public or private drain or other watercourse within its district whether that installation has been given prior consent or not and may direct any alteration, improvement to, replacement of, removal or demolition of such installation at any time.

Kaipara District Council Proposed Stormwater Drainage Bylaw 2021

DRAFT



Kaipara te Orangahui

**KAIPARA
DISTRICT**

Two Oceans Two Harbours



DRAFT

Contents

1. Title	4
2. Commencement	4
3. Application	4
4. Purpose	4
5. Interpretation	4
6. Protection of the public drainage network	6
7. Stormwater management on private property	7
8. Crossings	7
9. Public stopbanks	8
10. Herbicide use in the public drainage network	8
11. Spoil from drains	8
12. Access to public drains	9
13. Consequences of breach of the Bylaw	9
14. Offences	10
15. Penalties	10
16. Permits	11
17. Exceptions	11
18. Savings	11

Part A

Preliminary provisions

1. Title

1.1 This Bylaw is the Stormwater Drainage Bylaw 2021

2. Commencement

2.1 This Bylaw comes into force on ## Month 2021.

3. Application

3.1 This Bylaw applies to the Kaipara District.

4. Purpose

4.1 The purpose of this Bylaw is to protect people and property by managing stormwater within the Kaipara District by:

- a. protecting Council's public drainage network
- b. protecting Council's public drainage network ensuring drainage over private property is managed and maintained appropriately.

5. Interpretation

5.1 In this Bylaw, unless the context otherwise requires:

Approval or Approved means approved by Council or by an Authorised Officer and includes a permit.
Authorised Officer means

- a. a person authorised by Council to perform duties under this Bylaw
- b. a person appointed by Council as an enforcement officer under [section 177](#) of the Local Government Act 2002.

Crossing means any structure by which any vehicle, livestock, or person may go over, through, or under any drain or watercourse and includes a bridge, culvert or ford.

Council Drain means the Kaipara District Council has the meaning as in the [Land Drainage Act 1908](#) and includes public and private drains.

Drainage Board means a Board of Trustees for a District constituted under the [Land Drainage Act 1908](#).

Drainage District means a District constituted under the [Land Drainage Act 1908](#).

Flood Plain means land which is allowed to flood as a means of managing flood waters.

Herbicide means a substance that is toxic to plants and includes chemical sprays used to control unwanted vegetation.

Material or Thing means any material or thing of whatever kind, and includes soil, rock, vegetation, vehicles/vehicle parts, household appliances/furniture, litter, chemical, hazardous substance, contaminant, rubber, paper, plastic or metal.

Natural flow means the flow of water by gravity and excludes;

- a) water discharged from a pipe or hose
- b) water released from an artesian well
- c) water released from an irrigation system
- d) water released under pressure.

<i>Nuisance</i>	includes but is not limited to the meaning in section 29 of the Health Act 1956 and also includes causing water to pond, flood or flow onto another property.
<i>Occupier</i>	means a person who inhabits, leases, uses or controls any property, whether as an owner, tenant, licensee or otherwise.
<i>Open drain</i>	means a drain that is open to the sky above as opposed to a drain that is enclosed in a pipe.
<i>Overland flow path</i>	The path taken by surface stormwater crossing a property comprising low points in the terrain (not including rivers and identified water courses), which will accommodate flood flows in a one percent annual exceedance probability rainfall event.
<i>Owner</i>	means, in relation to real property, a registered proprietor, trustee and any person for the time being entitled to receive the rent of the property, land, building, or premises or who would be entitled to the rent if the property were let to a tenant. Where any such person is absent from New Zealand or mentally incapable as defined in section 94 of the Protection of Personal and Property Rights Act 1988, 'owner' includes his or her attorney or agent.
<i>Person</i>	includes an individual, a corporation sole, a body corporate, and an unincorporated body.
<i>Private drain</i>	means any drain that is not a public drain.
<i>Property</i>	means any land, dwelling, storehouse, warehouse, shop, cellar, yard, building, or part of the same, or enclosed space separately occupied, and all lands, buildings, and places adjoining each other and occupied together shall be deemed to be the same property.
<i>Public drain</i>	means and includes every drain vested in, or under the management or control of, or under the jurisdiction of Council or a Drainage Board.
<i>Public drainage network</i>	means the Council or Drainage Board infrastructure used to manage stormwater and includes any drain, floodgate, stopbank, pipe, pump, reservoir or other fixture forming part of that infrastructure.
<i>Public stopbank</i>	means an embankment bordering one or both sides of a drainage channel or watercourse to contain flows of water and that is vested in, or under the management or control of, or under the jurisdiction of Council or a Drainage Board.
<i>Stock</i>	means any cattle, deer, alpaca, llama, sheep, goat, donkey, mule, horse and any other animal kept in captivity, or farmed, and dependent on humans for their care and sustenance.
<i>Stormwater</i>	means any water that falls as rain.
<i>Vegetation</i>	means any plant or part thereof weather living or dead and includes both vascular and non-vascular plants including algae.
<i>Watercourse</i>	has the meaning in the Land Drainage Act 1908 .
<i>Wetland</i>	has the meaning in the Resource Management Act 1991 .

- 5.2 Words implying the singular include the plural and vice versa.
- 5.3 The Interpretation Act 1999 applies to this Bylaw.
- 5.4 Where the meaning of a word has been determined to have the same meaning as provided for that word or term in a stated piece of Legislation or other regulatory tool, for completeness, in the event of the meaning of a word or term changing in the relevant legislation or regulatory tool, then the meaning of the word or term changes for the purposes of this Bylaw as well.
- 5.5 Any explanatory notes and attachments are for information purposes, and do not form part of this Bylaw, and may be inserted, amended or revoked without formality. Explanatory notes are provided within the blue boxes throughout this Bylaw.

Relationship between this Bylaw and Acts, regulations, bylaws and Council's District Plan

Compliance with the Bylaw does not remove the need to comply with all other applicable Acts, regulations, bylaws, the Kaipara District Plan and the Regional Plan for Northland. Where there is any conflict between this Bylaw and any Act or Regulation, the Act or Regulation will take precedence.

In addition to this Bylaw, Council has a range of powers with respect to stormwater drainage. These include powers under the Land Drainage Act 1908 (LDA), the Local Government Act 1974 (LGA74), the Local Government Act 2002 (LGA02), the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA), the Building Act 2004 and the Public Works Act 1981 (PWA).

Part B

Stormwater management

6. Protection of the public drainage network

- 6.1 No person may damage the public drainage network or cause a nuisance to the public drainage network, including by:
- allowing stock to access the public drainage network
 - allowing any material or thing to enter the public drainage network
 - allowing dead stock to be placed or remain in the public drainage network.
- 6.2 Clause 6.1 does not apply to any damage caused by water entering a drain as a result of natural flow.
- 6.3 No person may obstruct the public drainage network, including by:
- placing any material or thing into, over or near the public drainage network, that in the opinion of an Authorised Officer is causing, or is likely to cause, an obstruction.
 - growing, or allowing any vegetation to grow in, or within the vicinity of the public drainage network that in the opinion of an Authorised Officer is likely to impede the flow of water.

In addition to enforcement action under this Bylaw, Council can:

- prosecute a person who wilfully and maliciously damages anything built under s82 of the LDA.
- prosecute anyone who excavates or otherwise interferes with any land in the vicinity of the public drainage network (ss 237 and 238 PWA)
- prosecute anyone who, without the written authority of Council, connects any private drain with a public or private drain, or covered watercourse; and recover the costs of replacing or repairing any property destroyed or damaged as a result (s467 LGA74).

7. Stormwater management on private property

7.1 The owner, occupier, or manager of any property must ensure that any drain, watercourse, flood plain, overland flow path or wetland on the property is kept free from obstruction or interference, that in the opinion of an Authorised Officer may

- a. adversely affect the performance of the drain, watercourse, flood plain, overland flow path or wetland
- b. adversely alter the velocity of stormwater
- c. adversely divert or obstruct the flow of stormwater
- d. cause a nuisance

unless the obstruction or interference has been authorised by a resource consent or building consent.

The purpose of clause 7.1 is to prevent actions affecting drainage on one property impacting adversely on another. Examples may include where alterations to drainage divert water onto a downstream property or prevent water draining away from an upstream property causing ponding.

Under legislation, Council can also:

- require any tree, plant, weed or growth, the roots of which in the opinion of the Council may enter any drainage channel or watercourse, to be cut down or removed (s468 LGA74).
- order the removal of an obstruction from a drain or water course (s62 LDA)
- cause unauthorised drains to be remade as it thinks fit and recover the costs of this work ([s 459](#) LGA74)
- order land owners to connect any existing private drain with any public drain or watercourse other than the public drain or watercourse with which the private drain was previously connected. Or to relay or alter the course, direction, and outfall of any existing private drain ([s 459](#) LGA74)
- require new drains to be constructed through adjoining private land ([s 460](#) LGA74)
- require an owner to provide and affix to any private drain all such traps, methods of ventilation, and other fittings whatever as the council directs ([s 459](#) LGA74)
- remove an unauthorised connection to a public or private drain and fix anything that was broken and recover the cost of these works ([s 467](#) LGA74).

8. Crossings

8.1 A person must not construct or maintain a crossing in or over any part of the public drainage network without a vehicle crossing permit, or a permit under this Bylaw.

8.2 Council may issue permits for the construction or maintenance of crossings over any part of the public drainage network.

8.3 Where an Authorised Officer considers damage may occur from crossing the public drainage network without a properly constructed crossing, an Authorised Officer may:

- a. require any owner of a property to construct, maintain or renew a crossing to meet specified requirements
or
- b. construct, maintain or renew a crossing, and recover the cost incurred from the owner of the property.

A [vehicle crossing permit](#) is a permit issued under the [Kaipara District Council Consolidated General Bylaw](#), which authorises the building of a crossing from a public road to private land, including addressing the crossing of any footpath, water table or drain within the road corridor. Where a person has obtained a vehicle crossing permit which addresses the crossing of part of the public drainage network, a permit under this Bylaw is not required.

9. Public stopbanks

- 9.1 No person may damage or cause a nuisance on or within the vicinity of a public stopbank, including by:
- allowing stock to access the public stopbank
 - undertaking earthworks or causing other structural changes to the public stopbank.
- 9.2 No person may, within 15 metres of the foot of a public stopbank, obstruct access (including machine access) to the public stopbank, including by:
- constructing, erecting or placing any building, fence or structure
 - allowing vegetation to grow in a manner that in the opinion of an authorised officer would obstruct access.

10. Herbicide use in the public drainage network

- 10.1 Council may use any chemicals, including the use of chemical sprays and herbicides, in the construction and maintenance of the public drainage network.
- 10.2 An owner or occupier can request alternative approaches to weed management on the public drainage network located on or adjacent to their property. Council may recover any additional costs incurred from the owner or occupier for an alternative weed management approach.
- 10.3 An owner or occupier can apply for a permit to manage weeds in the public drainage network located on or adjacent to their property themselves.

If a person is issued a permit under clause 10(3) but does not comply with the conditions of the permit, Council may give notice of its intent to maintain the public drainage network in accordance with the Local Government Act 1974 (ss 459, 460, 468, 511) or the Land Drainage Act 1908 (s 62), and may carry out the required maintenance using any method it deems efficient, including the use of herbicides.

- 10.4 No person may apply herbicide within 1 metre of the edge of any open drain that is a public drain.

Spraying the grass/vegetation growing on the edges of open drains can cause the banks to become unstable and collapse. Council generally only sprays the base of drains to ensure weeds do not obstruct the flow of water. Anyone wanting to apply herbicides and chemicals to land and waterways also needs to consider the Regional Plan for Northland.

11. Spoil from drains

- 11.1 The owner or occupier of property adjoining a public drain must accept the spoil from that drain as a result of Council maintenance works.

- 11.2 Council shall not be responsible for spreading or moving spoil deposited in accordance with clause 11.1 beyond what is necessary to remove it from the public drain.

The cleaning of drains inevitably results in spoil. This is usually piled up on either side of the drain on the adjacent properties. Council generally will advise of drain cleaning ahead of time. If a landowner does not wish to accept the spoil, Council will seek an agreed alternative solution. This may include owners or occupiers being asked to pay for the costs of the agreed solution.

Part C

Powers of access

12. Access to public drains

- 12.1 No person may within one (1) metre of a public drain (measured from the bank of an open drain or from the edge of a drainage pipe), obstruct access of an Authorised Officer, or any plant or machinery to be used under the instruction of an Authorised Officer, including by
- a. planting, growing or allowing any vegetation to grow in a manner that in the opinion of an authorised officer would obstruct access
 - b. erecting or maintaining any fence, building, bridge or other construction
 - c. undertaking earthworks.
- 12.2 If a public drain is within a drainage district, no person may, within 15 metres of the public drain (measured from the bank of an open drain or from the edge of a drainage pipe), obstruct access by an Authorised Officer, or any plant or machinery to be used under the instruction of an Authorised Officer, including by
- a. planting, growing or allowing any vegetation to grow in a manner that in the opinion of an authorised officer would obstruct access.
 - b. erecting or maintaining any fence, building, bridge or other construction
 - c. undertaking earthworks in a manner that in the opinion of an authorised officer would obstruct access.
- 12.3 No person may cover any service opening such as manholes, catchpits or any other surface infrastructure associated with the public drainage network.

Council has general powers of entry onto private land to inspect, repair and maintain the public drainage network and to inspect private drains (ss 171, 172, 181 and 182 LGA02, s 510 LGA74, ss 17 and 18 LDA).

Part D

Enforcement powers

13. Consequences of breach of the Bylaw

- 13.1 In addition to the powers conferred on it by any other Act, Council may
- a. remove or alter a work or thing that is, or has been, constructed in breach of this Bylaw

- b. remove or alter an obstruction or vegetation that is in breach of this Bylaw
- c. repair any damage resulting from a breach of this bylaw.

13.2 Council may recover from the person who committed the breach of this Bylaw the reasonable costs in connection with any action under clause 13.1.

Part E

Offences and Penalties

14. Offences

14.1 It is an offence to breach this Bylaw.

14.2 Any person commits a breach of this Bylaw who:

- a. does, or causes to be done, or knowingly permits or suffers to be done anything contrary to the provisions of this Bylaw
- b. omits or neglects to do, or knowingly permits or suffers to remain undone, anything which according to the purpose of this Bylaw, ought to be done by that person at the time and in the manner provided for by this Bylaw
- c. does something which under this Bylaw they are required not to do
- d. knowingly permits or suffers any condition or thing/s to exist contrary to any provision/s in this Bylaw
- e. fails to comply with any notice or direction given to that person under this Bylaw
- f. obstructs or hinders any Authorised Officer in the performance of any duty to be discharged by that Officer under or in the exercise of any power conferred upon them by this Bylaw.

14.3 Where it is suspected that any person has committed a breach of this Bylaw, that person shall, on the direction of an Authorised Officer provide their full name and address.

15. Penalties

15.1 Every person who commits an offence against this Bylaw is liable to the penalty set out in section 242 of the Local Government Act 2002.

A breach of the bylaw is an offence under s 239 of the LGA02 and the fine of up to \$20,000 is provided under s 242 of that Act.

In accordance with section 162 of the Local Government Act 2002 Council may apply to the District Court for an injunction to restrain a person from committing a breach of this Bylaw.

A person may also be guilty of an offence punishable under the Resource Management Act 1991, the Health Act 1956, the Land Drainage Act 1908, the Building Act 2004, the Litter Act 1979, and any other applicable Act, depending on the circumstances.

Part F

Permits, exceptions and savings

16. Permits

- 16.1 Council may issue permits under clauses 8.2 and 10.3 of this Bylaw.
- 16.2 Council may request specific information for an application for a permit and prescribe any conditions on permits issued in accordance with clause 16.1.
- 16.3 Council may by resolution
- a. charge a fee for receiving and processing an application and issuing a permit
 - a. determine situations when permit fees may be remitted, refunded or waived.
- 16.4 A permit under this Bylaw may be cancelled by Council at any time.

17. Exceptions

- 17.1 A person is not in breach of this Bylaw if that person proves that the act or omission followed the directions of an Authorised Officer or was in accordance with an approval of Council.

18. Savings

- 18.1 Any permissions, approvals or other authorisations issued under part 11 of the Consolidated General Bylaw 2020 continue to be in force in accordance with their terms, unless re-negotiated, renewed, or cancelled by Council.

Draft Wastewater Drainage Bylaw

Meeting: Council Briefing
Date of meeting: 07 April 2021
Reporting officer: Mark Schreurs, Policy Analyst

Purpose/Ngā whāinga

To present suggested amendments to the Wastewater Drainage Policy and Wastewater Drainage Bylaw for feedback.

Context/Horopaki

Council requires powers to protect the public wastewater systems in the District from damage and from discharges that undermine their performance.

In addition, many properties in the District rely on onsite wastewater systems (often called septic tanks). In some cases, these are in relatively high density living environments and/or sensitive receiving environments. There is a need to ensure that onsite wastewater systems are properly maintained and inadequately operating systems are identified and addressed.

The Kaipara District Wastewater Drainage Policy (the Policy) and Wastewater Drainage Bylaw 2016 (the Bylaw) were developed to address these issues.

Since 2016, the Policy (**Attachment A**) and Bylaw (**Attachment B**) have also included an inspection and maintenance regime for onsite wastewater systems in a prescribed area of the District, to support the overall scope and purpose of the Bylaw.

The Bylaw is due for its five-year review, as per the requirements of section 158 of the Local Government Act 2002. The Policy was first developed in 2016 to support the Bylaw, but this is not a statutory policy and is not subject to any review or consultation requirements.

Discussion/Ngā kōrerorero

Policy staff have reviewed the current Policy and Bylaw, which has included working closely with relevant staff across Council who have responsibilities for our wastewater infrastructure and enforcing and implementing the Bylaw.

An important aspect in undertaking this review was to determine and confirm the range of powers Council already has under existing legislation (Local Government Acts 1974 & 2002, Health Act, Resource Management Act 1991, Building Act 2004 and Public Works Act 1981). The focus of the review was therefore on capturing what additional powers are available and appropriate to include or retain in the Bylaw. It was found that the Building Act 2004 in particular, provides Council with considerable powers to take action. Council can issue 'notices to fix', which have associated charging and fine regimes attached to them.

The review also highlighted that much of the Policy content either duplicated the Bylaw content, was of a nature that it should be included in the Bylaw provisions or is operational guidance material for implementing and administering the Bylaw. As such, a key outcome of this review is to recommend the revocation of the Policy. Due to the non-statutory nature of the Policy, this can be completed through a Council resolution at the conclusion of the anticipated consultation process.

Key elements of the Bylaw that are recommended to remain unchanged are:

- a) Taking a proactive approach to protecting Council's wastewater assets by regulating certain activities and certain discharges which pose a threat to public wastewater systems (unlike Council's powers under legislation which are largely reactive, allowing action to be taken after damage has occurred).
- b) Putting in place a proactive approach to identifying failing onsite wastewater systems in key areas by including monitoring, reporting and inspection requirements.

The key changes being suggested are:

- c) Revoking the Policy and including relevant content as part of the Bylaw or included in the explanatory notes to the Bylaw.
- d) Shortening the Bylaw by removing clauses which duplicate Council's powers under legislation.
- e) Simplifying the wording of the Bylaw, taking a "plain English" approach.

During the development of the 2016 Bylaw, it was envisaged that the 5-year review would include consideration of extending the onsite wastewater system inspection and maintenance regime to cover additional areas of the District. Staff considered this matter during the review and are suggesting no change to the current coverage area. Extending the coverage area would require additional resourcing (at least one additional full-time staff member), but would provide limited additional benefits as the most sensitive areas of the District are already included in the coverage area.

Given the extensive changes proposed, staff have developed a summary overview of the changes, which is provided in **Attachment C**. The final draft revised Bylaw is provided in **Attachment D**.

Next steps/E whaiake nei

Staff will review the draft Bylaw in response to any feedback received at this briefing.

Depending on the feedback received at this briefing, a Statement of Proposal, including a final draft Bylaw, for adoption for community consultation, is scheduled to be presented to the May 2021 Council meeting.

Attachments/Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Kaipara District Wastewater Drainage Policy 2016
B	Kaipara District Wastewater Drainage Bylaw 2016
C	Suggested changes to the Kaipara District Wastewater Drainage Bylaw 2016
D	Suggested amended Kaipara District Wastewater Drainage Bylaw 2016



Kaipara District

Wastewater Drainage Policy

September 2016



Kaipara te Oranganui

**KAIPARA
DISTRICT**

Two Oceans Two Harbours

Contents

PART I	5
Kaipara District Wastewater Drainage Policy: Policy for the Discharge and Acceptance of Wastewater (“the Policy”).....	5
1 Introduction and purpose	5
2 Definitions	5
3 Domestic wastewater	8
4 Acceptance and duration.....	8
4.1 General	8
4.2 Change of ownership.....	8
5 Application to connect	9
5.1 Application: Domestic wastewater	9
5.2 Application procedure for trade waste discharges	9
5.3 Subdivision	9
6 Point of discharge	9
6.1 General	9
6.2 Single ownership	10
6.3 Multiple ownership	11
6.4 Common private drains	12
7 Acceptance of wastewater and duration	12
7.1 General	12
7.2 Change of ownership.....	12
8 Level of service.....	12
9 Liability.....	12
10 Emergency.....	12
11 Maintenance and repair.....	13
12 Blockages	13
13 Trees.....	13
14 Working around buried services.....	13
15 Customer’s drainage system	14
15.1 General	14
15.2 Waste minimisation.....	14
15.3 Inflow and infiltration	14
15.4 Pump stations	15
15.5 Swimming pools.....	15
16 Operation and maintenance of onsite wastewater treatment systems.....	15
17 Payment.....	17
18 Breaches and remedies.....	18
18.1 Powers.....	18
19 Failure to pay	18

20	Making a Bylaw	18
21	Legal context	18
Schedule B – Onsite Wastewater Systems – Maintenance and Inspection (Warrant of Fitness)		
Process Flowchart.....		20
.....		20
PART II		21
Kaipara District Wastewater Drainage Bylaw		21
1	Introduction	21
2	Purpose of Bylaw.....	21
3	Definitions	21
Part A – Public wastewater systems		26
4	Acceptance of discharge	26
4.1	Wastewater.....	26
4.2	Trade waste	26
5	Approval to connect.....	26
6	Continuity of discharge	26
7	Premises.....	26
7.1	Flow rate	26
7.2	Unacceptable discharges	26
7.3	Prevention of inflow and infiltration.....	27
8	Disconnection	27
9	Protection of public wastewater systems	27
9.1	General	27
9.2	Building over buried services.....	27
9.3	Loading or material over public sewers.....	28
9.4	Excavation near public sewers.....	28
10	Storage of hazardous materials.....	28
Part B - Onsite wastewater disposal systems		29
11	Requirements	29
12	Maintenance requirements	30
13	Supply and keeping of records.....	31
14	Requirement to connect or fix.....	31
15	Inspections and Failure to Fix.....	32
Part C – Offences and penalties for breaches of the Bylaw		33
16	Offences	33
17	Penalties for breaches of Bylaw	33
Schedule A - Acceptable discharge		34
Schedule B – Onsite Wastewater Systems – Maintenance and Inspection (Warrant of Fitness)		
Process Flowchart.....		36
Schedule C – Design Performance standards for onsite wastewater treatment systems		37

Schedule D – Fees and Charges	38
Schedule E – Onsite wastewater system inspection and maintenance reports	39
Schedule F – Guidance on building less than 1.5 metres away from buried services	41

final

PART I

Kaipara District Wastewater Drainage Policy: Policy for the Discharge and Acceptance of Wastewater ("the Policy")

1 Introduction and purpose

The purpose of this Policy is to state Council's position and provide the statutory framework for:

- a) Protecting Council's wastewater assets in the district from damage or from wastewater inflows from domestic and other premises that reduce the ability of those assets to treat and dispose of wastewater; and
- b) Preventing unacceptable discharges of wastewater from onsite wastewater treatment systems that can have adverse effects on sensitive receiving environments and on public health.

A number of urban settlements in the Kaipara district have established public wastewater treatment systems. These are valuable community assets and Council requires powers to protect them from damage and from discharges that undermine their performance. Council also uses this Policy to provide guidance to persons already using these systems, wishing to connect to them or working around them.

Many premises in the district rely on onsite wastewater treatment systems. In some cases, these are located in relatively high density living environments or sensitive receiving environments close to waters in which the community and visitors swim, collect food and enjoy other recreational pursuits. This Policy is intended to ensure that onsite wastewater treatment systems are properly designed, constructed and maintained and sets up processes that require inadequately operating systems to be rectified or in some cases requires connection to a public wastewater system where this is available or when one becomes available.

This Policy may be implemented by various means however the principal means of implementation is the Kaipara District Wastewater Drainage Bylaw 2016. The operative date of this Policy is 1 November 2016.

2 Definitions

'Acceptable discharge' means wastewater with physical and chemical characteristics, as detailed in Schedule A of the Bylaw.

'Approval or Approved' means approval or approved in writing by Council, either by resolution of Council or by an officer of Council authorised for that purpose or with the relevant delegated authority.

'Buried services' means all public sewers, rising mains, trunk sewers and other underground utilities under the responsibility of Council.

'Building Act 2004' means the Building Act and any subsequent legislation.

'Building Code' means the Building Code and any subsequent amendments.

'Characteristic' means any of the physical or chemical characteristics of wastewater to be discharged to the public sewer.

'Council' means Kaipara District Council.

'Coverage Area' Means:

- (1) all Residentially zoned land, as identified in the Kaipara District Plan; and
- (2) all land irrespective of zoning where –
 - (i) the area falls within 300m of the mean high water springs along the coast (east/west coasts); or
 - (ii) an area within 300m of the mean high water springs of the coastal marine area (as defined in the Resource Management Act 1991) of a harbour (Mangawhai and Kaipara Harbours); or
 - (iii) an area located within 300m of the margins of the Kai Iwi Lakes.

'Customer' means a person who either discharges or has obtained a consent to discharge or direct the manner of discharge of wastewater from any premises to the public sewer of Council.

'Disconnection' means the physical cutting and sealing off of any of Council's water services, utilities, drains or sewer so that it cannot receive discharges from a premise or premises.

'District' means the district of Kaipara District Council.

'Fees and Charges' means Council's Schedule of Fees and Charges.

'Infiltration' means groundwater or surface water entering a public sewer or private wastewater drain through defects such as, however not limited to, poor joints and cracks in pipes or manholes. It does not include inflow.

'Inflow' means water discharged into a drain from non-complying connections or other drainage faults. It includes stormwater entering through illegal downpipe connections or from low gully traps.

'Maintenance and Operation Plan' means a plan for an onsite wastewater disposal system prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person (SQP) and approved by Council.

'Nuisances' are defined for the purposes of the Health Act 1956 by s29 of that Act, by which a nuisance shall be deemed to be created where any pool, ditch, gutter, watercourse, sanitary convenience, cesspool, drain, or vent pipe is in such a state or is so situated as to be offensive or likely to be injurious to health and or the environment. This may also include surface emission of contaminated groundwater or contaminated groundwater extending beyond the property boundary.

'Onsite wastewater disposal system' means any system for the reception and disposal of wastewater, including any septic tank, mechanical system, alternative system cesspit, drainage or soakage pit or bore; and the field tiles, scoria or stone contained therein; and, distribution

bore, discharge field or soakage field that is a part of, or is connected to, any such system.

'Operative date' means the date upon which this Policy and Bylaw became operative being 1 November 2016.

'Point of discharge' is the boundary between the public wastewater system and a private drain.

'Premises' means either:

- a) A property or allotment which is held under a separate Certificate of Title or for which a separate Certificate of Title may be issued and for which a building consent has been or may be issued; or
- b) A building that has been defined as an individual unit by a cross-lease, unit title or company lease and for which a Certificate of Title is available; or
- c) Land held in public ownership (e.g. reserve) for a particular purpose; or
- d) Individual units in buildings, which are separately leased or separately occupied; or
- e) Other land.

'Private drain' means that section of drain between the premises and the point of discharge to a public wastewater system. This section of drain is owned and maintained by the owner or owners of premises unless otherwise specified in this Policy or Bylaw.

'Public drain' has the same meaning as sewer.

'Rising main' means a sewer through which wastewater is pumped.

'Service area' means the district or part thereof of the district for which Council may provide a wastewater system, including, with the consent of the territorial authority, any area within that district.

'Service opening' means a manhole or similar means for gaining access for inspection, cleaning or maintenance of a public sewer.

'Sewer' means the public sewer and lateral connections that carry away wastewater from the point of discharge. The public sewer is owned, administered and maintained by Council. This term is used interchangeably with 'public drain'.

'Stormwater' means surface water run-off resulting from precipitation.

'Suitably Qualified Person (SQP)' means any person recognised or approved by Council as being suitably qualified to prepare appropriate reports, designs and assessments for onsite wastewater disposal systems.

'Trade premises' means:

- a) Any premises used or intended to be used for any industrial or trade purpose; or
- b) Any premises used or intended to be used for the storage, transfer, treatment or disposal of waste materials or for other waste management purposes or used for composting organic materials; or
- c) Any other premises from which a contaminant is discharged in connection with any

industrial or trade process; or

- d) Any other premises discharging other than domestic sewage and includes any land or premises wholly or mainly used for agricultural or horticultural purposes.

'Trade waste' is any liquid, with or without matter in suspension or solution, that is or may be discharged from a trade premises to the Kaipara District Council wastewater system in the course of any trade or industrial process or operation, or in the course of any activity or operation of a like nature; and may include condensing or cooling waters; stormwater which cannot be practically separated, or domestic wastewater.

'Unacceptable discharge' means a wastewater which is not acceptable for discharge into Council's wastewater system because it is not an 'acceptable discharge' as detailed in Schedule A.

"Wastewater" means the discharge from any sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances.

'Wastewater system' means a public wastewater system for the collection, treatment and disposal of sewage and trade wastes, including all sewers, pumping stations, storage tanks, wastewater treatment plants, outfalls, and other related structures operated by Council and used for the reception, treatment and disposal of trade wastes.

3 Domestic wastewater

Domestic wastewater, as defined in the Bylaw, shall include wastewater produced by the draining of domestic swimming and spa pools subject to a maximum flow rate for discharge (refer to s15.5 of this Policy and clause 7.1 of the Wastewater Drainage Bylaw).

Where part of a residential premises is used as an office or other trade-related activity from which no trade waste is produced, and which no other persons apart from those living at those premises use, then it shall be treated as domestic premises.

No domestic wastewater shall:

- a) Exceed the substance or flow limits detailed in the Bylaw;
- b) Contain unacceptable discharges as defined in the Bylaw.

4 Acceptance and duration

4.1 General

Council shall continue to accept wastewater from premises once an approved connection to the public sewer has been made. Disconnection of the sewer or restriction of the water supply are not options available in the event of non-compliance with the law and/or Bylaws by the customer. Refer to s18 of this Policy for remedies which are available. For the customer's obligations refer to s15 of this Policy.

4.2 Change of ownership

In the event of premises changing ownership, the new owner shall automatically become the new customer of that premise.

5 Application to connect

5.1 Application: Domestic wastewater

Any person can apply to be connected to a Council wastewater treatment system where one is available. An application for a wastewater service connection shall be made in writing on the prescribed form together with the prescribed charges. The applicant shall provide all the details required by Council. An application can be made whether or not a public sewer has already been laid up to the point of discharge.

Council will consider applications and where Council accepts there will be a suitable benefit to provide a connection the application will be accepted. Considerations may include practicality and cost implications. Conditions may be imposed regarding timing and cost contributions.

Where an application has been accepted by Council, which requires a new public sewer connection to be constructed from the existing public sewer to the point of discharge, the customer shall pay such charges as fixed by Council for this work.

Council shall supply and install the public sewer up to the point of discharge except as provided for in s5.3 of this Policy.

Refer to s17 of this Policy for payment of connection charges.

5.2 Application procedure for trade waste discharges

Premises which produce trade wastes which have characteristics outside of those specified for acceptable discharge in Schedule A of the Bylaw, are not entitled to have their wastewater accepted by Council. Acceptance of trade wastes (if any) will be subject to a separate agreement with Council. This is taking into account the capacity of the particular wastewater treatment system to properly treat the trade waste in accordance with the discharge permit applicable to the system.

5.3 Subdivision

Where a new public sewer is required as part of a subdivisional development, the developer shall provide all the drainage works subject to approval by Council of the design and construction of the works. These will be addressed by way of the RMA91 and Rules in the Kaipara District Plan.

6 Point of discharge

6.1 General

The point of discharge from a customer shall be the point on the public sewer which marks the boundary of responsibility between the customer and the Council, irrespective of property boundaries.

Unless otherwise approved there shall be one point of discharge only for each premise and any private drain shall not extend by pipe or any other means to serve another premises unless it is a common private drain.

6.2 Single ownership

For single dwelling units the point of discharge shall be located at the point of physical connection to the public sewer, whether it be within a road, other public lands or private land.

The approval of Council is required to more than one point of discharge and must be recorded on the drainage plan (refer to s14 of this Policy).

final

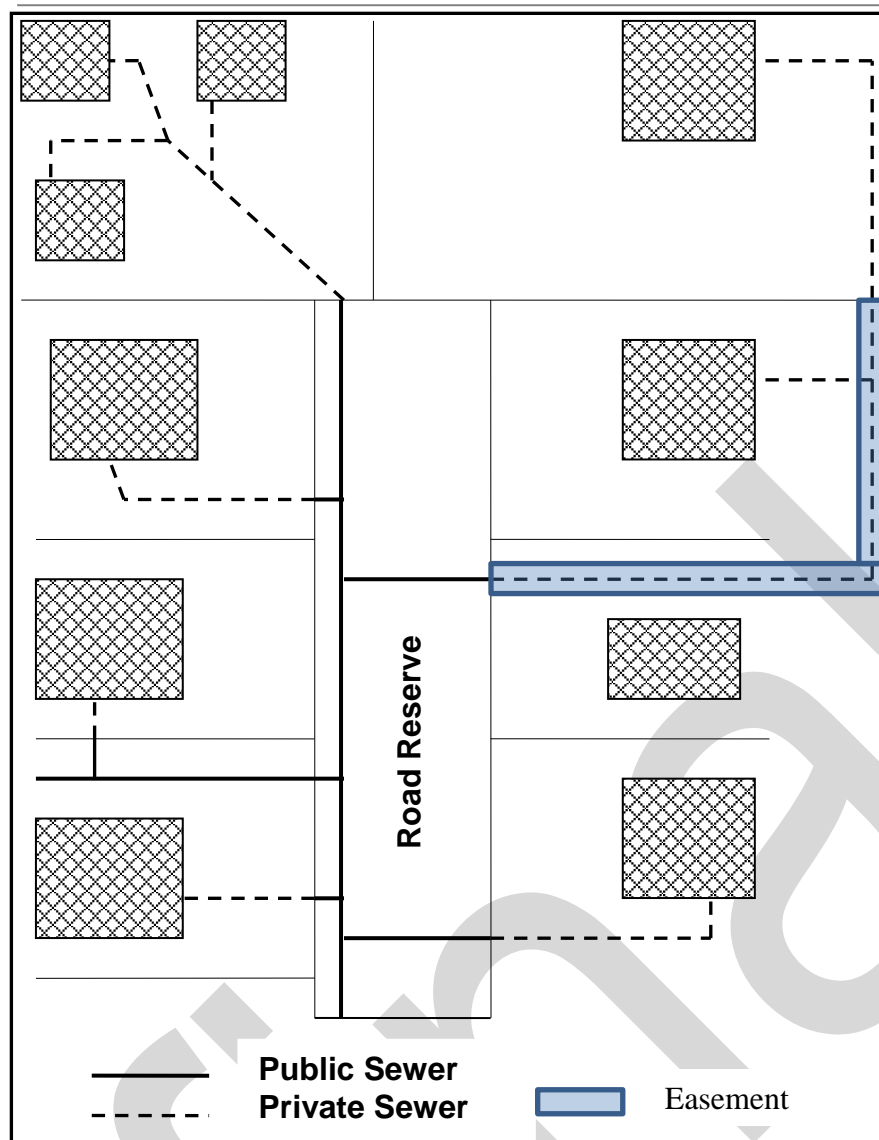


Table 1 (Policy): Point of discharge locations

6.3 Multiple ownership

The point of discharge for the different forms of multiple ownership of premises and/or land shall be as follows:

- For company share/block scheme (body corporate), as for single ownership;
- For leasehold/tenancy in common scheme (cross-lease), strata title and unit title (body corporate). Where practicable each owner shall have an individual drain with the point of discharge determined by agreement with Council. If not practicable there shall be a common private drain which shall be incorporated as an additional provision in the lease agreement. In specific cases other arrangements will be acceptable subject to individual approval.

Each owner's point of discharge must be approved by Council and recorded on the drainage plan. Other arrangements shall be considered only where there are advantages to Council. Approval will be given in the form of a building consent.

6.4 Common private drains

Common private drains shall serve a maximum of five single dwelling units and may also have one point of discharge only (in common).

Under s461(2) of LGA74, common drains shall be covered by a certificate from Council recording the rights of each party, which is registered against the Certificate of Title.

7 Acceptance of wastewater and duration

7.1 General

Council shall continue to accept wastewater from premises once an approved connection to the public sewer has been made. Disconnection of the sewer or restriction of the water supply are not options available in the event of non-compliance with the law and/or Bylaws by the customer.

Disconnections as a result of dwelling removal require redundant drains to be capped and inspected by Council prior to burying.

7.2 Change of ownership

In the event of premises changing ownership, the new owner shall automatically become the new customer of that premise.

8 Level of service

Council shall provide wastewater services in accordance with the level of service contained in Council's Long Term Plan 2015/2025.

9 Liability

Council shall not be liable for any loss, damage or inconvenience which the customer (or any person within the premises) may sustain as a result of deficiencies in the wastewater collection system.

10 Emergency

Natural hazards (such as floods or earthquakes) or accidents beyond the control of Council, which result in disruptions to the ability of Council to receive wastewater, will be deemed an emergency.

During an emergency Council may restrict or prohibit the discharge of wastewater for any specified purpose, for any specified period and for any or all of its customers.

Such restrictions shall be publicly notified. The decision to make and lift restrictions, and to enact additional penalties, shall be made by Council or where immediate action is required the officer of the Council authorised for that purpose subject to subsequent Council ratification.

11 Maintenance and repair

Where it is not practical to notify the customer of a maintenance interruption to the point of discharge before work commences, Council may shut down the point of discharge without notice and the customer shall be advised as soon as possible.

12 Blockages

A customer whose gully trap is overflowing or who has other reasons to suspect a blockage, shall contact Council immediately. Council will arrange to check the public sewer, and to clear and remove the blockage, and clean up all affected areas. If the blockage is within the customer's private drain the customer shall be charged in accordance with Council's current schedule of Fees and Charges. Current Fees and Charges can be viewed on Council's website.

If the blockage is found to be within the public sewer, then provided that the blockage has not been forced downstream into the public sewer in an act of clearing it from the private drain, or that the customer has not been negligent in discharging non-domestic wastewater or in allowing other material to enter the system, then Council shall cover all costs. Otherwise, Council shall recover the costs of the unblocking work from the customer.

13 Trees

In the event of the roots of any tree on any private property causing or being likely to cause damage, interference to the flow or blockage to a public sewer Council shall follow the procedure set out in s468 of LGA74.

14 Working around buried services

Council shall use its best endeavours to keep and maintain drainage plans of the location of its buried services. This information shall be available for inspection during normal business hours at no cost to the user. Reasonable charges may be levied to cover the costs of making copies available.

Any person proposing to carry out excavation work shall view the as-built information to establish whether or not Council services are located in the vicinity. At least three days' notice in writing shall be given to Council of an intention to excavate in the vicinity of the buried services. Where appropriate, Council may mark out to within ± 1.0 metre on the ground the location of its services and may nominate in writing any reasonable restrictions on the work it considers necessary to protect the buried services.

When excavating and working around buried services due care shall be taken to ensure the services are not damaged and that bedding and backfill is reinstated in accordance with the appropriate Council specification. Excavation within roadways is also subject to the permit process of the appropriate roading authority.

Any damage which occurs to a buried service or other Council asset shall be reported to Council immediately. Repair costs may be charged for. Council will encourage people to consult with other organisations as to where their services may be buried e.g. telephone lines.

15 Customer's drainage system

15.1 General

The customer's drainage system is governed by the Building Act 2004 from inside the building to the point of discharge. Council may not impose any requirement on the customer, which is more onerous than is contained in the Building Code.

The customer's drainage system shall be designed, installed and maintained, both in its component parts and in its entirety, to ensure that it complies with the Building Act 2004 and the Building Code.

Drainage from premises constructed, or for which construction was commenced, prior to the coming into force of the Building Act 2004, does not need to be upgraded to meet the requirements of the Building Code. If however any work is required on the customer's drainage system, arising from:

- a) the issuing of a defect notice;
- b) alteration to the premises;
- c) change of use of the premises;

then any such work shall meet the requirements of the Building Code.

Customers with discharges from premises not covered by the Building Act 2004 and the Building Code shall nevertheless have a drainage system, which complies with the Building Act 2004 and Building Code.

15.2 Waste minimisation

In order to meet the principles of sustainable management as promoted by RMA91, Council will encourage customers to fit the devices contained in 'Table 2' on all new installations.

Table 2: Waste minimisation devices

Device value	Value
Dual flush toilet cistern	Flush 1 6 litres Flush 2 3 litres
Low flow showerheads	Maximum 10 litres per minute
Urinal flushing control	On-Demand Controller

15.3 Inflow and infiltration

Stormwater shall be excluded from the wastewater system by ensuring that:

- a) There is no direct connection of any stormwater pipe or drain to the wastewater;
- b) Gullytrap surrounds are set above stormwater ponding levels (refer Building Code) or secondary overland flow path flood levels;
- c) Inspection covers are in place and are appropriately sealed.

For large impervious areas (e.g. stockyards or truck washing facilities), specific provision shall be made for a permanent barrier that will prevent water from outside the confines of the facility

from entering the wastewater system. This could be by way of a nib wall, speed humps or appropriately graded surrounds.

Where it is impractical to cover a large impervious area, consideration shall be given to a system which detains run-off from the "first foul flush" for ultimate disposal to the wastewater system, with subsequent run-off disposal as stormwater. A building consent may be required.

Private drains shall be kept and maintained in a state which is free from cracks and other defects which may allow infiltration.

15.4 Pump stations

General: Private wastewater pump stations will be approved only where there are no practical alternatives for a gravity flow discharge to the public sewer.

Single ownership: A private wastewater pump station for a single dwelling unit represents an alternative solution in terms of the Building Act 2004. As such, the customer (owner) will be required to demonstrate that the pump station complies with the provisions of the Building Code when seeking a consent. All operation and maintenance costs are the owners' responsibility.

Multiple ownership: A private wastewater pump station serving more than one residential dwelling unit requires a compliance schedule as well as an annual building warrant of fitness in order to meet the requirements of the Building Act 2004.

A "Common Pump Station Agreement" shall be required between the parties, including appropriate maintenance of rising mains. It shall be registered against the Certificate of Title of each party.

The rate of discharge of any private wastewater pump to the public sewer shall not exceed the lesser of the rate specified by Council or 2.0 litres per second.

15.5 Swimming pools

Customers with swimming or spa pools shall be required to demonstrate that the pool drain has been fitted with a flow limiting device to ensure the discharge does not exceed the maximum instantaneous flow requirement of 2.0 litres per second.

16 Operation and maintenance of onsite wastewater treatment systems

16.1 The risk to public health and to the environment of poorly operating private onsite wastewater treatment systems, needs to be minimised.

16.2 Council will implement a WOF programme. This will include a maintenance and performance inspection and approval programme for onsite wastewater treatment systems throughout the district. This programme will include minimum information required for building consent applications, inspection and maintenance requirements and ongoing reporting requirements to Council. Property owners will be responsible for ensuring inspection and maintenance requirements are carried out (refer to s12 of the Wastewater Drainage Bylaw).

16.3 Policies in the District Plan state that in conjunction with NRC, the District Plan seeks to ensure

that activities do not affect Sensitive Receiving Environments and provide appropriate management, including wastewater and stormwater systems to ensure that discharges do not result in adverse effects on sensitive receiving environments. Council will also use its Wastewater Policy and Bylaw to ensure activities do not discharge wastewater in a manner that adversely affects the environment and public health.

16.4 Onsite wastewater treatment systems have to comply with the requirements in **Schedule B of the Bylaw**. Upon adoption of this Policy, Council shall begin a programme of inspection of onsite systems within the coverage areas in the Kaipara District:

The coverage area being-

- (1) all Residentially zoned land, as identified in the Kaipara District Plan; and
- (2) all land irrespective of zoning where –
 - (i) the area falls within 300m of the mean high water springs along the coast (east/west coasts); or
 - (ii) an area within 300m of the mean high water springs of the coastal marine area (as defined in the Resource Management Act 1991) of a harbour (Mangawhai and Kaipara Harbours); or
 - (iii) an area located within 300m of the margins of the Kai Iwi Lakes.

16.5 *During the next review of the Wastewater Drainage Policy and Wastewater Bylaw consideration will be given as to whether or not to extend the coverage area to which the on-site wastewater inspection and maintenance regime will apply. This could potentially lead to the whole District being covered by this policy and the Wastewater Drainage Bylaw.*

If through the inspection and maintenance regime it is found that there is a high number of effluent nuisances, cross connection issues (between Stormwater and wastewater systems), or other issues affecting the effective operation of on site wastewater systems, this may trigger the need to review the coverage area of the Bylaw. The review would include a public consultation process, prior to any decision to extend the area being made.

Council will put in place monitoring at selected sites to help gauge how well the Bylaw is working and to help determine if the coverage area needs to be extended. If the results of monitoring suggest the coverage area should be extended a public consultation process will need to be undertaken prior to a final decision being made.

16.6 Inspections will be carried out by a suitably qualified person with inspections and/or maintenance being carried out at no more than three-yearly intervals; or at any lesser interval if recommended by the manufacturer and/or system designer; or less than three years if Council considers necessary in cases where Council is aware that any onsite system may not be compliant with Schedule B of the Bylaw or may be causing a "nuisance".

- 16.7** Inspections and maintenance undertaken by a suitability qualified person will be organised by the owner/owners of the premises served by the onsite wastewater treatment system at the owner/owners cost.
- 16.8** After each inspection, the suitably qualified person will complete a report on the onsite wastewater system, for the property owner to provide to Council.
- 16.9** If from the report Council finds that the system is compliant with Schedule B of the Bylaw, Council will notify the owner and note the date for the next inspection. A copy of this notification will be sent to NRC.
- 16.10** If from the report Council determines that the system is not compliant with the required standards, owners may be contacted by either NRC (for major failure) or KDC (for minor failures) of what corrective actions need to be taken.

This may include:

- a) where the "private drain" from the "premises" can lawfully be required to connect to a public wastewater system pursuant to s459 of LGA74, serve notice requiring connection under s459(1) of the Act (or under the Building Act 2004); or
 - b) where the "private drain" from the premises cannot lawfully be required to connect to a public wastewater system, Council will notify the owner outlining the repairs required for their system to comply with Schedule B of the Bylaw and when the repairs have been completed the owner will advise Council and a further inspection will be made at the owners' cost. The system shall be deemed to remain compliant with Schedule B of the Bylaw until the repairs or upgrades have been completed or for a period of three months, whichever is the lesser.
- 16.11** There will be no duplication between Northland Regional Council's monitoring requirements and the Kaipara District Council Wastewater Drainage Bylaw requirements. Where an onsite wastewater system owner has a Resource Consent from the Regional Council, the requirement to comply with the Bylaw maybe waived where the Regional Council Consent Conditions have higher or same requirements than the Bylaw. In these circumstances the monitoring reports from the Northland Regional Council will be deemed appropriate to show compliance with the bylaw. Where the Northland Regional Council monitoring reports are not deemed appropriate then an assessment under the Wastewater Drainage Bylaw will need to be undertaken. This will be determined on a case by case basis. The Kaipara Council will work with the Regional Council to remove any duplication in process.
- 16.12** Council will use the Kaipara District Wastewater Drainage Bylaw 2016 to ensure compliance with the Kaipara District Council Wastewater Drainage Policy.

17 Payment

Payment for the discharge of wastewater and related services, including charges for a maintenance and performance inspection and approval programme for onsite wastewater

treatment systems and any other public wastewater system, shall be in accordance with Council's current schedule of Fees and Charges.

18 Breaches and remedies

18.1 Powers

Powers to enforce penalties relating to the discharging of wastewater by customers are given to Council by a number of Acts. LGA02 deals specifically with trade wastes. Other relevant pieces of legislation are more indirect in application. The Local Government (Rating) Act 2002 (LGRA02) allows for action to be taken when rates are unpaid.

The relevant legislation includes:

- Local Government Act 2002;
- Local Government (Rating) Act 2002;
- Health Act 1956 Part II;
- Building Act 2004.

19 Failure to pay

Any money owing for rates for wastewater services becomes a charge on the land.

20 Making a Bylaw

In exercise of the powers and authorities vested in it by s145 and s146 of LGA02 and s64 of the Health Act 1956, KDC will, as well as other means available to it, use a Bylaw to give effect to the Kaipara District Wastewater Drainage Policy 2016 in order to protect its wastewater assets, protect public health and to regulate onsite wastewater systems.

The proposed Bylaw may be referred to as the Kaipara District Wastewater Drainage Bylaw 2016, and except for those parts declared to be limited or extended in their operation, shall apply to the whole of the Kaipara district.

21 Legal context

The discharge and acceptance of wastewater is subject to a number of Acts, Regulations, Bylaws, Codes and Standards the most relevant of which are listed below.

a) Statutes and Regulations

- Building Act 2004 ("the Building Act");
- Building Regulations 1992 (including the Building Code);
- Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996;
- Hazardous Substances Regulations;
- Health Act 1956;
- Health and Safety in Employment Act 1992;
- Land Transfer Act 1952;
- Local Government Act 1974 (LGA74);
- Local Government Act 2002 (LGA02);

-
- Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers Act 1976;
 - Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers Act 2006;
 - Property Law Act 2007;
 - Local Government (Rating) Act 2002 (LGRA02);
 - Resource Management Act 1991 ("RMA").
- b) Codes and Standards
- Building Code;
 - NZS 9201, Model General Bylaws, Part 22:1999, Wastewater Drainage;
 - NZS 9201, Model General Bylaws, Part 23:2004, Trade Waste;
 - NZS 9201, Model General Bylaws, Chapter 7:1994, Water Supply, Part 2 Water Supply Bylaw;
 - NZS 9201, Model General Bylaws, Part 27: 2000, Onsite wastewater disposal systems;
 - ASNZS1547:2012, Onsite domestic wastewater management;
 - Kaipara District Code of Practice for Subdivision and Land Developments,



Kaipara District

Wastewater Drainage Bylaw 2016

September 2016



Kaipara te Oranganui

**KAIPARA
DISTRICT**

Two Oceans Two Harbours

PART II

Kaipara District Wastewater Drainage Bylaw

1 Introduction

The Bylaw places obligations on persons using public and private wastewater systems and provides clarity on all steps to be taken to connect to public systems and to operate and maintain private systems.

The Bylaw imposes requirements on:

- a) persons connected to a public wastewater system, who are to operate and maintain “private connection works” and protect the public wastewater system from damage and misuse that has the potential to create a nuisance and adversely affect the environment and public health.
- b) owners of onsite wastewater treatment systems in the Kaipara district to ensure that private onsite wastewater disposal systems are installed, operated, repaired or extended, and is done so under the required standards of KDC, and that they are assessed and maintained at regular intervals as required under the WOF programme.
- c) Requiring connection to a Council wastewater system where available where onsite systems are creating a nuisance or are adversely affecting the environment.

The “operative date” of this Bylaw is 01 November 2016.

2 Purpose of Bylaw

This Bylaw is to give effect to the Kaipara Wastewater Drainage Policy 2016. The Bylaw is made under s145 and s146 of LGA02 and s64 of the Health Act with the principal purposes of:

- a) improving, promoting, or protecting public health, and preventing or abating nuisances;
- b) regulating drainage and the collection and disposal of sewage, and prescribing conditions to be observed in the design and construction of approved drains, to protect the public wastewater system from damage and misuse that has the potential to create a nuisance and adversely affect the environment and public health;
- c) regulating onsite wastewater systems; and
- d) providing for the inspection of any land or premises for the purposes of this Bylaw.

3 Definitions

For the purposes of this Bylaw the following definitions shall apply:

‘Acceptable discharge’ means wastewater with physical and chemical characteristics, as detailed in Schedule A of the Bylaw.

‘Allotment’ means:

- a) any parcel of land under the Land Transfer Act 1952 that is a continuous area and whose boundaries are shown separately on a survey plan, whether or not—
 - (i) the subdivision shown on the survey plan has been allowed, or subdivision approval has been granted, under another Act; or
 - (ii) a subdivision consent for the subdivision shown on the survey plan has been granted under this Act; or
- b) any parcel of land or building or part of a building that is shown or identified separately—
 - (i) on a survey plan; or
 - (ii) on a licence within the meaning of Part 7A of the Land Transfer Act 1952; or
- c) any unit on a unit plan; or
- d) any parcel of land not subject to the Land Transfer Act 1952.

‘Approval or Approved’ means approval or approved in writing by Council, either by resolution of Council or by an officer of Council authorised for that purpose or with the relevant delegated authority.

‘Alternative systems’ means onsite systems that separate all, or some of, the greywater from toilet wastewater for treatment. This may result in two separate wastewater streams that require disposal.

‘Buried services’ means all public sewers, rising mains, trunk sewers and other underground utilities under the responsibility of Council.

‘Building Act 2004’ means the Building Act and any subsequent legislation.

‘Building Code’ means the Building Code and any subsequent amendments.

‘Characteristic’ means any of the physical or chemical characteristics of wastewater to be discharged to the public sewer.

‘Code Compliance Certificate’ means a certificate issued under s96 of the Building Act 2004 or under s43 of the Building Act 1991.

‘Council’ means Kaipara District Council.

‘Coverage Area’ Means:

- (1) all Residentially zoned land, as identified in the Kaipara District Plan; and
- (2) all land irrespective of zoning where –
 - (i) the area falls within 300m of the mean high water springs along the coast (east/west coasts); or
 - (ii) an area within 300m of the mean high water springs of the coastal marine area (as defined in the Resource Management Act 1991) of a harbour (Mangawhai and Kaipara Harbours); or
 - (iii) an area located within 300m of the margins of the Kai Iwi Lakes.

‘Customer’ means a person who either discharges or has obtained a consent to discharge or direct the manner of discharge of wastewater from any premises to the Council’s public sewer.

‘Disconnection’ means the physical cutting and sealing off of any of Council’s water services, utilities, drains or sewer so that it cannot receive discharges from a premise or premises.

‘District’ means the district of Kaipara District Council.

‘Fees and Charges’ means Council’s Schedule of Fees and Charges.

‘Infiltration’ means groundwater or surface water entering a public sewer or private wastewater drain through defects such as, however not limited to, poor joints and cracks in pipes or manholes. It does not include inflow.

‘Inflow’ means water discharged into a drain from non-complying connections or other drainage faults. It includes stormwater entering through illegal downpipe connections or from low gully traps.

‘Maintenance and Operation Plan’ means a plan for an onsite wastewater disposal system prepared by a suitably qualified person and approved by Council.

‘Mechanical systems’ means any system designed for the disposal of wastewater which operates in a mechanical way, and is driven by a power source, which is not a conventional septic tank or similar type system.

‘Nuisances’ are defined for the purposes of the Health Act 1956 by s29 of that Act, by which a nuisance shall be deemed to be created where any pool, ditch, gutter, watercourse, sanitary convenience, cesspool, drain or vent pipe is in such a state or is so situated as to be offensive or likely to be injurious to health and or the environment. This may also include surface emission of contaminated groundwater or contaminated groundwater extending beyond the property boundary.

‘Onsite wastewater disposal system’ means any system for the reception and disposal of wastewater, including any septic tank, mechanical system, alternative system cesspit, drainage or soakage pit or bore; and the field tiles, scoria or stone contained therein; and, distribution bore, discharge field or soakage field that is a part of, or is connected to, any such system.

‘Operative date’ means the date upon which this Policy and Bylaw became operative being 1 November 2016.

‘Point of discharge’ is the boundary between the public wastewater system and a private drain.

‘Premises’ means either:

- a) A property or allotment which is held under a separate Certificate of Title or for which a separate Certificate of Title may be issued and for which a building consent has been or may be issued; or
- b) A building that has been defined as an individual unit by a cross-lease, unit title or company lease and for which a Certificate of Title is available; or
- c) Land held in public ownership (e.g. reserve) for a particular purpose; or

- d) Individual units in buildings, which are separately leased or separately occupied; or
- e) Other land.

‘Private drain’ means that section of drain between the premises and the point of discharge to a public wastewater system. This section of drain is owned and maintained by the owner or owners of premises unless otherwise specified in this Policy or Bylaw.

‘Public drain’ has the same meaning as sewer.

‘Rising main’ means a sewer through which wastewater is pumped.

‘Septic tank’ means any fixed receptacle installed outside of a building designed for the reception and disintegration of solid matters in wastewater by methods which do not involve mechanical processes, and includes the drainage fields.

‘Service area’ means the district or part thereof of the district for which Council may provide a wastewater system including, with the consent of the territorial authority, any area within that district.

‘Service opening’ means a manhole, or similar means for gaining access for inspection, cleaning or maintenance, of a public sewer.

‘Sewer’ means the public sewer and lateral connections that carry away wastewater from the point of discharge. The public sewer is owned, administered and maintained by Council. This term is used interchangeably with ‘public drain’.

‘Stormwater’ means surface water run-off resulting from precipitation.

‘Suitably Qualified Person’ means any person recognised or approved by Council as being suitably qualified to prepare appropriate reports, designs and assessments for onsite wastewater disposal systems.

‘Trade premises’ means:

- a) Any premises used or intended to be used for any industrial or trade purpose; or
- b) Any premises used or intended to be used for the storage, transfer, treatment or disposal of waste materials or for other waste management purposes, or used for composting organic materials; or
- c) Any other premises from which a contaminant is discharged in connection with any industrial or trade process; or
- d) Any other premises discharging other than domestic sewage and includes any land or premises wholly or mainly used for agricultural or horticultural purposes.

‘Trade waste’ is any liquid, with or without matter in suspension or solution, that is or may be discharged from a trade premises to Council’s wastewater system in the course of any trade or industrial process or operation, or in the course of any activity or operation of a like nature; and may include condensing or cooling waters; stormwater which cannot be practically separated, or domestic wastewater.

‘Trunk sewer’ means a sewer, generally greater than 150mm in diameter, which forms a part of the principal reticulation network of Council’s wastewater system.

‘Unacceptable discharge’ means a wastewater which is not acceptable for discharge into the Council wastewater system, because it is not an ‘acceptable discharge’ as detailed in Schedule A.

‘Wastewater’ means the discharge from any sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances.

‘Wastewater system’ means a public wastewater system for the collection, treatment and disposal of sewage and trade wastes, including all sewers, pumping stations, storage tanks, wastewater treatment plants, outfalls, and other related structures operated by Council and used for the reception, treatment and disposal of trade wastes.

final

Part A – Public wastewater systems

4 Acceptance of discharge

4.1 Wastewater

Every premise shall be entitled to have its wastewater accepted to a wastewater system by Council subject to:

- a) The premises lying within a service area if such an area has been designated by Council; and
- b) The premises lying within an area which is served by a public drain; and
- c) Payment of the appropriate rates and charges in respect of those premises in general and wastewater services in particular; and
- d) Compliance with all requirements of this Bylaw.

Council may require connection of premises to a public wastewater system under s459(1) of LGA74.

4.2 Trade waste

Premises which produce trade wastes which have characteristics outside of those specified for Acceptable Discharge in Schedule A, are not entitled to have their wastewater accepted by Council. Acceptance of trade wastes (if any) will be subject to a separate agreement with Council.

5 Approval to connect

No person other than the authorised agents of Council shall, without approval, make any connection to or otherwise interfere with any part of Council's wastewater system.

6 Continuity of discharge

Council does not guarantee to receive wastewater without interruption, however will use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that any disruption is kept to a minimum.

7 Premises

7.1 Flow rate

The maximum instantaneous flow rate discharged from a domestic premise shall not exceed 2.0 litres per second. Council may also set a maximum daily flow rate discharged from a domestic premise.

7.2 Unacceptable discharges

No wastewater, that does not meet the characteristics of Acceptable Discharge in Schedule A, shall be discharged into the wastewater system, except with the written agreement of Council.

7.3 Prevention of inflow and infiltration

The customer shall prevent any stormwater or groundwater entering the wastewater drainage system. This includes flow from roof downpipes, surface water run-off, overland flow and subsurface drainage.

8 Disconnection

A customer shall give seven working days' notice in writing of his or her intention to demolish or remove a building connected to the sewer. The demolition or removal shall not commence until the sewer has been disconnected to Council's satisfaction. At the owners' cost an inspection by Council shall be undertaken to ensure the drain has been capped correctly.

If relaying of a private drain is required a customer shall give two working days' notice in writing to Council of his or her requirement for disconnection of the discharge connections.

9 Protection of public wastewater systems

9.1 General

With respect to building or loading over buried services, or excavation near public sewers, the restrictions described in s9.2 to s9.4 shall apply. Other restrictions may be applied by Council for the protection of the wastewater system after consideration of proposed work methods, depth of excavation, soil physical properties and other site-specific factors.

9.2 Building over buried services

a) Rising mains and trunk sewers:

- i) No building shall be built over a public rising main or trunk sewer, or closer to a rising main or trunk sewer than a distance calculated as the greater of:

- a) 1.5 metres from the centre of any main or sewer; or
- b) the depth of the centre line of the rising main or trunk sewer, plus the diameter of the rising main or trunk sewer pipe, plus 0.2 metres from the centre of that sewer, subject to compliance with s3.1 of NZS 3604 Timber Framed Buildings.

b) Other public sewers:

- i) No building shall be built over a public sewer, whether on public or private land;
- ii) No building shall be built closer than a distance calculated as the greater of:
 - a) 1.5 metres from the centre of any public sewer, or
 - b) the depth of the centreline of the sewer pipe, plus the diameter of the sewer pipe, plus 0.2 metres, subject to compliance with s3.1 of NZS 3604 Timber Framed Buildings.
- iii) Council may allow the diversion of a sewer, however design and construction must be to Council's standards and entirely at the applicant's expense.
- iv) Where (i), (ii) and (iii) above are found to be impractical and the building cannot be sited elsewhere on the property or modified to conform with the above conditions, and it is

essential for the proposed building to be built on that part of the property, approval may be granted subject to the building developer meeting the cost of any specific requirements stipulated by Council. These may include the provision of access manholes, pipe strengthening, ducting, additional support of the building's foundations and relocatable construction (Schedule F has guidance on how you may build closer than 1.5 metres).

9.3 Loading or material over public sewers

No person shall cause the crushing load imposed on a public sewer to exceed that which would arise from the soil overburden plus a HN-HO-72 wheel or axle load (as defined by the NZTA Bridge Manual 3rd edition 2013).

No person shall place any additional material such as permanent structure or a tree over or near a public sewer without approval.

Service openings shall not be covered in any way without Council approval. Removal of any covering material or adjustment of the service opening shall be at the property owner's expense.

9.4 Excavation near public sewers

Except with the written approval of Council, no person shall excavate or carry out piling or similar work closer than:

- a) Five metres from the centre line of any rising main or trunk sewer; or
- b) Two metres from the centre line of any public sewer, without approval.

Such approval may impose conditions on the carrying out of any work near the sewer.

10 Storage of hazardous materials

The occupier or any premises shall not store raw material, products or wastes containing corrosive, toxic, biocidal, radioactive, flammable or explosive materials, or any material which, when mixed with the wastewater stream, is likely to generate toxic, flammable, explosive or corrosive materials in quantities likely to be hazardous, or any other material likely to be deleterious to Council's wastewater system or the health and safety of Council staff and the public, without taking all reasonable steps to prevent entry into Council's sewer from leakage, spillage or other mishap.

The occupier of any premise shall comply with the requirements of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996.

Part B - Onsite wastewater disposal systems

This section applies to all types of onsite wastewater disposal systems within the coverage area. Note: Owners of properties who wish to install a new onsite wastewater disposal system on their properties are required to apply for a building consent in terms of the Building Act 2004. Schedule B contains a process map and Schedule C provides guidance on the information requirements.

11 Requirements

- 11.1** All wastewater generated on an allotment not serviced by Council's wastewater network must be treated and disposed of within the confines of the allotment or other land for which legal rights for such disposal have been obtained.
- 11.2** Any new building that has been designed for or is used for human habitation, and is located in a part of the district, where connection to a public wastewater system is not available, shall be permitted if:
- a) it is connected to an onsite wastewater system designed by a suitably qualified person for the purposes of, wastewater disposal, and approved by Council; and
 - b) the owner of the property on which that building is sited has submitted to Council a Maintenance and Operation Plan for the onsite wastewater disposal system that has been prepared by a suitably qualified person, and that Plan has been approved by Council.
- 11.3** Where an onsite wastewater system has been installed as part of a building consent, prior to the issue of a Code of Compliance Certificate the owner or developer will be required, after all relevant inspections including a final inspection of completed work, to provide Council with the following:
- a) an "as-built" plan of the completed installation including disposal field (e.g. dripper lines) and reserve field with accurate dimensions;
 - b) completion documents including commissioning certificate, PS3 or PS4, as may be required; and
 - c) A signed copy of any maintenance contract between property owner and appropriate suitably qualified wastewater maintenance contractor.
- 11.4** The Maintenance and Operation Plan must include the information specified in Schedule C.
- 11.5** No person shall connect any waste disposal unit to any onsite wastewater system that is installed, enlarged or replaced after the date of the coming into force of this Bylaw.
- 11.6** The owner of a property upon which an onsite wastewater disposal system is located shall ensure that work required by the Maintenance and Operation Plan is carried out to the full extent, in the manner, to the standard and at such intervals and times as are stated in that Plan.

11.7 It is the property owners' responsibility to operate, clean and maintain an onsite wastewater disposal system at all times to ensure the full effectiveness of the system and that it does not create or cause a nuisance to health or the environment.

12 Maintenance requirements

12.1 All onsite wastewater treatment systems in the coverage area shall be subject to a maintenance and performance inspection and approval programme.

12.2 Council will notify property owners one month prior, when maintenance and inspections are due on their onsite wastewater system (step 2 in process diagram in Schedule B).

12.3 Council requires that every onsite wastewater disposal system of a septic tank or similar type system, be inspected and maintained by property owners at periods of not more than three yearly intervals, or otherwise in accordance with the manufacture or designer's maintenance recommendations' (step 1 and step 12 in process diagram in Schedule B); or

12.4 The owner of every property on which an onsite wastewater disposal system of a mechanical type is installed, shall have the system inspected and maintenance carried out by a suitably qualified person in accordance with the manufacturers and/or designer's instructions and recommendations (step 1 and step 12 in process diagram in Schedule B); or

12.5 The owner of every property on which an onsite wastewater disposal system of an alternative system type (new and existing) is installed, shall have inspections and maintenance carried out by a suitably qualified person in accordance with the manufacturer's and/or designer instructions and recommendations (step 1 and step 12 in process diagram in Schedule B) .

12.6 The maintenance referred to in clause 12.2, includes the de-sludging of the tank and a full site assessment by a suitably qualified person, as detailed in Schedule E to this Bylaw. Maintenance and inspections of Mechanical and Alternative Systems (s12.3 and s12.4), will be in the form that is provided in the Maintenance and Operation Plan required in clause 11.2 where there is one, or otherwise in accordance with the manufacturer's and/or designer's instructions and recommendations .

12.7 The owner/owners of 'premises' served by the onsite wastewater treatment system shall be responsible for the costs of inspection and maintenance.

12.8 If the owner fails to maintain the onsite wastewater disposal system as required by clause 12 Council may give notice to the owner of the land on which the onsite wastewater disposal system is located, requiring the owner to carry out such work, at the owners cost (step 4 in process diagram in Schedule B).

12.9 All de-sludging activities shall be carried out by an approved septic tank cleaning contractor. All sludge removed shall be disposed of at an approved septage receiving facility.

13 Supply and keeping of records

- 13.1 Every owner of a property within the coverage area, on which an onsite wastewater disposal system is installed shall provide evidence to Council in the form of a report from a suitability qualified person, to show that their disposal system has been assessed and/or maintained in accordance with clause 12 of this Bylaw (refer to Schedule E of this Bylaw) (step 3 in process diagram in Schedule B).
- 13.2 In some circumstances Council will accept monitoring reports from the Northland Regional Council appropriate to show compliance with this bylaw. This will be determined on a case by case basis. Where Northland Regional Council monitoring reports are not accepted as appropriate then inspection and maintenance as stipulated in Clause 12 will need to be undertaken. In any event, there will be no duplication between the Northland Regional Council's monitoring requirements and the Kaipara District Council Wastewater Drainage Bylaw requirements.

14 Requirement to connect or fix

- 14.1 Clauses 14.2, 14.3, and 14.4 will apply if Council forms the view that:
- (i) any maintenance or repair work is needed in order to ensure any onsite wastewater disposal system is able to continue to operate as designed:-
 - a) in compliance with the requirements of the Building Code; or
 - b) in compliance with all of the conditions of any building consent; or
 - c) in a sanitary and efficient manner; or
 - d) in a manner that is not likely to contaminate any water course or land; or
 - (ii) work required under the Maintenance and Operation Plan (refer to clause 11.2) applying to that site has not been undertaken (step 5 in process diagram in Schedule B).
- 14.2 Where the private drain from the premises cannot be required pursuant to s459 LGA74 to connect to a public wastewater system Council may give notice to the owner of the land on which the onsite wastewater disposal system is located, requiring the owner to carry out such maintenance and repair work, at the owner's cost. When that work has been completed the owner will advise Council and provide evidence of a further inspection by a suitability qualified person verifying compliance with clause 14.1(i) or (ii) as the case may be. The system shall be deemed to remain compliant until the repairs have been completed or for a period of three months whichever is the lesser (step 7 in process diagram in Schedule B).
- 14.3 Where the private drain from the premises can lawfully be required to connect to a public wastewater system pursuant to s459 LGA74, Council may serve notice requiring connection under s459(1) of that Act (or serve notice under the Building Act 2004 if dangerous or insanitary) (step 9 in process diagram in Schedule B).
- 14.4 Where filters are required to be installed this shall be done at the expense of the owner of the property.

15 Inspections and Failure to Fix

- 15.1** It shall be the owner's responsibility to ensure that access to any onsite wastewater disposal system tanks or holding vessels shall be free of obstruction when maintenance contractors are required to carry out work.
- 15.2** If given reasonable notice, taking into account the nature/urgency of inspection, no person shall deny access to a Council Officer or cause access to be impeded to premises, in order for the Council Officer to carry out an inspection.

final

- 15.3** Where an owner fails to undertake any works required pursuant to clause 14, Council may engage a suitability qualified person to undertake the remedial works and on-charge the costs to the owner of the property on which the onsite wastewater disposal system is located, or require connection to a public wastewater system (under s14.3), at the owner's expense. Charges will be in accordance with the Schedule D of the Bylaw.

Part C – Offences and penalties for breaches of the Bylaw

16 Offences

Every person commits an offence, who:

- a) fails to provide evidence of any assessment of an onsite wastewater system on their property in the manner described in clause 13.
- b) Acts contrary to, or fails to comply with any direction or prohibition given under this Bylaw.

17 Penalties for breaches of Bylaw

- 17.1** Every person who is convicted of an offence under this Bylaw is liable to a fine not exceeding \$20,000.

The foregoing Bylaw was made by the **Kaipara District Council** by Special Consultative Procedure and confirmed at a meeting of Council held on

This Bylaw becomes operative on

In witness whereof the Common Seal of the
Kaipara District Council was hereunto affixed
pursuant to a resolution of Council passed on
..... in the presence of:

..... Mayor/Chair

..... Chief Executive

Schedule A - Acceptable discharge

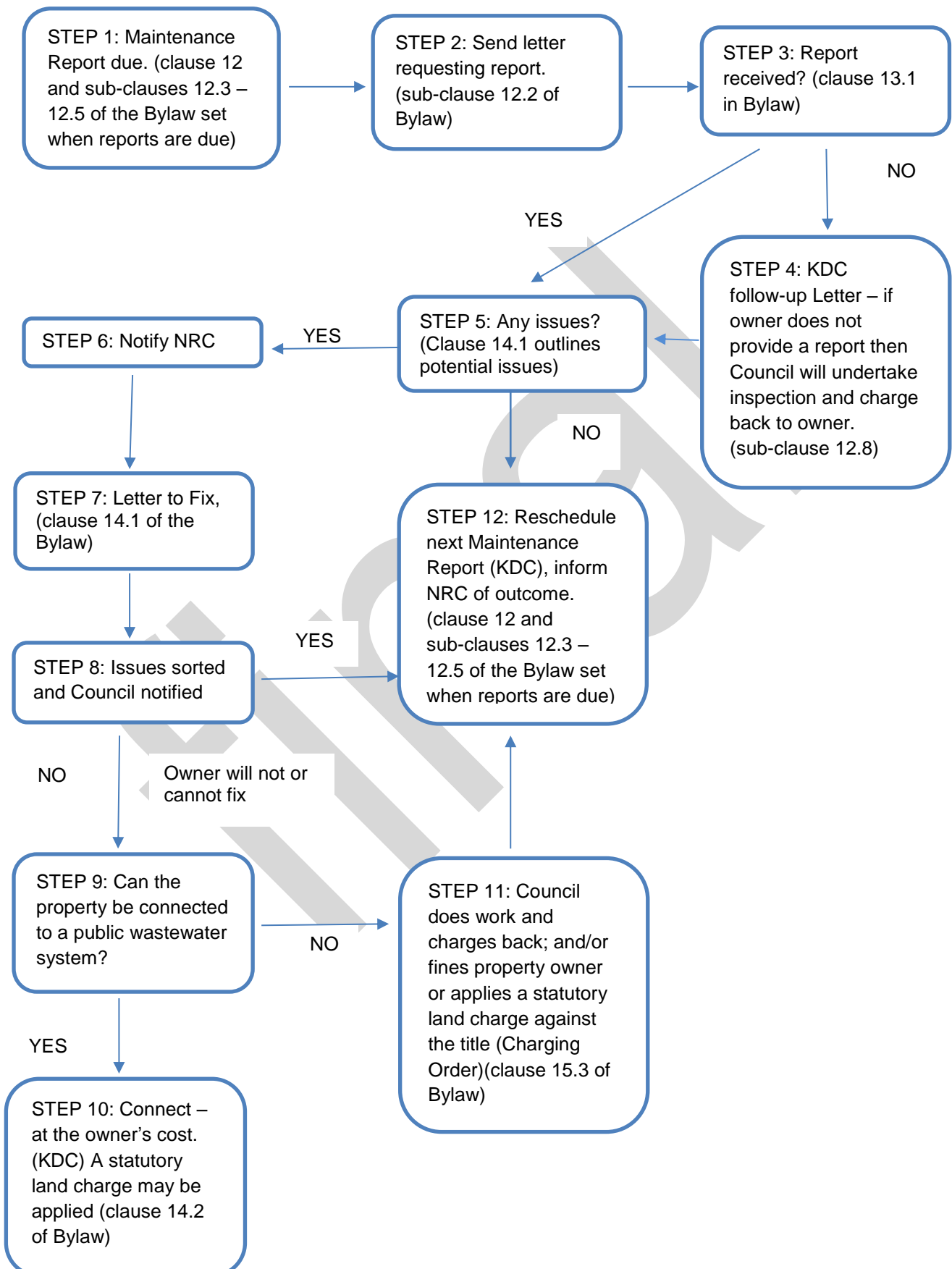
The following physical and chemical characteristics are the maximum permissible for the acceptance of wastewater into the public sewer from each Point of Discharge. Any increases in any characteristic would be subject to Council approval and would require a specific separate agreement with the property owner and/or occupier:

Parameter	Maximum mg/litre (except for flow, pH units, temperature and SAR)
Flow	6,000 litres per day at no more than 2 l/s
(BOD), 5-Day Biochemical Oxygen Demand	300
(COD), Chemical Oxygen Demand	800
Total Suspended Solids	300
Total Phosphorous	12
Total K Nitrogen	50
Total Dissolved Solids	750
Temperature	<38 degrees C
Oil/grease - extractable material	80
Aluminium	20
Ammonia	50
Arsenic	0.018
Beryllium	0.2
Boron	0.5
Cadmium	0.0015
Chloride	350
Chromium	0.25
Cobalt	0.1
Copper	0.15
Cyanide	0.34
Fluoride	2
Formaldehyde	50
Iron	20
Lead	0.1
Lithium	5
Manganese	10
Magnesium	50
Mercury	0.001
Molybdenum	0.04
Nickel	0.05
Oil/grease	150

Parameter	Maximum mg/litre (except for flow, pH units, temperature and SAR)
pH range	6-9
Phenol	10
Phenol-cresol	16
Silver	5
Sodium Absorption Ratio	<8
Selenium	0.005
Sulphates	500
Vanadium	0.2
Zinc	0.3
DDT, (Dichloro-Diphenyl-Trichloroethane) DDD; and DDE	0.0004 0.0004 (Trigger for sum of DDT, DDD and DDE parameters)
Dieldrin substances (Organo Chlorine Pesticides)	0.0001 Trigger for sum of all Organo Chlorine Pesticides
PCBs, (polychlorinated Biphenyl)	0.002

Schedule B – Onsite Wastewater Systems – Maintenance and Inspection (Warrant of Fitness)

Process Flowchart



Schedule C – Design Performance standards for onsite wastewater treatment systems

Detail and definition required for clause 11.4 of this Bylaw

The information that shall be required and provided by a suitably qualified person, in terms of clause 11.4 shall include, however not be limited to, the following:

- a) The procedure for testing and commissioning of a new, repaired, enlarged or replaced onsite effluent disposal system.
- b) The size and contours, and intended use of the site on which such a system is to be located.
- c) The soil condition, including their permeability and stability, and the results of porosity tests.
- d) The vegetative cover.
- e) The groundwater and surface water conditions.
- f) The location of existing, and proposed location of future buildings (and their size and intended use), parking areas and driveways within the boundaries of the property (source of wastewater).
- g) The location and standard of access for future maintenance of the facilities.
- h) The position of any adjacent or nearby streams or waterways.
- i) The identification of any known natural hazards that there are on, adjacent to, or near the site.
- j) A detailed plan for the future maintenance and operation of the onsite effluent disposal system. This shall include a layout plan of the proposed system, discharge areas and future reserve discharge area.
- k) Type of wastewater treatment system and disposal system, including any Certified Design Calculations.
- l) Intended water supply.
- m) Council's requirement is for all septic tanks to have a 3mm effluent filter fitted to the outlet. Should the designer recommend a filter not to be installed then Council may waive this requirement.

and

- n) Any other information requested by Council to ensure compliance with the provisions of TP058 and ASNZS 1547:

and

The designer shall clarify that the proposed new, repaired, enlarged or replacement onsite wastewater disposal system has been designed, and will be constructed by a Registered Drainlayer, in accordance with the provisions of TP58/ ASNZS / ASNZS1546.1.2008/ASNZS1547:2012, or any subsequent amendments or variation to these standard.

Schedule D – Fees and Charges

The following Fees and Charges will apply for work that has had to be commissioned pursuant to the provisions of clause 15.3 of this Bylaw:

- 1 The full and actual costs incurred in the employing of trades persons to carry out the work (*All such work should be covered by a Council Purchase Order to the contractor or tradesman*).
- 2 The full cost of any materials that have had to be purchased by Council in relation to the work.
- 3 The full cost of any sampling and testing that may be required.
- 4 All consent costs (resource, discharge or building).
- 5 All engineer's fees, draughtperson's or architect's fees.
- 6 All inspections by an Environmental Health Officer or Council officer, at a rate for inspection as defined in Council's Schedule of Fees and Charges.
- 7 All travel incurred in the transportation of materials, Council officer's travel etcetera (at a per kilometre charge, as defined in Council's Schedule of Fees and Charges) or engineer's or any other agent's travel costs.
- 8 Administration time for handling of the organisation of the work, letterwriting or any other related work, at a rate for administration costs, as per Council's Schedule of Fees and Charges.

Current Schedule of Fees and Charges can be found on Council's website www.kapara.govt.nz

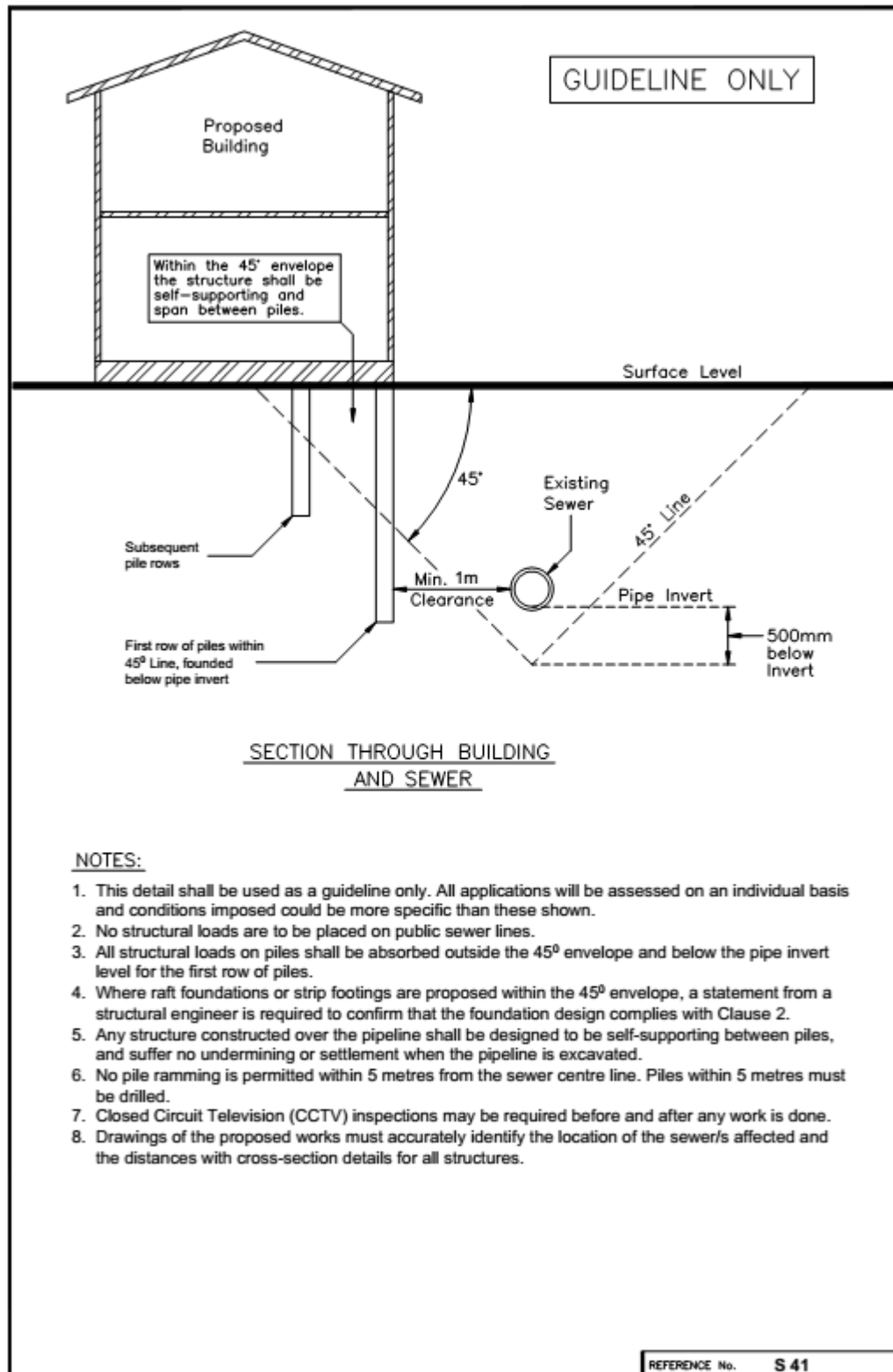
Schedule E – Onsite wastewater system inspection and maintenance reports

The purpose of this report is to provide minimum level inspection and maintenance reporting tools. However, for new onsite systems it is expected that the designer (as part of Schedule C) will produce site-specific 'future maintenance and operation' plan (refer Appendix C TP58) and shall have attached specific Inspection and Maintenance Reports.

DETAILS			
Date: / /	Time:	Day: MON TUE WED THU FRI SAT SUN	
Person's present on property during issue of notice:		Yes	No
Full Name			
Physical Address			
Telephone Number			
CHECKLIST			
SEPTIC TANK			COMMENTS
Inlet/outlet pipe in place	Yes	No	
Is there an effluent filter fitted?	Yes	No	
Inlet/outlet pipe correct height	Yes	No	
Outlet pipe restricted	Yes	No	
Tank lid fitted	Yes	No	
Mushroom in place	Yes	No	
Access unobstructed	Yes	No	
SOAKAGE FIELD			
Evidence of effluent run-off	Yes	No	
Excessive growth on soakage field	Yes	No	
GREASE TRAP			
Is there a grease trap fitted?	Yes	No	
Type of grease trap	Yes	No	
Is grease trap connected?	Yes	No	
ADDITIONAL DETAILS			
ADDITIONAL NOTES:			
Septage removed: m ³		Where was the septage disposed?	
Further investigation by Council required:		Yes	No
Contractor's name:		Signed:	
Contractor's telephone number:			
Bylaws can be viewed at Council offices and online at www.kaipara.govt.nz			

final

Schedule F – Guidance on building less than 1.5 metres away from buried services



Attachment C: Suggested changes to the Kaipara District Wastewater Drainage Bylaw 2016

Clause	Suggestion	Reasons
1 Introduction	Rewrite this as an explanatory note.	Clauses state rules, this introduction is just supporting information.
2 Purpose of Bylaw	Remove reference to the Kaipara Wastewater Drainage Policy 2016 (the Policy). Otherwise only minor changes.	It is suggested that the Policy be revoked and the relevant parts included as explanatory notes within the Bylaw. It is suggested that the purpose of this Bylaw remains just as relevant today as it was when the Bylaw was made in 2016.
3 Definitions	Numerous changes are suggested.	The suggested changes to other clauses of the bylaw invariably results in some definitions needing to be added, some needing to be removed and some needing to be amended.
4.1 Wastewater	Remove this subclause.	This subclause effectively grants an additional right to land owners in the district that Council will accept the wastewater from their premise provided they comply with certain criteria. It is not evident why Council would want to grant its constituents this right.
4.2 Trade Waste	Amend to remove reference to trade waste but ultimately retain the effect of this clause unchanged. Add provision for discharge permits to be issued.	The key requirement of this clause is that no person may discharge wastewater to a public wastewater system unless it is within the limits specified in Schedule A. It is suggested this be retained while the wording is streamlined and reference to trade wastes is removed. This reflects that this clause is not limited to trade premises. This clause currently states that premises wanting to discharge wastewater which does not comply with Schedule A, must make a separate agreement with Council.

Clause	Suggestion	Reasons
		It is suggested to add provision for permits to this effect to be issued under this bylaw.
5 Approval to connect	Remove this clause.	<p>It is unlawful under the Building Act 2004 and under section 467 of the Local Government Act 1974 to connect a private drain to a public drain without the prior approval of Council. Where a connection has been made without the appropriate consent, Council can take action under these acts.</p> <p>A clause in the Bylaw is therefore unnecessary.</p>
6 Continuity of Discharge	Remove this clause.	There is no need to state this as a clause in the Bylaw.
7 Premises	Remove this clause.	This clause duplicates the requirements under other clauses; namely subclause 4.2 and Schedule A.
8 Disconnection	Remove this clause.	This is largely covered by provisions under the Building Act 2004.
9 Protection of public wastewater systems	Retain with amendments.	<p>It is suggested to reword this clause, removing aspects that duplicate legislation (particularly the Building Act 2004 and Building Code) but ultimately making this clause broad enough to apply to a multitude of situations. Given Council already has powers to act under legislation where damage has occurred, the focus is suggested to be on regulating those activities which pose a high level of risk to public wastewater systems. This approach is intended to allow Council to take action to prevent damage occurring in the first place.</p>

Clause	Suggestion	Reasons
10 Storage of hazardous materials	Remove this clause.	This clause partly duplicates the requirements of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996.
11.1 Waste generated on an allotment not to be disposed of outside that allotment.	Remove this clause.	Discharges of wastewater from onsite wastewater systems are already regulated under the Proposed Regional Plan for Northland.
11.2 Buildings to be connected to wastewater systems	Remove this clause.	This clause duplicates requirements under the Building Act 2004.
11.3 Information on new systems to be provided to Council	Remove this clause.	The installation of an onsite wastewater system requires building consent and the building consent process includes requirements for the applicant to supply then necessary information to Council. This subclause therefore duplicates the requirements of obtaining a building consent.
11.4 Information to be included in Maintenance and Operation Plans		
11.5 Shall not connect waste disposal units to onsite wastewater system	Remove this clause.	Rather than addressing this under a bylaw, Council can better take action under the Building Act 2004 or under s459(1) of LGA74 .
11.6 Maintenance and Operation Plan to be implemented	Remove this clause.	Maintenance and operation plans vary in terms of the level of detail they contain and are, on the whole, not considered appropriate to enforce in this way. Where council becomes aware of an onsite wastewater system that has not been

Clause	Suggestion	Reasons
		properly maintained, it can issue a notice to fix under the Building Act 2004.
11.7 Property owner responsible for maintenance	Remove this clause.	This clause duplicates legislation.
12 Maintenance requirements	Retain with some modifications.	This approach of requiring onsite wastewater system owners within the coverage area to regularly maintain their systems and provide a report to Council is working well. Suggested amendments pertain to improving the wording and streamlining the process rather than changing the intent of these clauses.
13 Supply and keeping of records		
14 Requirement to connect or fix	Mostly remove this clause.	<p>The aspects of this clause which allow Council to require repair or maintenance of an onsite wastewater system duplicate Council's ability under the Building Act 2004 to issue a notice to fix. Those aspects which pertain to requiring a property to connect to a public wastewater system are already addressed by s459 of LGA74.</p> <p>Despite this, it is suggested to retain a clause, requiring onsite wastewater systems to not cause a nuisance. This would allow a warranted enforcement officer of Council to access a property under section 172 of the LGA02 to undertake an inspection if the officer has reason to suspect the system may be causing a nuisance.</p>

Clause	Suggestion	Reasons
15.1 Access to onsite wastewater systems	Retain with some modifications.	Suggested amendments pertain to improving the wording rather than changing the intent of this clause.
15.2 No person to deny access to a Council Officer		
15.3 Council may undertake works	Remove this clause.	Staff consider it preferential to take action under the Building Act 2004 and other statutes, rather than establishing this ability under a bylaw.
16 Offences	Retain with some modifications.	Penalties for breaches of bylaws are prescribed under legislation. Suggested modifications therefore relate only to how the clause is worded rather than what penalties apply.
17 Penalties for breaches of Bylaw		
Additions		
Decommissioning or removal of onsite wastewater systems	Add a clause requiring reporting to Council.	There is currently no requirement for Council to be made aware that an onsite wastewater system has been decommissioned or removed. It would therefore be useful to use the Bylaw to fill this gap, both to allow Council to ensure such works are completed correctly and to make this information available on property files.

Kaipara District Council

Proposed Amended Wastewater Drainage

Bylaw 2016

DRAFT

Contents

1.	Title	3
2.	Commencement	3
3.	Application	3
4.	Purpose	3
5.	Interpretation	3
6.	Acceptance of discharge	6
7.	Protection of public wastewater systems	6
8.	Excavation	7
9.	Operation	7
10.	Access	7
11.	Suitably Qualified Persons	7
12.	Decommissioning or removal of onsite wastewater systems	7
13.	Coverage area	8
14.	Inspection and maintenance	8
15.	Supply and keeping of records	8
16.	Removal of works, structures, or things	9
17.	Offences	9
18.	Penalties for breach of the Bylaw	9
19.	Permits	10
20.	Fees	10
21.	Exceptions	11
22.	Savings	11

Part A

Preliminary provisions

1. Title

- 1.1 This bylaw is the Wastewater Drainage Bylaw 2016

2. Commencement

- 2.1 This Bylaw came into force on 1 November 2016.
- 2.2 This Bylaw was reviewed and amended in 2021, with the amendments coming into force on ## Month 2021.

3. Application

- 3.1 This Bylaw applies to the Kaipara District.

4. Purpose

- 4.1 The purpose of this Bylaw is to:
- a. maintain, promote and protect public health
 - b. regulate the drainage, collection and disposal of sewage, including regulating onsite wastewater systems
 - c. protect the public wastewater system from damage and misuse.

5. Interpretation

- 5.1 In this Bylaw, unless the context otherwise requires:

Alternative systems means onsite systems that separate all, or some of, the greywater from toilet wastewater for treatment. This may result in two separate wastewater streams that require disposal.

Approval or Approved means approved by Council or an Authorised Officer and includes a permit.

Authorised Officer means

- a. a person authorised by Council to perform duties under this Bylaw
- b. a person appointed by Council as an enforcement officer under [section 177](#) of the Local Government Act 2002.

Building Act 2004 means the Building Act and any subsequent legislation.

Council means the Kaipara District Council.

Coverage Area Means the areas set out in Schedule B.

Disconnection means the physical cutting and sealing off of any of Council's water services, utilities, drains or sewer so that it cannot receive discharges from a property or properties.

District means the District of the Kaipara District Council.

<i>Kaipara District Plan</i>	Means the district plan of the Kaipara District Council, where “district plan” has the meaning given to it by section 43AA of the Resource Management Act 1991.
<i>Drain</i>	includes every pipe, passage or channel on or under ground through which wastewater flows continuously or otherwise.
<i>Mechanical systems</i>	means any system designed for the disposal of wastewater which operates in a mechanical way, and is driven by a power source, which is not a conventional septic tank or similar type system.
<i>Nuisance</i>	has the meaning given by section 29 of the Health Act 1956.
<i>Occupier</i>	means a person who inhabits, leases, uses or controls any property or premises, whether as an owner, tenant, licensee or otherwise.
<i>Onsite wastewater system</i>	means any privately owned system for the reception and disposal of wastewater, including any septic tank, mechanical system, alternative system cesspit, drainage or soakage pit or bore; and the field tiles, scoria or stone contained therein; and, distribution bore, discharge field or soakage field that is a part of, or is connected to, any such system.
<i>Owner</i>	means, in relation to real property, a registered proprietor, trustee and any person for the time being entitled to receive the rent of the property, land, building, or premises or who would be entitled to the rent if the property were let to a tenant. Where any such person is absent from New Zealand or mentally incapable as defined in section 94 of the Protection of Personal and Property Rights Act 1988, ‘owner’ includes his or her attorney or agent.
<i>Person</i>	includes an individual, a corporation sole, a body corporate, and an unincorporated body.
<i>Point of discharge</i>	is the boundary between the public wastewater system and a private drain. For avoidance of doubt, this shall correlate to the property boundary.
<i>Property</i>	means any land, dwelling, storehouse, warehouse, shop, cellar, yard, building, or part of the same, or enclosed space separately occupied, and all lands, buildings, and places adjoining each other and occupied together shall be deemed to be the same property.
<i>Private drain</i>	means that section of drain between the property and the point of discharge to a public wastewater system. This section of drain is owned and maintained by the owner or owners of the property.
<i>Public drain</i>	means the public sewer and lateral connections that carry away wastewater from the point of discharge. The public drain is owned, administered and maintained by Council.
<i>Public wastewater system</i>	means a system for the collection, treatment and disposal of wastewater, including all constituent public drains, pumping stations, storage tanks, wastewater treatment plants, outfalls, and other related components operated or owned by Council and used for the reception, treatment and disposal of wastewater.
<i>Rising main</i>	means a public drain through which wastewater is pumped.
<i>Road</i>	has the meaning given by section 315 of the Local Government Act 1974.

<i>Septic tank</i>	means any fixed receptacle installed outside of a building designed for the reception and disintegration of solid matters in wastewater by methods which do not involve mechanical processes, and includes the drainage fields.
<i>Service opening</i>	means a manhole, or similar means for gaining access for inspection, cleaning or maintenance, of a public drain, private drain or onsite wastewater system.
<i>Suitably Qualified Person</i>	means any person who holds a permit under clause 11.1 of this Bylaw.
<i>Trunk sewer</i>	means a public drain, generally greater than 150mm in diameter, which forms a part of the principal reticulation network of Council's wastewater system.
<i>Wastewater</i>	means the discharge from any sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances.

- 5.2 Words implying the singular include the plural and vice versa.
- 5.3 The Interpretation Act 1999 applies to this Bylaw.
- 5.4 Where the meaning of a word has been determined to have the same meaning as provided for that word or term in a stated piece of Legislation or other regulatory tool, for completeness, in the event of the meaning of a word or term changing in the relevant legislation or regulatory tool, then the meaning of the word or term changes for the purposes of this Bylaw as well.
- 5.5 Any explanatory notes and attachments are for information purposes, and do not form part of this Bylaw, and may be inserted, amended or revoked without formality. Explanatory notes are provided within the blue boxes throughout this Bylaw.

Relationship between this Bylaw and Acts, regulations, bylaws and Council's District Plan

Compliance with the Bylaw does not remove the need to comply with all other applicable Acts, regulations, bylaws, the Kaipara District Plan and the Regional Plan for Northland. Where there is any conflict between this Bylaw and any Act or Regulation, the Act or Regulation will take precedence.

In addition to this Bylaw, Council and the Northland Regional Council has a range of powers with respect to wastewater drainage. These include powers under the Building Act 2004, the Local Government Act 1974 (LGA74), the Local Government Act 2002 (LGA02), the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA), the Health Act 1956 and the Public Works Act 1981.

Part B

Public wastewater systems

6. Acceptance of discharge

- 6.1 All wastewater discharged into a public wastewater system must meet the specifications/limits as provided in Schedule A.
- 6.2 Council may, by resolution amend the specifications/limits as provided in Schedule A.
- 6.3 Council may issue permits allowing the discharge of wastewater that does not meet the specifications/limits of Schedule A.

Council also has powers under s459 of the LGA74 to require the installation, cleaning or repair of traps (e.g. grease traps), methods of ventilation, and other fittings to private drains.

7. Protection of public wastewater systems

- 7.1 No person may damage or interfere with a public wastewater system or cause a nuisance to a public wastewater system, including by
 - a. disposing of any object or substance into a drain that is likely to result in total or partial blockage
 - b. digging through, puncturing, or crushing a public drain
 - c. placing a potentially crushing load over a public drain.
- 7.2 No person may obstruct access to any part of a public wastewater system, including by
 - a. covering a service opening
 - b. constructing any structure over any part of a public wastewater system
 unless the obstruction has been authorised by a resource consent or building consent.

It is unlawful under the Building Act 2004 and the LGA74 to connect a private drain to a public drain without the prior approval of Council under s467 of the LGA74 and a building consent. Where a connection has been made without the appropriate consent, Council can take action under these acts.

Any disconnection of a property from a public drain must be undertaken in accordance with the requirements of the Building Act 2004. Where disconnection works are undertaken in contravention of the Building Act 2004, Council can issue the owner of the property with a notice to fix or take further action under the Building Act 2004.

In addition to enforcement action under this Bylaw, Council can prosecute under s175 of the LGA02 any person who wilfully or negligently destroys, damages, stops, obstructs, or otherwise interferes with a public wastewater system.

8. Excavation

- 8.1 A person must not, without a permit or building consent, excavate or carry out piling or similar work closer than
- two meters from any component of a public wastewater system
 - five metres from the centre line of any rising main or trunk sewer.

In addition to enforcement action under this Bylaw, Council can prosecute under s237 of the Public Works Act 1981 anyone who excavates or otherwise interferes with any land in the vicinity of a sewer or who damages a sewer through such excavations.

Part C

Onsite wastewater systems

9. Operation

- 9.1 The person responsible for an onsite wastewater system must ensure that the system does not create a nuisance.

10. Access

- 10.1 No person may
- allow vegetation to grow
 - erect or maintain any fence, building or other structure
 - cover any service opening

in a manner that in the opinion of an Authorised Officer may obstruct access to an onsite wastewater system for inspection purposes.

11. Suitably Qualified Persons

- 11.1 A person may apply to Council for a permit to act as a Suitably Qualified Person (SQP) for the purposes of this Bylaw.

12. Decommissioning or removal of onsite wastewater systems

- 12.1 Where an onsite wastewater system is to be decommissioned or removed, this must be done by, or under the supervision of, a Suitably Qualified Person.
- 12.2 The property owner must ensure that a report by a suitably qualified person providing the details of how the system has been appropriately decommissioned or removed is provided to Council within three months of completion of the decommissioning or removal.
- 12.3 Where the owner does not comply with 12.2, Council may request the report or undertake an onsite inspection. Council may charge a fee for this inspection.

A building consent in terms of the Building Act 2004 is required to install a new onsite wastewater system. Council may require a property to connect to a public wastewater system under s459 of LGA74.

Part D

Onsite wastewater system monitoring regime

13. Coverage area

- 13.1 Part D of this Bylaw applies to all types of onsite wastewater systems within the coverage area as shown in Schedule B.
- 13.2 Council may, by resolution, after consultation in accordance with s82 of the Local Government Act 2002, amend the coverage area as shown in Schedule B.

14. Inspection and maintenance

- 14.1 The owner of every property on which an onsite wastewater system incorporating a septic tank or similar type system is installed, must ensure the system is inspected and maintained by a Suitably Qualified Person at least once every three years.
- 14.2 The owner of every property on which an onsite wastewater system of a mechanical system or alternative system type is installed, must ensure the system is inspected and maintained by a Suitably Qualified Person at least once every 12 months.
- 14.3 An owner may apply for an exemption from clauses 14.1 or 14.2, where the onsite wastewater system is being operated in accordance with a Resource Consent issued from Northland Regional Council.
- 14.4 An exemption under clause 14.3 may be approved or declined by Council.

In some instances, due to the requirements of this Bylaw, property owners may be required to provide maintenance reports to both Northland Regional Council and Kaipara District Council. Council acknowledges that duplicate monitoring and reporting is onerous and, in many cases, unnecessary. The exemptions under clause 14.4 can be applied where Council agrees that the monitoring reports to Northland Regional Council are sufficient.

15. Supply and keeping of records

- 15.1 Every onsite wastewater system owner within the coverage area must on request, provide records to Council of the inspection and maintenance activities required under clause 14.1 or 14.2 of this Bylaw.
- 15.2 Where Council makes a request under 15.1, the requested records must be provided within three calendar months from the date of the request.
- 15.3 Where the owner does not comply with the requirements of 15.2, Council may undertake an onsite inspection to assess the system's performance and may charge a fee for this inspection.

Part E

Enforcement powers

16. Removal of works, structures, or things

- 16.1 In addition to the power conferred on it by any other enactment, Council may repair any damage, or remove, or cause to be removed, any works, structure or thing, which is in breach of this Bylaw.
- 16.2 Council may recover from the person who committed the breach of this Bylaw the reasonable costs in connection with any action under clause 16.1.

17. Offences

- 17.1 It is an offence to breach this Bylaw.
- 17.2 Any person commits a breach of this Bylaw who
- a. does, or causes to be done, or knowingly permits or suffers to be done anything contrary to the provisions of this Bylaw
 - b. omits or neglects to do, or knowingly permits or suffers to remain undone, anything which according to the purpose of this Bylaw, ought to be done by that person at the time and in the manner provided for by this Bylaw
 - c. does something which under this Bylaw they are required not to do
 - d. knowingly permits or suffers any condition or thing/s to exist contrary to any provision/s in this Bylaw
 - e. fails to comply with any notice or direction given to that person under this Bylaw
 - f. obstructs or hinders any Authorised Officer in the performance of any duty to be discharged by that Officer under or in the exercise of any power conferred upon them by this Bylaw.
- 17.3 Where it is suspected that any person has committed a breach of this Bylaw, that person shall, on the direction of an Authorised Officer provide their full name and address.

18. Penalties for breach of the Bylaw

- 18.1 Every person who commits an offence against this Bylaw is liable to
- a. the penalty set out in section 242 of the Local Government Act 2002
- Or
- b. the penalty set out in section 66 of the Health Act 1956.

Pursuant to section 242 of the Local Government Act, the penalty upon conviction for an offence under this Bylaw is a fine of up to \$20,000.

Pursuant to section 66 of the Health Act 1956, the penalty upon conviction for an offence under this Bylaw is a fine not exceeding \$500 and, in the case of a continuing offence, to a further fine not exceeding \$50 for every day on which the offence has continued.

It is at the discretion of a court Judge which penalty is best applied depending on the nature of and duration of the offence.

In accordance with section 162 of the Local Government Act 2002 and section 66 of the Health Act 1956, Council may apply to the District Court for an injunction to restrain a person from committing a breach of this Bylaw.

A person may also be guilty of an offence punishable under the LGA74, RMA, the Health Act 1956, the Building Act 2004 and any other applicable act, depending on the circumstances.

Part G

Permits, fees, exceptions and savings

19. Permits

- 19.1 Council may issue permits under clauses 6.3, 8.1, 11.1 of this Bylaw.
- 19.2 Council may request specific information for an application for a permit and prescribe any conditions on permits issued in accordance with clause 20.1.
- 19.3 Council may by resolution
- a. charge a fee for receiving and processing an application and issuing a permit
 - b. prescribe any charges to be paid for the use of a permit
 - c. determine situations when permit fees may be remitted, refunded or waived.
- 19.4 A permit under this Bylaw may be cancelled by Council at any time.

20. Fees

- 20.1 Council may charge fees under clauses 12.3, 14.3 and 15.3 of this Bylaw.
- 20.2 Council may charge fees for permits issued under this Bylaw.
- 20.3 Council may charge fees for inspections under this Bylaw.
- 20.4 Council may by resolution
- d. prescribe any fees to be paid under this Bylaw
 - e. determine situations when fees may be remitted, refunded or waived.

Part F

Offences and Penalties

21. Exceptions

- 21.1 A person is not in breach of this Bylaw if that person proves that the act or omission followed the directions of an Authorised Officer or was in accordance with an approval of Council.

22. Savings

- 22.1 Any permissions, approvals or other authorisations issued under the Wastewater Drainage Bylaw 2016 continue to be in force in accordance with their terms, unless re-negotiated, renewed, or cancelled by Council.

DRAFT

Schedule A

Acceptable Discharge

The following physical and chemical characteristics are the maximum permissible for the acceptance of wastewater into the public sewer from each Point of Discharge. Any increases in any characteristic would be subject to Council approval and would require a specific separate agreement with the property owner and/or occupier.

Parameter	Maximum mg/litre (except for flow, pH units, temperature and Sodium Absorption Ratio)
Flow	6,000 litres per day at no more than 2 l/s
(BOD), 5-Day Biochemical Oxygen Demand	300
(COD), Chemical Oxygen Demand	800
Total Suspended Solids	300
Total Phosphorous	12
Total K Nitrogen	50
Total Dissolved Solids	750
Temperature	<38 degrees C
Oil/grease - extractable material	80
Aluminium	20
Ammonia	50
Arsenic	0.018
Beryllium	0.2
Boron	0.5
Cadmium	0.0015
Chloride	350
Chromium	0.25
Cobalt	0.1
Copper	0.15
Cyanide	0.34
Fluoride	2
Formaldehyde	50
Iron	20
Lead	0.1
Lithium	5
Manganese	10
Magnesium	50
Mercury	0.001
Molybdenum	0.04
Nickel	0.05
Oil/grease/fat [including cooking oils and fats]	150
pH range	6-9
Phenol	10
Phenol-cresol	16
Silver	5
Sodium Absorption Ratio	<8

Parameter	Maximum mg/litre (except for flow, pH units, temperature and Sodium Absorption Ratio)
Selenium	0.005
Sulphates	500
Vanadium	0.2
Zinc	0.3
Any one or combination of Dichloro-Diphenyl-Trichloroethane (DDT), Dichloro-diphenyl-dichloroethane (DDD), and Dichloro-diphenyl-dichloroethylene (DDE).	0.0004 Trigger for sum of all DDT, DDD and DDE.
Dieldrin substances (Organo Chlorine Pesticides)	0.0001 Trigger for sum of all Organo Chlorine Pesticides
PCBs, (polychlorinated Biphenyl)	0.002

Schedule B

Coverage Area

The coverage area within the Kaipara District and as provided for in clause 13.1 of this Bylaw includes:

1. all Residentially zoned land, as identified in the Kaipara District Plan
2. all land irrespective of zoning that is:
 - a. within 300m of the mean high water springs along the coast (east/west coasts)
 - b. within 300m of the mean high water springs of the coastal marine area (as defined in the Resource Management Act 1991) of a harbour (Mangawhai and Kaipara Harbours)
 - c. located within 300m of the margins of the Kai Iwi Lakes.

Review - Policy on Dogs and Dog Management Bylaw

Meeting: Council Briefing
Date of meeting: 7 April 2021
Reporting officer: Mark Schreurs, Policy Analyst

Purpose/Ngā whāinga

To present the findings of a review of the effectiveness of Council's Policy on Dogs (the Policy) and Dog Management Bylaw (the Bylaw).

Context/Horopaki

Council's current Policy and Bylaw were adopted on 27 June 2019. At that meeting, Council also directed the Chief Executive to undertake a review of the effectiveness of the Policy and Bylaw and to report back to Council. Originally this report was requested for July 2020, but due to delays in implementing the Bylaw, particularly around signs, the report was deferred to April 2021 to include the 2020/2021 summer period.

This report reviews the effectiveness of the Policy and Bylaw, based on complaints, enquiries and comments from the community and associated feedback from Council's Animal Management Officers (AMOs) and other relevant Council staff, including Council's customer services staff.

The Policy and Bylaw cover a range of topics, including the confinement of dogs, neutering and dogs in vehicles. A further key component of the Policy and Bylaw are the 'dog access rules'. These are the rules that determine where in the District dogs are prohibited or are allowed on a leash, or off a leash and also includes rules for beaches where dogs are not allowed during certain times of the day. Much of the discussion during the 2018/2019 review focused on the dog access rules, and it is considered that the directive to report back was with a focus on this area of the Policy and Bylaw in particular.

It should be noted that the implementation of the Policy and Bylaw coincided with Council's dog control service being brought 'in house', including the appointment of new AMOs. The AMOs therefore had limited, if any, exposure to the previous Policy and Bylaw and as such are unable to provide detailed responses regarding the efficiency of the new Policy and Bylaw as compared to the previous one.

Discussion/Ngā kōrerorero

The review has found the Policy and Bylaw are generally working well. Common complaints about dogs continue to be about dogs fouling and to a lesser extent about wandering dogs, however the number and nature of complaints has not changed significantly since July 2019. There have also been a range of complaints about various dog behaviours, however these matters are largely provided for directly under the Dog Control Act 1996 rather than the Policy or Bylaw.

The feedback received indicates that the key issues of concern relate to the dog access rules in two locations.

Pahi

There are some issues in Pahi regarding a lack of understanding where exactly on the beach the on-leash areas start and stop. However, this is considered an issue with interpretation and signage rather than with the dog access rules themselves. An immediate solution is to improve the signs to determine if this resolves the issue, rather than consideration of changing the dog access rules in Pahi.

Mangawhai

Mangawhai's rules appear to be causing some confusion, with many different dog access rules (e.g. on-leash, off-leash) in a small area. Council's AMOs report this makes it confusing for the public and for the AMOs to understand what rules apply where and when.

A complaint from a community member considered the (then new) on-leash rules on the Lincoln Street reserve and adjoining beach were too restrictive. Historically there were no rules preventing a dog from being exercised off leash in this area. Dogs in this area are now required to be kept on a leash between 10am and 5pm.

Other complaints from the Mangawhai community have called for more restrictions on dog access to protect the interests of other people using these public places, particularly beaches.

Solutions to these concerns may include improved signage.

Few, if any, issues have been raised which were not already raised and considered by Council as part of the statutory consultation process that informed the current Policy and Bylaw. 240 submissions were received during March and April 2019 and Council deliberated on the issues raised at length.

Dependent on Council's views on this report, there are three main options that could be considered at a future Council meeting for a resolution as a result:

1. The existing Policy and Bylaw continue unchanged (i.e. the status quo). This would reflect that the scale and scope of comments, feedback and complaints indicate there are no significant issues arising from the existing Policy and Bylaw.
2. Council may wish to consider consulting on proposed amendments to the dog access rules for Mangawhai to simplify them or make them more workable. The analysis for this report suggests there may be scope for such amendments. While very few matters have been raised that were not considered through the previous submissions and deliberation process, Council could reconsider if the interpretation of these issues into the existing dog access rules was the most appropriate. Changing the dog access rules would mean amending the Policy, which requires consultation using the special consultative procedure before Council makes any final decision.
3. Council could bring the next statutory review of the Policy and Bylaw forward from 2029. All aspects of both these documents would then be reviewed in accordance with the legislative requirements. Under section 160 of the Local Government Act 2002, the outcome of the review would then be subject to public consultation, regardless of the outcome, even if the review outcome is to retain the Policy and Bylaw in their current form. Under this option, all aspects of the Policy and Bylaw would be subject to review and feedback, not just the dog access rules.

Next steps/E whai ake nei

Depending on the feedback received at this briefing, staff will prepare a formal report to be presented to a future Council meeting.

Kaihu Water Treatment Plant and Truck Filler

Meeting: Council Briefing
Date of meeting: 7 April 2021
Reporting officer: Donnick Mugutso, Waters and Waste Manager

Purpose | Ngā whāinga

This purpose of this report is to brief Council on the possibility of constructing a packaged treatment plant and truck filler in the Kaihu Valley for the benefit of the community.

Context | Horopaki

After the 2020 Northland drought, “a lessons learnt” session of the four Northland Councils identified that there was need to have more truck fillers in the community after communities purchased expensive tank water. It also took a long time to have water delivered to households during these periods.

Funds are likely to be available through the 3 Waters Reform for Marae and through the Northland Regional Council (NRC) who propose a \$500k budget in the 2021-2031 LTP.

The Kaihu Valley has long been a source of water for Dargaville and Bailys however there has been concern that this does not benefit the community directly. There is an opportunity to extract water at Ahikiwi where there is an unconsented intake. However, without Iwi and Marae support this is unlikely to progress.

The opportunity now is to partner with Iwi to develop a solution which can be consented and delivered through external funds. The benefit will be to the local community within the catchment as well as to the urban areas on reticulated supply.

Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

A Business Case outlining the proposal is attached (**Attachment A**). We estimate the operational costs of running the plant at \$65,000 per annum and recovered through on-charging for treated water. Approval of the Business Case is the first step in a process which we will develop alongside Te Roroa.

1. Council Briefing
2. Business Case and Project Execution Plan approved
3. Marae engagement
4. Development of proposal
5. Go / No Go – Council and Iwi
6. Funding and Consent application (including AEE & CIA)
7. Construction
8. Handover

Initial hui have been held with Te Roroa CEO and this has helped shape the process. If Council are supportive of the approach, then a hui at the Waikaraka Marae will be held to gauge support and seek feedback.

We envisage a plant with a capacity of 250m³/day (to future proof for scheme growth and extra consent capacity), like the Mangawhai Water Treatment Plant, which was constructed in 2017 for approximately \$360,000 (excluding piping), would suffice.

Business Case – Kaihu Water Treatment and Truck Filler –

PROJECT MANAGER	Donnick Mugutso	TITLE	Waters and Waste Manager
PROJECT SPONSOR	Jim Sephton	TITLE	General Manager Infrastructure

PREPARED BY	Donnick Mugutso	TITLE	Waters and Waste Manager	DATE	January 2021
APPROVED BY		TITLE		DATE	

This business case is required to be reviewed & approved by the Portfolio Oversight Group (POG). Please submit to PMO@Kaipara.govt.nz

VERSION HISTORY				
VERSION	APPROVED BY	REVISION DATE	DESCRIPTION OF CHANGE	AUTHOR

Table of Contents

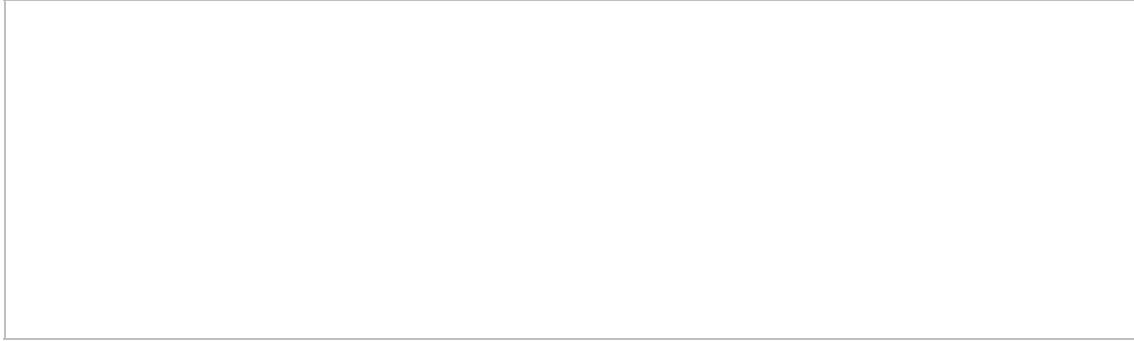
Executive Summary.....	3
Project Overview	4
Problem/ Opportunity.....	4
Background	4
Project Deliverables	5
Benefits	5
Project Scope.....	6
In Scope	6
Out of Scope	6
Constraints and Assumptions	7
Dependencies	7
Procurement.....	8
Risk Analysis	8
Links with other projects.....	9
Alternative Analysis	10
Major Project Milestones	11
Resource Requirements	12
Cost.....	12
Funding Request	12
Funding History.....	13
Health and Safety	13

Executive Summary

Write this last and keep it short! Briefly introduce the project and the reason for embarking on it. Summarise what is required to successfully execute the project. This should provide the reader with all the information they need to have a solid overview of the project and its requirements, including overall cost and high-level timeframes.

The project entails the construction of a water treatment plant to supply the Waikaraka Marae and a truck filler for the Kaihu community and water carters outside of the Marae grounds. This project seeks to address the water shortages that occur during drought for the non-reticulated community of Kaihu. Dargaville goes on restrictions during these times and water carters go further to fetch water to supply such households, usually at much higher prices than they pay under normal conditions. Some households in the Kaihu valley have connected to raw water meant for irrigation and stock for household usage and this issue is being addressed separately by helping them install roof water tanks.

The estimated cost is \$500k which will be funded by Northland Regional Council with a proposal for Kaipara District Council to operate the plant at an estimated cost of \$65,000 per annum, recoverable through a prepaid smart water metering system.



Project Overview

Problem/ Opportunity

What are the main problems we are trying to solve or opportunities we want to achieve?

The community of Kaihu is located north west of Dargaville where the Kaihu river runs through the Kaihu valley to the Wairoa River in Dargaville. It has 87 occupied households. The Kaihu River and the Waiparataniwha streams are the sources of water supply for treatment for the Dargaville town. Most of the community rely on roof tank water for their water supply. However, some have converted an intended agricultural extra ordinary raw water supply into household supply, a problem that is currently being fixed.

The dry summers in Northland often lead to water restrictions within Dargaville town and those communities on roof water tanks are affected because water carters in Dargaville are also restricted during these times and have to go further to get water rendering the price of water too expensive for many.

The community have previously raised concerns that although the raw water supply comes from their catchment, there is no direct benefit for the community to the subsequent treated water.

The community and Council have not been able to afford a treated water supply to the community, however there is a potential opportunity for collaboration with the Northland Regional Council, iwi and the Kaipara District Council to provide a treated water supply truck filler for Kaihu.

Background

Briefly describe any background context to the project. Offer an explanation here as to why this project is taking place (i.e. Compliance, Sustaining, Maintenance, Improvement, Growth (Compliance), Growth.)

After the 2019-2020 Northland drought, the Northland Regional Council (NRC), through Tony Phipps, the General Manager, Customer Services and Community Resilience approached Northland Councils for partnerships to provide rural water truck fillers throughout Northland. Kaipara District Council (KDC) saw this as an opportunity to collaborate with the NRC and Kaihu residents for a truck filler to be based at one of the Marae, likely to be Waikaraka, which is closer to the Kaihu township.

The proposal is for the NRC to provide the capital expenditure for the construction of a raw water rising main, treatment plant, a metered supply to the Marae and a standpipe capable of supplying truck fillers and the community. The proposed truck filler servicing water carters and members of the community will have a prepaid smart card system paying system. The community of Kaihu will provide the land on which to build the truck filler and any other enabling resources.

The Kaipara District Council will operate the water treatment supply and recover costs through the smart card payment system. It is difficult to rate for the supply as there is no individual household supply. Initially the metered Marae is the only property with a water rates charge.

Project Deliverables

Overall solution to the problem/ opportunity identified and the specific deliverables of the project as relates to this.

Your solution and deliverables should be specific to problem.

The solution here is the provision of a treated water supply to the Marae and a prepaid system truck filler for the community and water carters.

Benefits

The benefits should be a measurable improvement achieved by investment through this project. This could be items such as meeting safety compliance, meeting capacity requirements etc. They should link to the Problem/ Opportunity of the project and the deliverables. Ensure you have at least one main benefit

The benefits of this project are:

- Provision of clean drinking water to the community of Kaihu thereby improving the wellbeing of the community.
- Health benefit: Reduces the risk of community drinking from untreated raw watermain connection
- Resilience: Provides communities on tank water with a reliable supply during drought.

- Economic: The price of carted water will not increase from the usual.

Project Scope

In Scope

Briefly describe what deliverables will be considered within the scope of the project. What is required to be designed and built, changed or implemented, do not forget enabling activities such as stakeholder engagement or risk mitigation activities.

In order to provide this treated water supply, the following are required:

Stakeholder Engagement and Funding Agreements

1. Iwi liaising for land provision
2. Liaising with the NRC for funding agreement
3. Confirmation with the Kaipara District Council for Business Case project approval

Design

1. The proposed designers will be from the KDC's Panel of Consultants.

Construction

1. Booster pump
2. 100mm rising raw watermain
3. Packaged water treatment plant, complete with cartridge filtration, chlorination and UV treatment
4. Water tanks (assessment of existing Marae water tanks required, and if condition is good, this item can be removed)
5. Gravel finished truck turning circle
6. Any power upgrade requirements

Out of Scope

Briefly describe what will be considered Out of scope of the project.

Consents for the provision of extra water from the catchment is out of scope and dealt with separately.

Constraints and Assumptions

Detail key assumptions, such as expected funding, and constraints, such as the need for special equipment or technical resources.

The project assumptions are that:

1. Funding for the capital project is availed by the NRC
2. Extra water take volumes for Ahikiwi and or Waiparataniwha are approved by the NRC
3. Iwi agree to provide land for the treatment plant and truck filler.
4. Ownership is assumed to be transferred to KDC. KDC approves the operational expenses associated with running the water treatment plant and funds depreciation
5. Another option is for the NRC to continue to own the treatment plant with KDC as operators.
6. The telecommunication required (internet, radio etc) to make the prepaid payments technology work is available in the Kaihu valley.

Dependencies

Consider any dependencies this project may have (e.g. does it require another projects completion before it can begin?)

The project is depended on the following:

1. availability of extra water allocation from the catchment from the NRC.
2. external capital funding from the NRC
3. KDC approval of water treatment plant ownership
4. KDC operational expenditure approval

Procurement

State the Procurement approach as indicated in the Procurement Manual.

Attach to this business case the [Procurement Plan \(>500k\)](#) or [Procurement Plan Lite \(<500K\)](#) as required.

Risk Analysis

Consider and document here any risks to the project known at this time

Risk Description	Impact	Mitigating Actions	Risk Level (high, medium, low)
Funding approval	High	Engagement with NRC early on proposal and continued liaising to get the funding agreement signed once they approve of the proposal.	High

Land availability	High	Have verbally presented the proposal to representatives of Iwi and formal consultation to follow.	Low
Adoption by Iwi and Community	Medium	Early engagement with Iwi will ensure buy-in from the community	Low
Operational expenditure approval	Medium	A business case is provided with the procurement plan to seek approval for the operational expenditure.	Medium
Availability of Water	High	Liaise with NRC in the application for extra water at Ahikiwi Consent application	Medium
Telecommunication network availability	Low	Use alternative methods of payment	Low

Links with other projects

Consider and document here how other projects may be affected by, or in turn may affect, this project. Does this project link with an overarching strategy or vision? What are the impacts of this?

The Kaihu Valley Trail project is potentially connected with Kaihu Water Treatment project. Both follow the railway corridor with the rising main to the treatment plant stretching 500m from the main connection to the garage type/container water treatment plant.

Timing of these 2 projects is yet to be established so that any synergies can be utilised. If the Kaihu water supply is extended into a reticulated supply into the future, the mains will follow the rail corridor where the trail is to be constructed.

See Fig 2. Below



Alternative Analysis

Provide an overview of options other than the proposed solution considered to address the business problem

There are X options available at this stage:

- Option 1 – Do nothing
- Option 2 – Provide a treated water supply to the Marae, with a truck filler outside Marae grounds for water carters and the community to tap from. Payment is through a proposed prepaid smart card or a similar system.
- Option 3 – Provide a treated water supply to the Marae, with a truck filler outside Marae grounds for water carters and the community with a reticulated water supply. Payment is through a proposed prepaid smart card or a similar system.

Category	Option 1 – Do nothing	Option 2	Option 3
Benefits	No money spent	Provision of a clean drinking water supply: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. For the Marae 2. from a central collection point for the community 3. for water carters 	Provision of a reticulated clean drinking water supply for the community, supply for the Marae and water carters standpipes for those not on reticulated supply.
Capital Expense	\$0	\$500k	Over \$2m
Operating Impact	Difficult for the community to be resilient during drought	With a prepaid smart metering, the operational involvement of manually managing water allocations will be minimum	The reticulated system will increase both the capital and operational expenditure. Rating connected households will be easier so the prepaid smart water meters may not be required.
Risks	The community will tap into untreated water supplies creating health issues. Expensive carted water for the community during drought.	The community not taking up the prepaid card system and therefore missing the benefits.	The costs associated with construction and maintenance will not be affordable for the community as this will be, like all current KDC schemes, a ring-fenced scheme.
Interdependencies with other projects/ initiatives	None	The Kaihu Valley trail project will be in the same rail corridor as the watermain route. The application to obtain extra water from the catchment is required.	The Kaihu Valley trail project will be in the same rail corridor as the watermain route. In addition, reticulation mains will be in the same rail corridor. The application to obtain extra water from the catchment is required.

Major Project Milestones

Provide target completion dates for the standard milestones below and insert additionally identified milestones as needed. You may also insert a timeline diagram or attached a project schedule to further show the interdependencies between activities

Milestone/ Deliverable	Target Date
Project Kick off	March 2021

Preliminary design complete	June 2021
Detailed Design stage complete	September 2021
Construction stage completed	March 2022
Operational Handover	April 2022
Closeout/Project Completion	April 2022

Resource Requirements

Describe what resources the project will require (include items such as equipment where this is a limited resource)

Role	Company/Council	Duration (estimate)	Hours per week (estimate)
Project Financier	Northland Regional Council	18 months	3
Project Manager	Kaipara District Council	18 months	32
Iwi Stakeholder	Te Roroa	18 months	1
Community Representative	Kaihu Community	18 months	1
Scoping and Design Engineering	KDC Panel Consultant	6 months	10
Electrical and Telecommunications/Controls Engineers	Subcontracted to KDC Panel Consultant	2 months	20
Construction	Construction Contractor	6 months	40

Cost

Funding Request

Detail below what funding is required for the project

Internal Funding Required	OPEX: \$65,000 p.a.	CAPEX: \$0	TOTAL: \$65,000 p.a.
Budgeted in LTP	NO		
Planned Budget (where budgeted in LTP)	OPEX:	CAPEX:	TOTAL:
Externally Funded?	YES		
External Funding Source	Northland Regional Council		\$ AMOUNT: 500,000
TOTAL COST	OPEX: 65,000 p.a.	CAPEX: \$50,000	TOTAL: \$565,000

Funding History

Detail below any previous funding requests which have been approved (where applicable)

Previous Request/s				
FR#X	Comment	Opex	Capex	Total
Existing Approved Spend		\$0	\$0	\$0
Current Request				
FR#Y				
Total Requests		\$65,000	\$500,000	\$500,000

Health and Safety

Outline any specific Health & Safety risks/issues associated with this project and how they will be managed. These may be referenced in supporting documentation such as the Risk Register.

Health and Safety Risks associated with the project are:

H & S Risk	Mitigation
Working near or in water	Appropriate PPE, awareness of surroundings, toolbox sessions each morning before work
Working with electrical power	Appropriate PPE, awareness of surroundings, toolbox sessions each morning before work
Construction within a rural road corridor	Approved traffic management controls

Kaipara Spaces and Places Plan Update

Meeting: Council Briefing
Date of meeting: 7 April 2021
Reporting officer: Hamish Watson, Parks and Recreation Manager

Purpose | Ngā whāinga

To update Council on the Draft Kaipara Spaces and Places Plan (KSPP) and receive feedback on behalf of Sport Northland (SN) and Recreation Sport Leisure Consultants (RSL)

Context | Horopaki

Kaipara District Council (KDC) has been working with SN and Sport NZ to create a Spaces and Places Plan for Kaipara. RSL were contracted through Sport Northland to undertake this work which was jointly funded by KDC and Sport NZ. The Kaipara Spaces & Places Plan is a facility-focussed plan that helps support the regional strategy for play, active recreation, and sport – Kōkiri ai te waka hourua. The regional strategy provides the high-level strategic framework to guide future decision making, with the district level plan providing more detailed guidance for the Kaipara area, both documents have informed KDC's Long Term Plan (LTP)

Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

Kaipara, like the rest of the Te Tai Tokerau region has experienced strong population growth, particularly between 2012 and 2017. Rapid growth is expected to continue in the Mangawhai area, with Kaiwaka and Maungaturoto also expected to grow strongly. Growth in Dargaville should remain steady, while some parts of the district are expected to have a slight easing in population.

When planning spaces and places for play, active recreation, and sport in the Kaipara District it is important to do so in the context of expected rapid aging of the population, alongside ongoing district, and regional population growth. However, with some easing in population expected in parts of the district, careful planning is required before investing in new facilities in some areas.

This plan has been developed alongside work on the regional strategy for play, active recreation, and sport – Kōkiri ai te waka hourua. It is important that this plan is read in conjunction with the regional strategy, which provides high-level, overarching regional direction for future planning for play, active recreation, and sport across Te Tai Tokerau.

The purpose of the Kaipara Spaces & Places Plan 2021 is to support the regional strategy by providing more specific, district level guidance to spaces and places (facilities) planning.

It is largely focussed on built (rather than natural) community sport, recreation and play facilities in the Kaipara District. Planning for play, active recreation and sport facilities is important as the network of facilities provided in a district (and region) should be fit-for-purpose and sustainable. This plan, along with the regional strategy, provides a pathway to achieving a well-planned facilities network through:

- The Kaipara District has a high number of non-Council owned sport and recreation assets, comparative to other council areas in New Zealand. There are several sports fields and a wide range of sport and recreation facilities that are owned and maintained by clubs or community organisations. One of the benefits this brings is strong community input and feelings of ownership and value. However, it also creates challenges around inconsistent standards of maintenance and levels of access for different communities in the district.
- Ensuring access for the full range of potential community users can be a challenge when Council does not own many of the sites which could be available to support local play, active recreation, and sport opportunities. Council needs to work with the owners and providers of these key sites to ensure appropriate access and provision for the community across the whole district.

The Kaipara District Council Resident Satisfaction Survey shows high satisfaction levels of residents who use local parks, reserves, and sports fields (89% satisfied 2019, 92% satisfied 2018). However, there is an opportunity to increase community use of Council controlled parks, reserves, and sports fields, with only 65% of residents accessing them in 2019 (an increase from 62% in 2018). Locally led initiatives to increase use of parks could be a simple way to increase activity levels within the Kaipara community.

Future Planning

A facility hierarchy is developed to help understand what level of provision facilities are planned for, and capable of meeting, based on the core needs of user groups at different levels. These hierarchy definitions are taken from the Sport NZ Data Dictionary. Having a consistent hierarchy with other areas of New Zealand allows direction comparisons to be made, and helps regional and cross-boundary prioritisation, where required.

When using the facility hierarchy, a facility should be categorised at the level it is primarily/regularly used for. While some facilities may meet some international standards e.g. a basketball court meeting FIBA requirement, if most of the use is for local to regional level it should be categorised at regional level.

It is also important to understand that a facility at a higher hierarchy level may meet the needs all the way down to a local level.

Gap & Oversupply analysis

There are 32 main sport and recreation sites in the district, providing approximately 80 play, sport and recreation facilities including sports fields, pools, a variety of courts and club room buildings. Some of these sites also include playgrounds. Table 2 below lists the main sport and recreation sites in the district, briefly summarizing what is provided at each. Note: this excludes facilities provided by schools.

There are 19 playgrounds provided on KDC land across the district. These are listed in Table 3 below. There are many other playgrounds in the district owned by third parties (e.g. schools/kura). It is noted that there will be other play, active recreation and sports facilities across the district that have not been captured in the current data. Further work needs to be done to improve the data capture of existing facilities in the district, particularly facilities that are provided by schools and marae.

Alignment with Regional Strategy

The Kaipara Spaces & Places Plan is a facility-focussed plan that helps support the regional strategy for play, active recreation, and sport – Kōkiri ai te waka hourua. The regional strategy provides the high-level strategic framework to guide future decision making, with the district level plan providing more detailed guidance for the Kaipara area. Both the regional strategy and the Kaipara Spaces & Places Plan will help inform Council long term plans (LTPs) and work programmes across the full range of sector organisations in the Kaipara District

Key findings and Recommendations

It is positive that the district already has many multi-use sport and recreation facilities. 13 of the main sites provide for two or more sport and recreation facilities and activities. Currently, according to the data provided, bowling and tennis tend towards single use facilities.

There are also several single use sports fields. There are many club room buildings, many of which require maintenance to bring them up to date with current expectations of participants and spectators.

There is a mixture of ownership and management models for the key sport and recreation assets in the Kaipara District. The range of different approaches can lead to inconsistencies with asset management and operations between different facilities and communities.

With single club facilities, there is a risk of facility decline, if maintenance is not prioritised, or even facilities being lost from the district network if a club does not remain viable for any reason.

The inventory indicates there are very few specific facilities providing for water sports. However, it is known that many locations which are used for water sports have not been captured in the inventory. It is important for future planning, that more detail on water sports facilities is gathered before the first review of this plan is undertaken.

Generally, most communities in the district have access to playground facilities and equipment, either through KDC or school/kura-provided facilities. The gap seems to be in facilitation and support provided to ensure young people maximise play opportunities. It is also important that future planning for play considers alternative types of play space provision, including the potential for natural play and Mara Hupara (traditional playground) space and the potential for enhanced play features at existing sport and recreation sites.

A range of general actions are required, to help the district progress towards achieving the future priorities identified in the regional Kōkiri ai te waka hourua strategy. These recommendations align with the pillars, objectives, and priorities of the regional Kōkiri ai te waka hourua strategy.

Overall, there are sufficient facilities to meet most identified needs in the district. The key challenge is maintaining play, active recreation, and sport facilities at appropriate standards as they age. There are opportunities to maximise use of facilities through provision of features such as lighting (e.g. outdoor courts and sports fields) and increased partnerships between sport, recreation, and community groups both for multiuse facilities and also activation through locally led programming. The following series of tables outlines specific recommendations by facility type and where relevant by sports code or activity type.

Next steps | E whaiake nei

Provide feedback on Kaipara Spaces and Places Strategy to RSL for addition/removal from report.

Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Kaipara Spaces and Places Plan Draft
B	Kōkiri ai te waka hourua



Document Info & Acknowledgements

Document version: DRAFT – Kaipara Spaces & Places Plan 2021

Authors: Kiri Pope, Richard Lindsay, Anna Lindsay

Acknowledgements

RSL would like to thank for following people and organisations for their input into developing this plan:

Project Team

Brent Eastwood, Stu Middleton – Sport Northland
Phil Marsh, Josh Port - Northland Sports Coalition
Walter Wells – Te Kahu o Taonui
Deborah Harding – Māori advisory
Ana Mules – Far North District Council
Darlene Lang – Kaipara District Council
Sue Hodge – Whangarei District Council
Phil Heatley – Northland Regional Council
Jamie Delich – Sport New Zealand
Joey Yovich – Sport Northland (PSG Administrator)

With Thanks To

Hamish Watson, Kaipara District Council
Roxanne Kelly, Sport Northland
All individuals, rangatahi, whānau, clubs, community groups and regional sports organisations that gave up their valuable time to complete surveys and attend workshops, hui and answer our questions.

Disclaimer

Information, data and general assumptions used in the compilation of this report have been obtained from sources believed to be reliable. RSL Consultancy has used this information in good faith and makes no warranties or representations, express or implied, concerning the accuracy or completeness of this information. RSL Consultancy is acting as an independent consultant. In doing so, the recommendations provided do not necessarily reflect the intentions of the client. Interested parties should perform their own investigations, analysis and projections on all issues prior to acting in any way in regard to this project.

Table of Contents

1. Executive Summary	4
2. Introduction	6
3. Kaipara District Demographics.....	6
3.1 Demographic Considerations for Kaipara District	6
3.2 Geographic Considerations for Kaipara District	9
4. District Challenges and Trends	9
4.1 Summary of Regional Key Challenges.....	9
4.2 Kaipara's Key Challenges and Opportunities.....	10
4.3 Summary of National and Regional Trends.....	11
4.4 Participation Considerations for Kaipara District	12
5. Future Planning – Facility Hierarchy and Principles.....	14
5.1 Facility Hierarchy.....	14
5.2 Planning Principles.....	15
5.3 Facility Project Evaluation / Decision-Making Criteria	16
6. Gap & Oversupply Analysis - Kaipara District	19
6.1 Inventory Overview.....	19
6.2 Inventory Findings.....	22
7. Alignment with the Regional Strategy	23
8. Key District Wide Recommendations	24
9. Key Facility Specific Recommendations.....	26
9.1 Sport and Recreation Hubs	26
9.2 Aquatic Facilities (Pools) and Water Based Sport and Recreation.....	29
9.3 Sports Fields	30
9.4 Court Based (Indoor and Outdoor)	32
9.5 Specialised Sport Facilities.....	33
9.6 Community Halls.....	35
9.7 Play and Recreation Facilities.....	35

1. Executive Summary

The Kaipara Spaces & Places Plan is a facility-focussed plan that helps support the regional strategy for play, active recreation and sport – Kōkiri ai te waka hourua. The regional strategy provides the high-level strategic framework to guide future decision making, with the district level plan providing more detailed guidance for the Kaipara area. Both documents will help inform Kaipara District Council's (KDC's) Long Term Plans (LTPs) and work programmes across the full range of sector organisations in the Kaipara District.

Kaipara, like the rest of the Te Tai Tokerau region has experienced strong population growth, particularly between 2012 and 2017. Rapid growth is expected to continue in the Mangawhai area, with Kaiwaka and Maungaturoto also expected to grow strongly. Growth in Dargaville should remain steady, while some parts of the district are expected to have a slight easing in population. The district population is also aging rapidly.

When planning spaces and places for play, active recreation and sport in the Kaipara District it is important to do so in the context of expected rapid aging of the population, alongside ongoing district and regional population growth. However, with some easing in population expected in parts of the district, careful planning is required before investing in new facilities in some areas.

Kaipara has a much lower population density than the New Zealand average. The district population is unevenly distributed with many small settlements and a large rural area. The dispersed nature of the population makes it difficult to provide a consistent level of service and access to opportunities across the district's communities. Relatively long travel times are required through the district and to access sport and recreation facilities in the wider Te Tai Tokerau region. Many Kaipara residents regularly travel to Whangarei for active recreation and sport opportunities, including for training.

The regional strategy - Kōkiri ai te waka hourua identifies a number of challenges influencing play, active recreation and sport. These are relevant to the Kaipara District and have helped inform the direction of this plan. The Kaipara District also has some specific challenges and opportunities. For example, high a number of non-Council owned sport and recreation assets such as sports fields and facilities that are owned and maintained by clubs or community organisations. This brings strong community input and feelings of ownership and value. However, it also creates challenges around inconsistent standards of maintenance and levels of access for different communities in the district.

Data on the participation rates for the Kaipara population shows that most participation is through recreation rather than traditional team sports. This, along with demographic trends, indicates that provision of a variety of safe walking, jogging/running and bike/cycle routes is an important way to support people in the Kaipara being active. Access to both natural and built swimming facilities and demand for gym/work out options, along with group exercise classes will continue to be important in the district.

The facility inventory of the district identifies 32 main sport and recreation sites, providing approximately 80 play, sport and recreation facilities including playgrounds, sports fields, pools, a variety of courts and club room buildings. It is positive that the district already has a large number of multi-use sport and recreation facilities, with 13 of the main sites providing for two or more sport and recreation facilities and activities. Overall, there are sufficient facilities to meet most identified needs in the district. The key challenge is maintaining play, active recreation and sport facilities at appropriate standards as they age. There are opportunities to maximise use of facilities through provision of features such as lighting (e.g., outdoor courts and sports fields) and increased partnerships between sport, recreation and community groups, including schools, marae and iwi both for multiuse facilities and also activation through locally led programming.

Section eight outlines key district-wide recommendations, while section nine outlines specific recommendations by facility type and where relevant by sports code and activity type.

In order to support the regional strategy - Kōkiri ai te waka hourua, it is important that the Kaipara Spaces & Places Plan aligns with the overarching intent of the regional strategy. To achieve the vision and address the priorities of the regional strategy along with the recommendations of this plan, a new way of working will be required. A greater focus on partnerships, collaboration and working with the community on locally led initiatives is important going forward.

2. Introduction

This plan has been developed alongside work on the regional strategy for play, active recreation and sport – Kōkiri ai te waka hourua. It is important that this plan is read in conjunction with the regional strategy, which provides high-level, overarching regional direction for future planning for play, active recreation and sport across Te Tai Tokerau.

The purpose of the Kaipara Spaces & Places Plan 2021 is to support the regional strategy by providing more specific, district level guidance to spaces and places (facilities) planning. It is largely focussed on built (rather than natural) community sport, recreation and play facilities in the Kaipara District. Planning for play, active recreation and sport facilities is important as the network of facilities provided in a district (and region) should be fit-for-purpose and sustainable. This plan, along with the regional strategy, provides a pathway to achieving a well-planned facilities network through:

- Reflecting on and considering Kaipara's unique attributes, challenges and advantages.
- Identifying principles and criteria for assessing future spaces and places (facility) development priorities.
- Providing a picture of current and projected future facility demand and supply.
- Aligning with the regional strategy - Kōkiri ai te waka hourua.
- Providing clear recommendations to influence and guide future spaces and places planning, funding and development decisions.

This plan is intended to help inform the Kaipara District Council's (KDC's) Long Term Plan (LTP) process and work programmes across the full range of sector organisations in the Kaipara District. This plan provides high-level direction that will need to be supported by more detailed, community and project specific planning. It is intended that the plan will provide guidance not only to new facility developments and upgrades, but crucially it also provides direction on opportunities to maximise existing facilities, reduce duplication, and help provide improved return on investment into play, active recreation and sport spaces and places (facilities) in the Kaipara District.

Definitions

For the purpose of the regional strategy and this plan we use the following definitions:

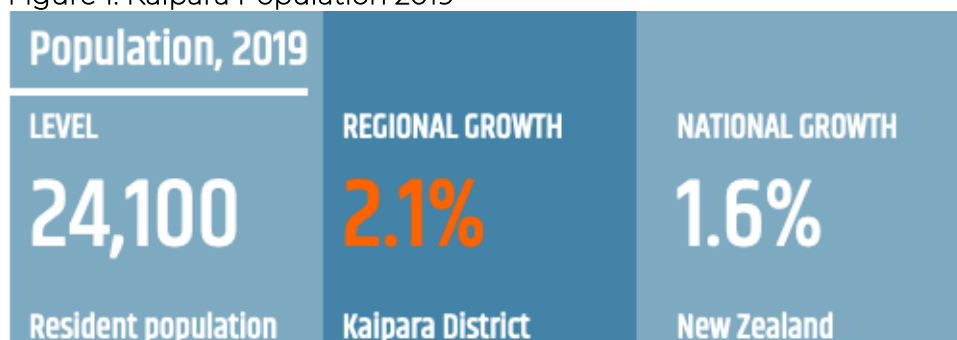
Active Recreation and Sport is considered to be activities that you do for fun, challenge and fitness that involve movement and get your heart rate up. Active Recreation and Sport includes a wide range activities such as walking, fishing, stand-up paddle boarding and a huge range of individual and team sports. Participation can occur in a range of settings from informal to organised competitions and individual to group/club environments. Typically Active Recreation is non-competitive physical activity undertaken for wellbeing and enjoyment. Whereas Sport is typically more formally organised and often competitive.

Play is considered to be fun, accessible, challenging, social and repeatable activity that is spontaneous and can happen anywhere. Play has no pre-determined outcome and has limited or no adult involvement. It is intrinsically motivated, personally directed and freely chosen.

3. Kaipara District Demographics

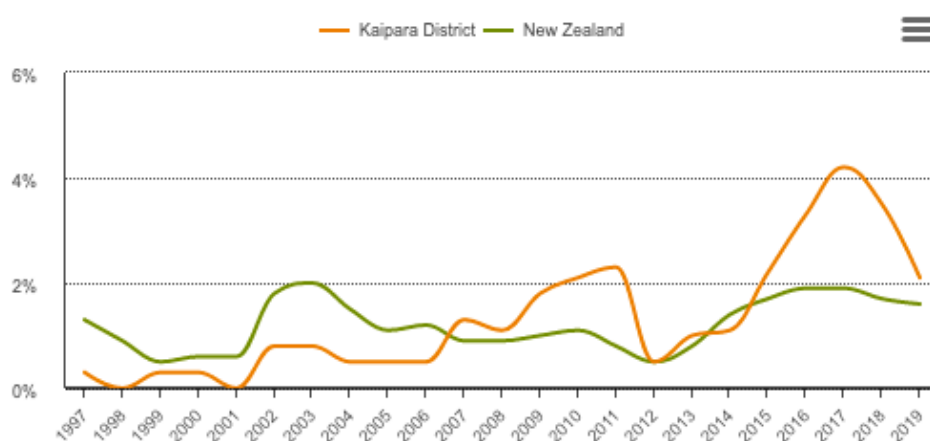
3.1 Demographic Considerations for Kaipara District

Figure 1: Kaipara Population 2019



Kaipara, like the rest of the Te Tai Tokerau region has experienced strong growth, particularly between 2012 and 2017. Whilst the level of growth has reduced recently the Kaipara District is still growing at a higher rate than the national growth rate. (Refer to Figure 1 below).

Figure 2: Kaipara Population Growth Compared to New Zealand Population Growth
Population growth, 1997-2019



In 2020 Kaipara District Council, (KDC) engaged Infometrics to prepare population projections for the district due to a delay in projections, based on the 2018 census, from Statistics New Zealand. The Infometrics report Population Projections 2018-2051 Kaipara District Council¹ is based on a medium-high growth scenario. Key projections contained in the Infometrics report include:

- Growth has been steady over the past 15 years, particularly strong in the last five years.
- As a consequence of Covid-19, population growth is projected to slow over 2020 and 2021.
- Growth is projected to pick up from 2022 onwards.
- The district is expected to reach 32,600 people by 2051. This is a 35% increase from 2019.
- The district population is projected to age rapidly over the next 30 years, with the number of residents aged 65 years and over growing from 5,600 in 2019 to 12,200 in 2051 (a 118% increase).

¹ Sourced from <https://www.kaipara.govt.nz/uploads/policy/Infometrics%20Kaipara%20projection%20report%20v3.pdf>

- Growth is expected to continue in the Mangawhai area, with Kaiwaka and Maungaturoto also expected to grow strongly.
- Dargaville is projected to grow steadily, with lesser growth in the Kaipara Coastal area.
- The population in Ruawai-Matakohe, Otamatea and Maungaru is expected to ease slightly.²

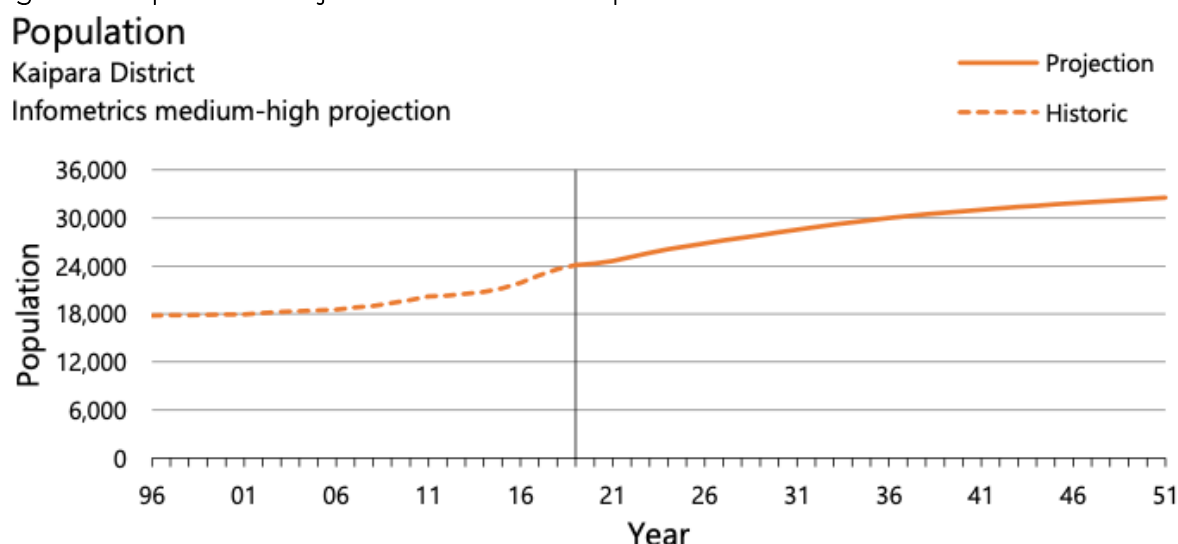
Ethnic Profile of the Kaipara District

2018 Census data³ shows the following regarding the ethnicity of the Kaipara population:

- 83.3% European ethnic group
- 24.6% Māori ethnic group⁴
- Between 2006 and 2018 people reporting as European ethnic group increased 6.6% from 76.7%.
- Between 2006 and 2018 people reporting as Māori ethnic group increased 2.4% from 22.2%.

Based on regional and national trends it is expected that the Māori proportion of the Kaipara population will increase over time.

Figure 3: Population Projections 2018-2051 Kaipara District



Source: KDC Infometrics 2020

When planning spaces and places for play, active recreation and sport in the Kaipara District it is important to do so in the context of expected, ongoing district and regional population growth overall, but with some easing in population in parts of the district.

It is also important to note that Whangarei, the largest urban area in the Te Tai Tokerau region is also experiencing rapid growth. Approximate travel times from Kaipara communities to Whangarei include:

- Dargaville 50+ minutes.
- Matakohe 60 minutes.
- Maungaturoto 55-60 minutes.
- Mangawhai 60+ minutes.

² Ibid, executive summary.

³ Sourced from <https://www.stats.govt.nz/tools/2018-census-place-summaries/kaipara-district#ethnicity-culture-and-identity>

⁴ Note: percentages do not total to 100% as some people report belonging to more than one ethnic group.

As Whangarei is relatively close to many parts of the Kaipara District, sport and recreation facilities provided in Whangarei and its growing communities, such as Ruakaka may also provide some benefit to Kaipara residents.

3.2 Geographic Considerations for Kaipara District

The Kaipara District is located to the north and west of the Kaipara Harbour, stretching from the Mangawhai and Kaiwaka areas, through to Donnelly's Crossing. Dargaville is the largest town with 4,794 people⁵, Mangawhai (936 people) has more than doubled since the 2013 census⁶.

Figure 4: Population Density 2018

Area	Population	Land Area (km ²)	Population Density (people / km ²)
Kaipara	22,869	3,108	7.36
Te Tai Tokerau	179,079	12,502	14.32
Aotearoa	4.7m	268,021	17.54

Kaipara has a much lower population density than the New Zealand average. The district population is unevenly distributed with many small settlements and a large rural area. Relatively long travel times are required through the district and to access sport and recreation facilities in the wider Te Tai Tokerau region. Many Kaipara residents regularly travel to Whangarei for active recreation and sport opportunities, including for training.

The dispersed nature of the population makes it difficult to provide a consistent level of service and access to opportunities across the district's communities. Providing a local level of service, to cater to training needs in particular, is important to help reduce the negative impacts of travel and encourage more participation. However, this is also balanced with an acceptance that people will need to continue to travel to access higher level competition and more specialised spaces and places.

The district also has a large area of harbour, along with many rivers and lakes. These natural features provide many opportunities for water-based recreation and sports, including hunting and fishing. However, there are also risks associated with many areas of the harbour due to strong tides.

4. District Challenges and Trends

4.1 Summary of Regional Key Challenges

The regional strategy - Kōkiri ai te waka hourua identifies a number of challenges influencing play, active recreation and sport. These are entirely relevant to the Kaipara District and are summarised below:

Key strategic challenges in Te Tai Tokerau:

Population Distribution	<i>"It can be hard to find enough teams, or (players for), full 15 or 13 a-side teams. Regular small sided, (7 or 9 a-side), competition would be more realistic" - survey respondent</i>
Equity Issues	There are social and economic barriers that limit opportunities for some people to participate and thrive in play, active recreation and sport.

⁵ Statistics NZ 2018 census data.

⁶ Ibid

Transport Challenges	The need to travel and the distances involved can put people off participating.
Small Ratepayer Base and Limited Council Funds	Councils must carefully balance delivery of all core services including support for play, recreation and sport.

Key sector challenges:

- Declining volunteerism - the availability of volunteers including referees, coaches, administrators.
- Membership retention - including youth drop-off and youth leaving the region.
- Funding and operational sustainability - ability to fund maintenance of facilities and operations, including programmes. Resources required for compliance.
- Affordability - RSO & NSO affiliation fees affect affordability.
- Accessibility for all.
- Facility distribution and quality throughout the region.
- Centralisation of competitions and facilities can challenge the ability to deliver to local communities.
- Improving awareness of existing opportunities.
- Active recreation and play are not 'organised' and do not have a voice.
- Skill gaps within the sector in volunteer and paid roles.
- Changing expectations and demands for enhanced services including paid staff.

Key challenges for māori:

- Accessibility to facilities / spaces.
- A sense of disconnect is felt in spaces and places around the rohe (area) by māori
- Access to information.
- Cost of travel and participation in play, active recreation and sport.
- The level of service in smaller communities tends to drop off making it more difficult to access opportunities.
- Lack of time to volunteer and coach – many other responsibilities and commitments to our own people first.
- Some are disconnected to whānau, hapū, iwi and therefore lack understanding and connection with whakapapa, mātauranga, taiao and a whānau centric approach or way of living.

4.2 Kaipara's Key Challenges and Opportunities

The Kaipara District has a high number of non-Council owned sport and recreation assets, comparative to other council areas in New Zealand. There are a number of sports fields and a wide range of sport and recreation facilities that are owned and maintained by clubs or community organisations. One of the benefits this brings is strong community input and feelings of ownership and value. However, it also creates challenges around inconsistent standards of maintenance and levels of access for different communities in the district.

Ensuring access for the full range of potential community users can be a challenge when Council does not own many of the sites which could be available to support local play, active recreation and sport opportunities. Council needs to work with the owners and providers of these key sites to ensure appropriate access and provision for the community across the whole district.

The Kaipara District Council Resident Satisfaction Survey shows high satisfaction levels of residents who use local parks, reserves and sports fields (89% satisfied 2019, 92% satisfied 2018). However, there is an opportunity to increase community use of Council controlled parks, reserves and sports fields, with only 65% of local residents accessing them in 2019 (an

increase from 62% in 2018). Locally led initiatives to increase use of parks could be a simple way to increase activity levels within the Kaipara community.

4.3 Summary of National and Regional Trends

The regional strategy - Kōkiri ai te waka hourua identifies a range of national trends that are impacting on participation in play, active recreation and sport in Te Tai Tokerau.

- **Decreasing physical activity** - The 'electronic revolution' has transformed movement patterns. People sleep less, sit more, walk less, drive more, and generally do less physical activity than they used to.
- **Decline in traditional sport participation** - Changing lifestyles and the often highly competitive nature of some traditional team sports is seeing declining levels of participation in these activities, for both young people and adults.
- **Individual versus team and recreation versus sport** - a paradigm shift in participation from the overwhelming popularity of traditional team-based sports to more non-traditional, often individual, sport and recreation activities.
- **Embracing the impact of technology** - e-bikes, smart watches, MapMyRun, virtual clubs and a range of new technologies can benefit and encourage participation.
- **Pay to play** - many sport and recreation activities are being offered in a more casual, pay to play format rather than through traditional club membership.
- **Increased expectations** - participants in sport and recreation are now 'customers' expecting a higher level of service both in terms of the facility standards, flexibility and ease of use.
- **Communities of interest** - whether they be ethnic or gender communities, people often like to be active within their own communities.
- **Equipment costs** - the cost of equipment and uniforms can be prohibitive to many particularly in low socio-economic communities. Sports equipment recycling is common in a number of communities throughout New Zealand.
- **Cultural activities** - kapa haka, mau rākau, ki o rahi and waka ama are becoming increasingly popular not only for Māori. Dance and martial arts are also popular across a wide range of participants.
- **Role models** - continue to be strong influencers not just of product purchase but also participation. The use of role models/leaders within communities can contribute to the success of participation focussed programmes.
- **Increasing recognition of the importance of play** - There is a renewed recognition of everyday play opportunities being an important part of the development of young people.

These trends are also relevant to the Kaipara District. For full details see the full regional strategy ([insert link](#)).

Key Regional Participation Trends

Northlanders, on average are less active than the New Zealand average.

- Only 67% of Northland adults are active (72% nationally).
- Less Northlanders are physically active for 5 hours or more per week (38.9% compared to 43.8% nationally).
- Less Northlanders achieve at least 2.5 hours of activity per week (43.3% compared to 49.5% nationally).
- Northlanders are more likely to participate in little or no physical activity (16.6% compared to 14.3% nationally).

Participation data for the region and participation data by age group at a national level indicates there is strong current and projected future demand for:

- Walking/jogging and cycling trails and facilities that support those activities (i.e. car parking, toilets).
- Gym facilities (providing equipment-based exercise as well as activity space suitable for group classes including dance, pilates/yoga).
- Swimming facilities.
- Fishing facilities such as boat ramps, piers and jetties.

4.4 Participation Considerations for Kaipara District

The Sport NZ Insights Tool provides data on the participation rates expected for the Kaipara population for various sport and recreation activities. This is modelled off participation data in the Active NZ survey 2018⁷. Key points of note from the top ranked activities include:

- Walking is the top participation activity (49.8%).
- Inactivity is high, at 30.6%.
- Gardening and jogging/running are the 3rd and 4th most common activities (23.9% and 23.9%).
- Participation in individual recreation and sport activities is much more common than participation in team sports.
- Individual workout, swimming and group exercise classes are the most common facility-based activities.
- Golf is the highest ranked sport (4.2%).
- Football and netball are the highest ranked team sports (at 4% and 3.6%).

For people in the Kaipara District the top sport and recreation activities participated in during the last 12 months⁸ include:

- Walking/power walking (30.5%).
- Swimming/diving (18.3%).
- Run/jogging (14.8%).
- Cycling/bike riding (14.6%).
- Going to the gym/working out (14.4%).

This indicates that provision of a variety of safe walking, jogging/running and bike/cycle routes is an important way to support people in the Kaipara being active. It also shows that access to both natural and built swimming facilities is important. It is expected that demand for gym/work out options, along with group exercise classes will continue to be important in the district.

Other considerations:

Travel - It is apparent that generally people in the Kaipara District are accepting of the need to travel to access facilities, particularly those for competition purposes. However, travel is certainly a challenge that discourages participation for some in the Kaipara, or limits the choices people have when considering a sport or recreation activity.

Small communities - The smaller communities in the district do not have the population and demand levels to justify significant investment in facilities of a Sub-Regional/District standard. However, investment in maintaining and developing multi-use local level facilities will help support local participation opportunities.

⁷ Sourced September 2020 from <https://sportnz.org.nz/resources/insights-tool/>

⁸ Sourced from Sport NZ Insights Tool – <https://sportnz.org.nz/resources/insights-tool/> based on 2011-2019 data from the Nielsen Consumer & Media Insights report

Locally suitable programmes - For smaller communities it can be hard to secure enough players to maintain a full team for regular competitions. To encourage more participation in team sports it is apparent that small-sided games and mixed gender options might help address some of these challenges, particularly for junior level play.

Recreation options – It is more common for people to participate in recreation activities rather than traditional team sport. Maintenance of existing recreation facilities and consideration of investment in new facilities to support recreation and play is important to support this preference.

Aging population - With an aging population it is important to continue to provide opportunities and facilities that are suitable and attractive to older adults. For example, the demand for group exercise options, off-road walking and cycle trails, easy access, warm water swimming facilities and potentially hydrotherapy may increase.

5. Future Planning – Facility Hierarchy and Principles

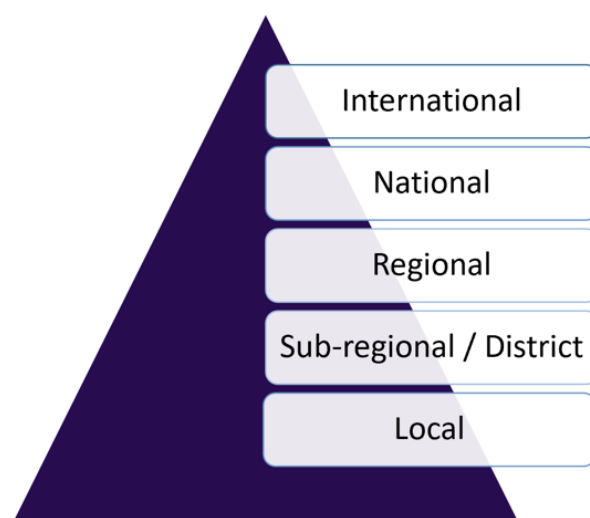
5.1 Facility Hierarchy

A facility hierarchy is developed to help understand what level of provision facilities are planned for, and capable of meeting, based on the core needs of user groups at different levels. These hierarchy definitions are taken from the Sport NZ Data Dictionary. Having a consistent hierarchy with other areas of New Zealand allows direction comparisons to be made, and helps regional and cross-boundary prioritisation, where required.

When using the facility hierarchy a facility should be categorised at the level it is primarily/regularly used for. While some facilities may meet some international standards e.g. a basketball court meeting FIBA requirements, if the majority of use is for local to regional level it should be categorised at regional level.

It is also important to understand that a facility at a higher hierarchy level may meet the needs all the way down to a local level.

Figure 5: Facility Hierarchy Diagram



International: A facility with the ability to host international competitions / events (between nations). For example: Semenoff Stadium, ITM Hockey Centre.

National: A facility with the ability to host regional representative competitions (including professional and semi-professional franchise competitions involving teams from outside New Zealand) and / or to serve as a national high-performance training hub for one or more sports codes. For example: Cobham Oval, Trigg Sports Arena.

Regional: A facility with the ability to host inter-regional and internal regional competitions and / or serves as a regional high-performance training hub for one or more sports codes. For example: McKay Stadium, Kauri Coast Community Pool.

Sub Regional/District: A facility with the ability to draw significant numbers of participants/teams/competitors from a whole district or across adjacent territorial authority

boundaries for either competition or training purposes. For example: Te Pouto O Te Rangi (Harding Park), Sportsville Dargaville.

Local: A facility which often facilitates people's introduction to sports and recreation and primarily serves a town or suburb (or potentially two suburbs) only. For example: Selwyn Park, Southern (Te Kopuru) Rugby Club.

5.2 Facility Planning Principles

A set of key principles have been developed to guide future decision making. These principles will need to be considered alongside agreed criteria. This will allow asset owners, user groups and decision makers to understand why and how spaces and places and programmes and services are planned for and prioritised.

Planning Principle	Description
Sustainability	Well used facilities able to meet their operational costs and with strong governance and management.
Partnerships and collaboration	Working together to achieve maximum return on investment.
Meeting an identified need	Clear demand is demonstrated within the community.
Multi-use (co-locating and hubbing)	Facilities should be designed to enable integrated uses such as hub facilities, multi-use facilities or co-located facilities, catering to sport and recreation and other complimentary community uses.
Future-proofed	Ability to adapt facilities to changing needs and trends. Designing or re-designing facilities and spaces in ways that enable them to be adapted, developed and extended in response to future demands.
Inclusive, accessible and affordable	Facilities, programmes and services that are accessible for all to get to, participate in, move within (physically accessible), and use (priced appropriately).
Spaces and places that deliver wider benefits to our communities	Multi-use facilities that serve the broadest range of community needs possible, providing advantages for the whole community beyond providing for just play, recreation and sport.
Reflect the unique needs of Northland(ers)	Respond to the unique geography and population and the social and cultural needs of Northland communities.
Spaces and places are optimised through partnerships and activation	Before a new development is considered it is expected that existing facilities would be considered and maximised through partnerships and collaboration before new facility investment progresses. This helps give effect to the other key principles of identified need, partnering and collaboration, sustainability, multi-use and wider benefits.
We value the importance of play	There is a renewed recognition of everyday play opportunities being an important part of the development of young people. Including recognition of the right of young people to have varied, self-directed, playful experiences.

5.3 Proposed Facility Project Evaluation / Decision-Making Criteria

The following criteria have been developed to reflect the key principles and can be used to assess both current and future planned spaces and places investments.

The criteria included in ***bold italics*** are considered to be Level one - Gateway Criteria. These criteria need to be considered first and met with a high degree of certainty before a more detailed assessment of any proposal is undertaken using the remaining (level two criteria).

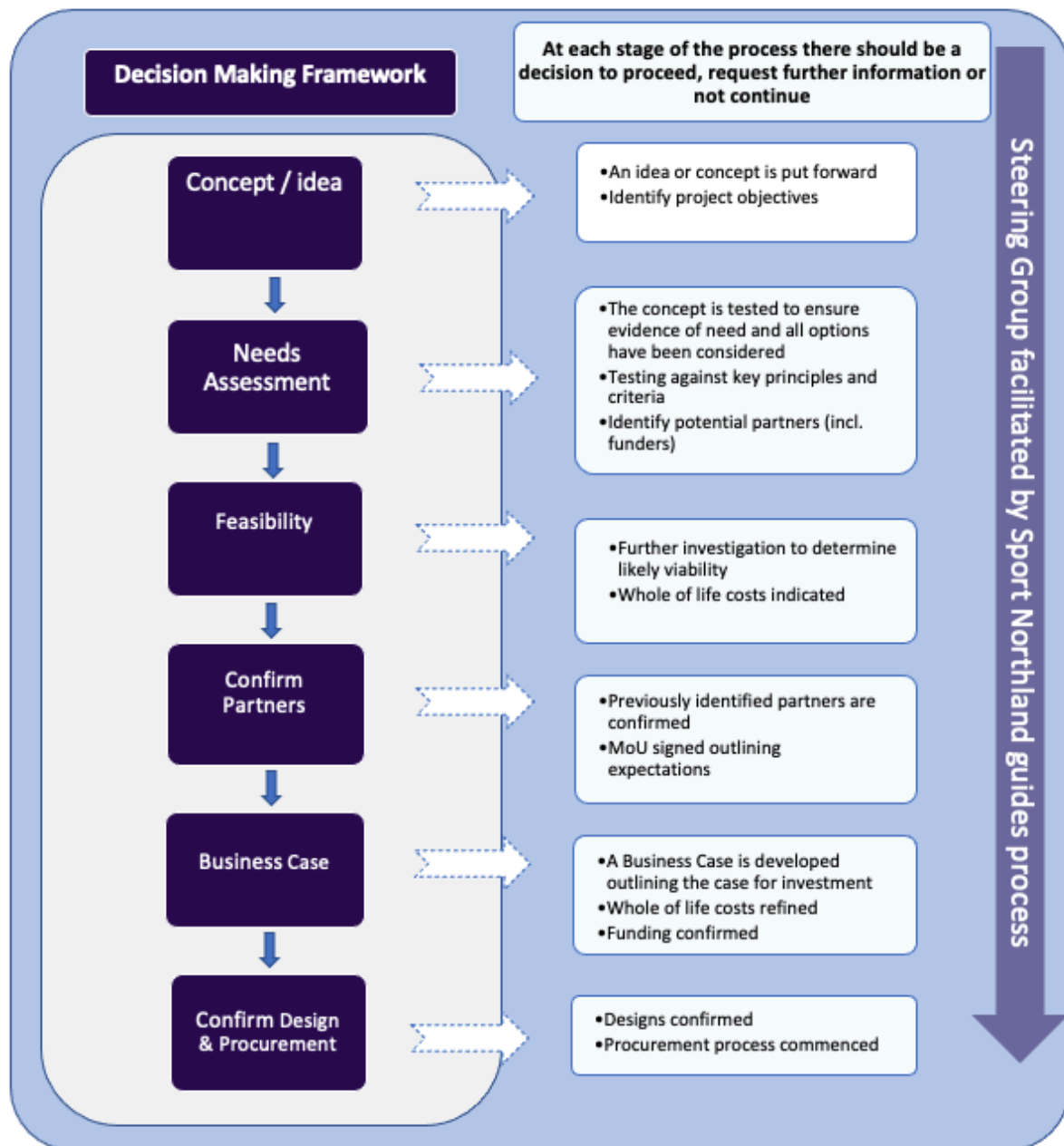
The principles and criteria will be applied to each concept put forward for consideration using the Decision Making Framework provided in Figure 6 below.

Table 1: Principles and Criteria

Principle	Criteria
1. Sustainability	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>The capability of potential facility developers to develop and operate facilities.</i> • The degree to which the existing or proposed facility is operationally sustainable (taking a whole of lifecycle approach which looks at operational and maintenance costs throughout a facility's life).
2. Partnering and Collaboration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The potential for operational and/or capital partnerships between multiple stakeholders.
3. Meeting an Identified Need	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>The degree to which any existing or proposed facility matches the projected needs of the community within its core catchment area. In the case of facilities with wide utilisation (such as aquatics facilities) this involves consideration of all potential users from general recreational users through to organised sports codes.</i> • <i>The degree to which demand exceeds supply (once all existing facilities are being run at an optimal operational level) and the facility or proposed facility can meet the identified gap.</i> • <i>The degree of alignment a facility or proposed facility has with national and regional facility strategies.</i> • The ability of the facility or proposed facility to progress the play, active recreation and sport objectives of Te Tai Tokerau, the Kaipara District and wider New Zealand society. • The needs identified can only be met through additional provision. • The degree to which the duplication of facilities (from an international to a local level) is avoided.
4. Multiuse	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The degree to which the proposed project will enable integrated uses such as hub facilities, multi-use facilities or co-located facilities. • The degree to which the facility will cater to play, active recreation and sport and other complimentary community uses.
5. Future-proofing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The ability of the facility or proposed facility to reflect international and national best practice in its location, design and subsequent operation.

Principle	Criteria
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The degree to which the facility or proposed facility will be designed or redesigned to enable it to be adapted, developed and extended in response to changing future demands.
6. Inclusive, accessible and affordable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The degree to which the facility or proposed facility caters to all sectors of the community, including the level of physical accessibility for those the disabilities. The level of affordability of use or participation in the facility or programme/services. Alignment with wider strategic documents and plans such as those concerned with urban planning, infrastructure development, events strategies and transport networks.
7. Facilities that deliver wider community benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The return on investment (capital and operational) that the facility or proposed facility can generate (measured in terms of community benefit). The degree to which the facility or proposed facility will serve the broadest range of community needs possible, providing advantages for the whole community.
8. Reflect the uniqueness of Northland(ers)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The degree to which the proposed facility responds to the unique geography and population and the social and cultural needs of Northland communities.
9. Optimise existing facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The degree to which the proposal optimises an existing facility e.g. through partnerships to increase use, enhancements to make a facility more fit-for-purpose. The degree to which a facility or proposed facility compliments / optimises the existing or proposed facility network and builds on district and regional strengths.
10. Importance of play	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The degree to which the facility or proposed facility supports everyday play opportunities for young people within local communities.

Figure 6: Decision Making Framework



6. Gap & Oversupply Analysis - Kaipara District

6.1 Inventory Overview

There are 32 main sport and recreation sites in the district, providing approximately 80 play, sport and recreation facilities including sports fields, pools, a variety of courts and club room buildings. Some of these sites also include playgrounds. Table 2 below lists the main sport and recreation sites in the district, briefly summarizing what is provided at each. Note: this excludes facilities provided by schools.

There are 19 playgrounds provided on KDC land across the district. These are listed in Table 3 below. There are many other playgrounds in the district owned by third parties (e.g. schools/kura).

It is noted that there will be other play, active recreation and sports facilities across the district that have not been captured in the current data. Further work needs to be done to improve the data capture of existing facilities in the district, particularly facilities that are provided by schools and marae.

Sport and Recreation Sites

Table 2: Main Sport and Recreation Sites in the Kaipara District⁹

Site Name:	Ownership:	Operator:	Facilities provided:
Sport and Recreation Hubs (Multi-use)			
Kaiwaka Sports Complex	Trust – multi-code Land – KDC/DoC	Kaiwaka Sports Association	2 sports fields (rugby/touch); club building/changing room; dance studio; indoor sport and recreation space; 6 outdoor courts tennis/netball; 2 squash courts; playground.
Mangawhai Community Park	Council	Kaipara District Council	Skate park; pump track; outdoor court; playground.
Maungaturoto Country club	Club	Club operated	Sports fields rugby union and football; 2 quash courts; club building/changing rooms; 2 bowling greens; skatepark; dirt track (motorsport); outdoor equestrian centre.
Pioneer Park	Land - Northern Wairoa Rugby Sub Union Buildings - Dargaville Rugby Club and Dargaville Old Boys Rugby Club	Northern Wairoa Rugby Sub Union, Dargaville Rugby Club and Dargaville Old Boys Rugby Club	3 sports fields (rugby/sevens); 2 Squash courts; Club building / changing rooms.
Northern Wairoa Memorial Park (Sportsville Dargaville)	Land – Council Buildings - KDC (Kiosk) & Kauri Coast Recreation Society (KCRS)	Kaipara District Council, KCRS Sportsville Dargaville	Sports field (rugby league); sports field (football); outdoor courts tennis/netball; club building/changing rooms; petanque court.

⁹ Data source - Sport NZ Inventory Tool

Site Name:	Ownership:	Operator:	Facilities provided:
Ruawai Reserve	Club Land - KDC	Ruawai Rugby Club/Ruawai Community Sports Club	Sports field (rugby); dance studio; club building/changing rooms.
Selwyn Park	Council	Kaipara District Council	Skate park; bike park; outdoor basketball court; playground.
Southern (Te Kopuru) Rugby Club & Squash Club	Club	Club operated	Sports field (rugby); club building/changing rooms; 2 squash courts.
Taharoa Domain	Council	Kaipara District Council	Mountain bike park; Club building / changing rooms; water sports - waka ama.
Te Kopuru Recreation Reserve	Council	Kaipara District Council	Sports field; playground; outdoor court; (basketball); toilets.
Te Pou tu O Te Rangi - Harding park	Council	Kaipara District Council	Bike park; disc golf course.
Activity Specific / Single Code Sites			
Arapohue Bowling Club	Club	Club operated	1 bowling green; club building/changing rooms.
Awakino Point - Dargaville Racing Club / Silver Pine Pony Club	Club	Club operated	Race track; club building/changing rooms; outdoor equestrian centre.
Dargaville Bowling Club	Club	Club operated	2 bowling greens.
Dargaville Pistol Club	Club	Club operated	Shooting range.
Dargaville Tennis Club	Club	Club operated	4 tennis courts; club building/changing rooms.
Hakaru Branch - Wellsford District Pony Club	Club Land - Council	Hakaru Pony Club	Outdoor equestrian centre - pony club, horse riding; club building/changing rooms.
Kauri Coast Community Pool	Sport Northland	Community Leisure Management	Outdoor - Lap pool; hydrotherapy pool; toddler's pool; building/changing rooms.
Mangawhai Bowls Incorporated	Don't Know Land - Council	Club operated	3 bowling greens (1 all-weather); petanque terrain; club building/changing rooms.
Mangawhai Football Club	Other	Kaipara District Council	Sports field (football).
Mangawhai Golf Club	Club	Club operated	18 hole course; club building.
Matakohe cricket ground	Other	Matakohe community group	Sports field (cricket).
Maungaturoto Bike Park	Council	Kaipara District Council	Bike park; pump track.
Mamaranui Bowling Club	Club	Club operated	1 bowling green.
Northern Wairoa Boating Club	Club	Club operated	Club building / changing rooms.
Northern Wairoa Golf Club	Club	Club operated	18 hole course; club building.
Paparoa A&P Showgrounds	Other trust	Trust operated	Outdoor equestrian centre - Ararua Pony Club Venue.
Paparoa Golf Club	Club	Club operated	18 hole course; club building.
Rima Haira Recreational Reserve	Club	Kaihu Rugby Club	Sports field (rugby).

Site Name:	Ownership:	Operator:	Facilities provided:
Ruawai Bowling Club	Club	Club operated	2 bowling greens.
Tatarariki Tennis Club	Club	Club operated	3 tennis courts.

Playgrounds

It is common for district councils to provide playground infrastructure for young people in their communities.

An audit undertaken in 2020 notes that the 19 KDC playgrounds (listed in table 3 below) are in varying condition and that a number of the older playgrounds are past their useful life and need to be replaced.¹⁰ Overall, the KDC playgrounds had a compliance rating of 66%¹¹. The vast majority of play equipment items and safety surfacing were noted as being in good to excellent condition¹². KDC has almost completed the necessary work to bring all 19 sites up to standard in response to the 2020 audit. Continued monitoring and pro-active maintenance is important.

Table 3: Kaipara District Council Playgrounds¹³

	KDC Playgrounds	Location
1	Mangawhai Heads Campground	Mangawhai Heads Road
2	Mangawhai Heads	Fagan Place
3	Mangawhai Park and Skate Park	Molesworth Drive
4	Kaiwaka Hall	Kaiwaka Mangawhai Road
5	Maungaturoto	Hurndall Street
6	Paparoa Village Green	State Highway 12
7	Pahi Beach Camp	Pahi Road
8	Tinopai	Komiti Road
9	Ruawai	Wharf Road
10	Dargaville Selwyn Park	Jervois Street
11	Selwyn park new fitness	Jervois Street
12	Taha Awa (Riverside) Gardens	Totara St
13	Dargaville Jaycee Park	Hokianga Road
17	TeKoporu	Norton Street
14	Glinks Gully - 3 sites	Marine Drive
15	Glinks Gully campground	Marine Drive
16	Kellys Bay campground	Bayview Road
18	Kai Iwi Lakes Campground	Domain Road
19	Tangiteroria	Pukehuia Road

¹⁰ Play Central Playground audit report 2020.

¹¹ Against various applicable NZ safety standards.

¹² Play Central Playground audit report 2020.

¹³ Note: Playground 3 – Mangawhai Park and Skate Park is not maintained by KDC. All other playgrounds listed are owned and maintained by KDC.

It is now recognised that built playground infrastructure is only one way of providing play experiences for young people. Increasingly play spaces, including natural spaces, are being recognised for their play value. The Kaipara District has a variety of open spaces and natural spaces, including bush and beach areas, promoting and encouraging use of these areas for creative play opportunities for children would be beneficial.

6.2 Inventory Findings

It is positive that the district already has a large number of multi-use sport and recreation facilities. 13 of the main sites provide for two or more sport and recreation facilities and activities. Currently, according to the data provided, bowling and tennis tend towards single use facilities. There are also a number of single use sports fields. There are a large number of club room buildings, many of which require maintenance to bring them up to date with current expectations of participants and spectators.

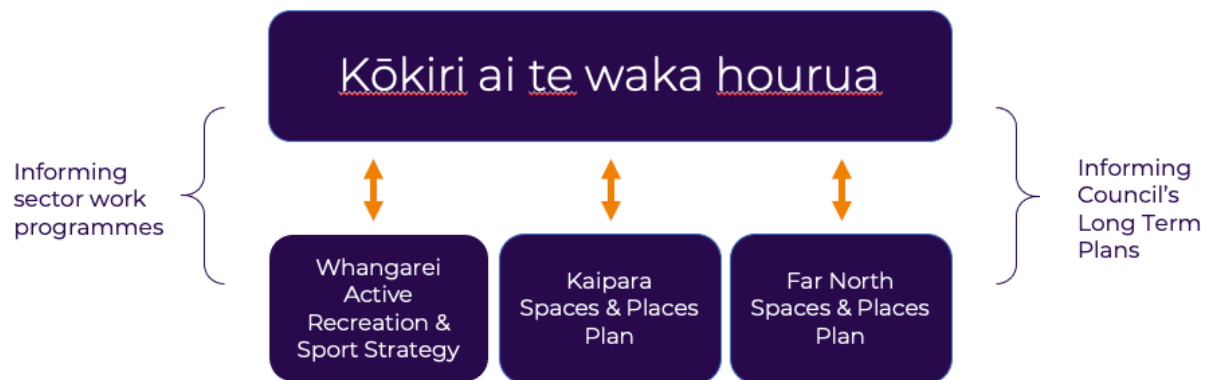
There is a mixture of ownership and management models for the key sport and recreation assets in the Kaipara District. The range of different approaches can lead to inconsistencies with asset management and operations between different facilities and communities. With single club facilities in particular, there is a risk of facility decline, if maintenance is not prioritised, or even facilities being lost from the district network if a club does not remain viable for any reason.

The inventory indicates there are very few specific facilities providing for water sports. However, it is known that many locations which are used for water sports have not been captured in the inventory. It is important for future planning, that more detail on water sports facilities is gathered before the first review of this plan is undertaken.

Generally, most communities in the district have access to playground facilities and equipment, either through KDC or school/kura-provided facilities. The gap seems to be in facilitation and support provided to ensure young people maximise play opportunities. It is also important that future planning for play considers alternative types of play space provision, including the potential for natural play and Mara Hupara (traditional playground) space and the potential for enhanced play features at existing sport and recreation sites.

7. Alignment with the Regional Strategy

The Kaipara Spaces & Places Plan is a facility-focussed plan that helps support the regional strategy for play, active recreation and sport – Kōkiri ai te waka hourua. The regional strategy provides the high-level strategic framework to guide future decision making, with the district level plan providing more detailed guidance for the Kaipara area. Both the regional strategy and the Kaipara Spaces & Places Plan will help inform Council long term plans (LTPs) and work programmes across the full range of sector organisations in the Kaipara District.



In order to support the regional Kōkiri ai te waka hourua strategy it is important that the Kaipara Spaces & Places Plan aligns with the overarching intent of the regional strategy. To achieve the vision and address the priorities of the regional strategy a new way of working will be required. A greater focus on partnerships, collaboration and working with the community on locally led initiatives is important going forward. This section identifies some ways that Kaipara District Council can work to align with the pillars and objectives of the regional strategy.

Partnerships

- Support the implementation of the regional strategy.
- Proactively seek partnerships with other organisations to support local access to play, active recreation and sport facilities and programmes.

People

- Work directly with local communities, including mana whenua, to support and develop local capability and increase locally led initiatives.

Programmes & Participation

- Support culturally appropriate programmes.
- Focus on programmes that deliver quality opportunities for all sectors of the community.

Planning and Policy

- Where required, consider changing Council policies, to better support and align with the regional strategy and the recommendations of this plan.
- Review ways of working to reduce process and compliance barriers that locally led initiatives and events currently face.

Spaces and Places

- Continue to monitor provision against key targets and satisfaction levels for open spaces and facilities in the district.
- Maximise use of existing facilities in the first instance, before building new.
- Support and contribute to the next level of detailed, regional planning as required.

8. Key District Wide Recommendations

A range of general actions are required, to help the district progress towards achieving the future priorities identified in the regional Kōkiri ai te waka hourua strategy. These recommendations align with the pillars, objectives and priorities of the regional Kōkiri ai te waka hourua strategy.

General Recommendations:	Facilitator(s):	Supporters:	Timeframe: Short 1-3 years, Medium 4-6, Long 7 plus
Adopt the Kaipara Spaces & Places Plan and use it to guide planning for facility provision on a district-wide and local basis.	KDC	KPARSF	Immediate
Establish a Kaipara Play, Active Recreation and Sport Forum (KPARSF) to drive the implementation, monitoring and review of the Kaipara Spaces & Places Plan.	KDC, Sport Northland	Sports, Community groups	Short
That the KPARSF undertake annual reviews of progress on the plan recommendations and a full review of the strategy every three years (with timing synchronised to allow the strategy to inform the KDC Long Term Plan LTP process).	KPARSF, KDC	Sport Northland	Ongoing
Undertake regular reviews of the Sport NZ Inventory Tool data for the district to ensure the database is up to date and becomes a useful resource for future planning.	KDC	KPARSF	Ongoing
Develop an integrated play strategy, with cross-Council initiatives to improve access and use of public space for play.	KDC	Sport Northland, Sport NZ, Iwi/hapū	Short
Identify a local play advocate within Council to advocate for play and child-friendly design within both Council and community led projects. This advocate could also represent KDC on the Te Tai Tokerau Play Coalition proposed through the regional Kōkiri ai te waka hourua strategy.	KDC	Sport Northland	Short
Develop policy that encourages investment into multi-use sport and recreation hub sites (over single use facilities where practical).	KDC, funders	Sport Northland	Short
Establish local levels of service for multi-use, introductory level play, active recreation and sport facility provision in each identified community within Kaipara.	KDC	Sport Northland	Medium
Investigate the possibility of a contestable 'match' fund for community groups to obtain up to 50% contribution to a maximum project value for prioritised amenity facility enhancement projects (upgrades to toilets, storage, change rooms, shade and shelters). Seek partnerships with community funders and commercial entities to support this match fund concept.	KDC	Funders, community groups	Short
Ensure that regional and district sport and recreation facility hubs are supported with appropriate facilities at local level (a hub and spoke approach). For example, support regional competition facilities such as the Kensington Hockey Stadium with local turfs for training and junior playing needs.	Sport Northland	KDC, RSOs	Ongoing
Encourage all asset owners to have Asset Management Plans in place and undertake ongoing, regular maintenance to ensure the district network of facilities remains in an appropriate condition to support	Sport Northland	KDC	Ongoing

General Recommendations:	Facilitator(s):	Supporters:	Timeframe: Short 1-3 years, Medium 4-6, Long 7 plus
participation. This is of particular importance due to the high proportion of non-Council owned sport and recreation assets in the district.			
Where possible, prior to renewing sports club's leases, Council should review lease conditions to facilitate increased sharing/sub-tenancy arrangements and consider implementing shorter lease terms so areas can be adapted to alternative future uses if demand declines.	KDC	Sport Northland, clubs, RSOs	Ongoing
When planning new or upgraded sports and recreation facilities ensure that consideration is given to how opportunities for spontaneous play can be catered to within these sites and facilities.	Asset owners	Sport Northland, KDC	Ongoing
Work to support local Kaipara based community organisations and volunteers to activate play spaces, increasing the time, place and permission for play to occur.	KDC	Sport Northland	Ongoing
Work with Sport Northland on implementing a Kaipara Facility Navigator role to assist the local community to work with Council on recommended facility development and enhancement projects.	KDC	Sport Northland	Short
Review Council policies and procedures to consider ways Council can best support locally led initiatives, including events. This may include providing support to assist groups with planning, delivery and compliance barriers (such as health and safety paperwork, traffic management, public liability insurance).	KDC	Sport Northland	Short
Ensure that appropriate levels of recreation planning resources are provided within Council.	KDC	Sport Northland	Ongoing
Where marae are considered the hub of the community, engage with and investigate ways in which funding and support can be provided to develop the spaces in order to provide participation opportunities within play, active recreation and sport.	Marae	Sport Northland, KDC, funders	Ongoing

9. Key Facility Specific Recommendations

This section highlights recommendations that relate to specific play, active recreation and sport facilities and activities within the Kaipara District. These recommendations align with the pillars, objectives and priorities of the regional strategy - Kōkiri ai te waka hourua.

Overall, there are sufficient facilities to meet most identified needs in the district. The key challenge is maintaining play, active recreation and sport facilities at appropriate standards as they age. There are opportunities to maximise use of facilities through provision of features such as lighting (e.g. outdoor courts and sports fields) and increased partnerships between sport, recreation and community groups both for multiuse facilities and also activation through locally led programming. The following series of tables outlines specific recommendations by facility type and where relevant by sports code or activity type.

9.1 Sport and Recreation Hubs

Facility/Activity Type:	Recommendation:	Facilitator(s):	Supporters:	Timeframe: Short 1-3 years, Medium 4-6, Long 7 plus
General	Continue to support existing multi-use sport and recreation hub sites across the district as important community sport and recreation assets. Work with all existing sport and recreation hub sites to ensure they have asset management plans in place and are maintaining facilities in line with those plans. It is important to ensure that long term maintenance and replacement is planned for.	Sport Northland	KDC, sport and recreation hubs	Ongoing
	Investigate ways to increase use of existing multi-use sport and recreation hub sites through membership initiatives for existing clubs and seeking other community uses of the sites and facilities. Initial work should be undertaken with the Maungaturoto Country Club and Ruawai Sports Ground.	Sport Northland	KDC, sport and recreation hubs	Short & Ongoing
Mangawhai Community Park	Continue to maintain and develop the park as a key resource for public recreation and enjoyment.	KDC	Mangawhai community	Ongoing
	Work with the community to undertake a review of the Mangawhai Community Park Master Plan to inform future development and use of the site.	KDC	Mangawhai community	Short
	Continue to support the Mangawhai Activity Zone (MAZ) as a key recreational resource for skate and bike alongside a range of other sport and recreation activities.	KDC, Mangawhai Activity Zone (MAZ)	Mangawhai community	Ongoing

Facility/Activity Type:	Recommendation:	Facilitator(s):	Supporters:	Timeframe: Short 1-3 years, Medium 4-6, Long 7 plus
Northern Wairoa Memorial Park and Pioneer Park	Continue to maintain and develop as a key sports hub site, working with the adjacent Sportsville Dargaville. Consider incorporating additional play, active recreation and sport uses as opportunities arise.	KDC	Northern Wairoa Rugby Sub Union, KCRS	Ongoing
	Undertake a needs and feasibility assessment to consider the provision of additional amenity facilities including multipurpose toilets, change rooms, storage, and car parking to serve Pioneer Park and the wider Northern Wairoa Memorial Park and Sportsville Dargaville precinct.	Northern Wairoa Rugby Sub-Union	KDC, KCRS	Medium
Pioneer Park, Northern Wairoa Memorial Park and Sportsville Dargaville Precinct	Joint planning is required regarding future developments at these sites to ensure synergies and reduce any duplication across the wider precinct area. Undertake a joint planning project to consider opportunities to enhance the provision and standard of sports field lighting to allow for multiple codes (football, rugby league, rugby) to use for training and night games. Ensure any initiative by Sportsville Dargaville to provide a lit, multi-use turf area is considered as part of this planning.	KDC	Kauri Coast Recreation Society (KCRS), Northern Wairoa Rugby Sub Union	Short
Pou Tu o Te Rangi (Harding Park)	Continue to develop and maintain as a key site for mountain biking (as the primary use). Explore an alternative location for disc golf (possibly at Memorial Park).	KDC, Pou Tu o Te Rangi (Harding Park) Joint Management Committee	Sport Northland	Ongoing
	Investigate other potential compatible uses of the site to increase its recreation use and value to the wider community. This could include consideration of walking tracks, entry level cycle or learn to ride and nature play opportunities.	KDC, Pou Tu o Te Rangi (Harding Park) Joint Management Committee	Sport Northland	Short
Selwyn Park	Continue to maintain as a key site for play and active recreation (skate, bike - pump track, court sport and playground).	KDC	Local community	Ongoing
	Investigate options to increase use of the site for play through working with the local community to activate it with community-led play initiatives.	Sport Northland	KDC	Short & ongoing
Sportsville Dargaville	Undertake a detailed options and feasibility assessment for a multi-use turf installation in Dargaville. The replacement of the existing turf at Dargaville High School needs to be one of the options considered.	KDC, KCRS	Sport Northland, Northland Hockey	Short

Facility/Activity Type:	Recommendation:	Facilitator(s):	Supporters:	Timeframe: Short 1-3 years, Medium 4-6, Long 7 plus
	Subject to the outcome of this assessment ensure that the proposed multi-use turf is primarily suitable for hockey, whilst also providing a resource to support other codes, particularly for training needs. The specifications need to cater for adult hockey (training) and junior hockey training and games. Ideally the turf will meet full-sized hockey specifications (1/2 turf at a minimum) to make it suitable for a wide range of other uses and be lit to the appropriate standards to support training for multiple codes.			
	Provide a low-cost rain cover/shade system over a minimum of 2 courts, with side protection options on the prevailing wind side. This may require removal and repurposing of some of the existing court lights to allow lighting that is compatible with a cover system. Also see court sports recommendations (section 9.4) for more detail regarding courts.	KCRS	Funders	Medium
	Investigate options for providing more opportunities for self-directed play for children at the site. This may include permanent infrastructure such as play equipment, formed bike tracks and markings for play activities (e.g. hop scotch, 4 square) on appropriate surfaces. It may also include activating the site with mobile play equipment and play 'events'.	KCRS	KDC	Short
Te Kopuru Recreation Reserve	Continue to maintain and enhance with the local community to further increase play, sport and recreation uses and value. Consider providing cycle opportunities for young people at this site.	KDC	Sport Northland, Bike Northland	Ongoing

9.2 Aquatic Facilities (Pools) and Water Based Sport and Recreation

Facility/Activity Type:	Recommendation:	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe: Short 1-3 years, Medium 4-6, Long 7 plus
General	Investigate formal partnerships with schools, where required, to increase community access to school provided pools.	Sport Northland	KDC	Short
	Ensure there is a well-planned programme of ongoing facility maintenance and upgrades to ensure existing facilities continue to meet the needs of the community.	Asset owners		Ongoing
Kauri Coast Community Pool	Maintain this as the key aquatic facility for the district. Undertake an options assessment and feasibility study for upgrading the facility to meet the future needs of the community, focussing on catering to all ages and abilities. A priority consideration is options for extending the season and maximising use of the hydrotherapy / children's pool through covering these areas. Options for provision of some covered lane space could also be considered within this planning work. This should be done in conjunction with the Regional Aquatic Facility Plan as proposed in the regional strategy.	Sport Northland, KDC	RIF	Short
	Ensure starting blocks and lane ropes are maintained in good condition to support competitive swimming requirements.	Sport Northland	Swimming clubs	Ongoing
Water-Based Sport and Recreation				
Support facilities	Work with water-based sport and recreation groups to identify priority sites across the district for investment in appropriate water access, boat storage and amenity facilities (toilets, tap water). Top priorities are provision of public toilets and fresh water wash down areas for vessels. Secure storage areas and enhanced launching areas are also desirable. This may include facilitating partnerships with existing water based sports groups to cater to a wider variety of water based users.	KDC	NSC	Short
Programmes	Support the local implementation of the proposed regional partnership programme for water safety and basic water skills education.	Sport Northland, NSC	Local clubs	Short

9.3 Sports Fields

Facility/Activity Type:	Recommendation:	Facilitator(s):	Supporters:	Timeframe: Short 1-3 years, Medium 4-6, Long 7 plus
General	Undertake a sports field supply and demand study to assess current capacity, demand hours and the potential need to facilitate partnerships to increase allocation/access by some field based codes where there is an imbalance in provision. For the Kaipara area, the issue of 'security' of access needs to be a key consideration of this study as many playing fields in the district are not council owned. This will inform development of a detailed implementation plan for sports field improvements (lighting, drainage, irrigation).	KDC	Asset owners, Sport Northland, RSOs, clubs	Medium
	Continue to maintain existing sports fields to ensure a quality playing experience is provided. This may require field quality improvements such as irrigation and drainage at some sites.	KDC, asset owners		Ongoing
	Any new sports field developments should, where possible, be large enough to cater to 3 full sized winter playing fields along with an appropriate level of amenity provision (car parking, toilets, change rooms, storage and other recreation facilities). These and any enhancements of existing sports field should be multi-use sports hubs wherever possible, ideally with both a winter and summer code allocated to a field site.	KDC	Sport Northland, RSOs, clubs	Ongoing
	Work with clubs and recreation groups to create a prioritised programme of amenity facility enhancements at key sport and recreation sites across the district. Many facilities have had maintenance deferred meaning toilets, change rooms and storage facilities are in poor condition. When planning such upgrades ensure consideration is given to appropriate unisex changing facilities to support increases in female participation.	KDC, Sport Northland	Asset owners	Short
	That Council support the provision of appropriate space and time for taonga takāro (traditional Māori sports) such as ki-o-rahi and mahi a te rehia on parks and reserves. This may be at Council sites or through encouraging partnerships with the owners of non-Council owned sports fields.	KDC, asset owners	Sport Northland	Short
Football	Subject to the joint planning work for sports field lighting in the wider precinct, enhance the football floodlights at Northern Wairoa Memorial Park to meet competition-standard specifications to allow night games and enhanced training opportunities.	KDC, Northern Wairoa Football Club	Northern Football, Sport Northland, Northern Wairoa Rugby Sub Union, KCRS	Medium

Facility/Activity Type:	Recommendation:	Facilitator(s):	Supporters:	Timeframe: Short 1-3 years, Medium 4-6, Long 7 plus
	Work with the Mangawhai Football club to improve the standard of facilities available for football at the Mangawhai Domain including playing field quality improvements and sports field lighting to increase the hours of use.	KDC, Mangawhai Football club	Northern Football, Sport Northland	Short
Rugby league	Subject to the joint planning work for sports field lighting in the wider precinct, install new floodlights at the rugby league fields at Northern Wairoa Memorial Park to meet competition standards to allow night games and enhanced training.	KDC, Rugby League Northland	Sport Northland, Northern Wairoa Rugby Sub Union, KCRS	Short
	Seek partnerships with rugby clubs and other codes to secure access to grounds for training and competition purposes.	Rugby League Northland	Clubs	Ongoing
Rugby Union	Seek to maximise the use and sustainability of current clubroom facilities through potential partnerships with other codes, activities and community groups.	Northland Rugby	Clubs, Sport Northland	Ongoing
Athletics	Continue to ensure the community has access to quality grass athletics tracks for local level participation and training. This may require turf quality enhancements and partnerships with schools.	Athletics Northland, asset owners	Sport Northland	Ongoing
Cricket	Support the provision of an area suitable for training and games in Mangawhai to cater to the growing community.	KDC	Northland Cricket, Mangawhai Cricket Club	Ongoing

9.4 Court Based (Indoor and Outdoor)

Facility/Activity Type:	Recommendation:	Facilitator(s):	Supporters:	Timeframe: Short 1-3 years, Medium 4-6, Long 7 plus
General	Prioritise maintenance and quality enhancements to existing indoor and outdoor courts to improve playing surface suitability. Where possible any playing surface upgrades should consider provision of additional line markings to cater to multiple uses, including informal games where that is not already provided.	KDC, asset owners	Funders, Sport Northland	Short & Ongoing
	Investigate formal partnerships with schools to increase community access to school provided courts (indoor and outdoor).	Sport Northland	KDC, schools	Short
	Subject to the outcomes of the regional courts plan, investigate installation of improved lighting and covers over existing outdoor courts in the district to increase usability in all weather (rain and heat protection), starting with some courts at Sportsville Dargaville.	KDC, Asset Owners	Sport Northland, RSOs	Medium
Basketball	Subject to the outcomes of the regional courts plan, investigate the provision of additional multiuse outdoor courts (minimum of full ½ court basketball size) across the district to improve local access. Key opportunities are locating these at existing sport and recreation hub sites or in partnerships with schools.	Sport Northland, Basketball	KDC, asset owners	Short
Tennis	Investigate options to increase sharing of existing single use tennis court sites. This may include provision of court markings and equipment (e.g. hoops, goals) to encourage casual utilisation e.g. basketball, futsal. This should be considered in conjunction with the Regional Courts Plan.	Tennis, Sport Northland	RSOs	Short
Futsal	Futsal is currently constrained by a lack of access to suitable facilities. Ensure that all plans for court provision and enhancement consider the needs of futsal.	Sport Northland, asset owners	Northern Football	Ongoing

9.5 Specialised Sport Facilities

Facility/Activity Type:	Recommendation:	Facilitator(s):	Supporters:	Timeframe: Short 1-3 years, Medium 4-6, Long 7 plus
Bowls	Subject to the regional bowls facility plan, retain the existing network of single community bowling clubs where demand continues to exist. Seek partnerships with other sports, recreation or community groups for clubrooms use to increase sustainability.	Bowls Northland, bowling clubs	Sport Northland	Ongoing
Golf	To enhance sustainability of the district golf clubs, investigate opportunities to increase clubroom sharing with other sports, recreation and community groups. Also investigate alternative programme delivery and promotions to increase activity on existing courses and meet a wider potential player demographic.	Golf Northland, golf clubs	Sport Northland,	Short
	Prior to investing in major renewals or upgrades to existing golf courses and facilities, undertake a needs and options analysis to determine the cost benefit of alternative delivery approaches such as Sportville partnerships and developing differentiated service offerings e.g. conversion from 18 to 9 hole courses.	Golf Northland, golf clubs	Sport Northland	Medium
Equestrian	Continue to provide a network of Equestrian facilities providing accessible participation opportunities. Encourage multi-use partnerships, firstly with different equestrian groups and disciplines and secondly with other community recreation groups and activities to increase the community use and value of equestrian sites wherever possible.	Asset owners, equestrian organisations	Sport Northland, KDC	Ongoing
Gymsports	Continue local provision of introductory Gymsports opportunities where demand exists. It is appropriate to provide this through shared facilities such as community halls where pack-in and pack out of equipment is required. Travel to fit-for-purpose gymnastics facilities (e.g. Whangarei) will be required for specialised competition level participants.	Sport Northland, KDC	Deliverers	Ongoing
	The Otamatea Club (in Kaiwaka) has ceased operating. If demand exists, work to re-establish this club as the equipment and venue is available. Focus on catering to introductory-level gym and movement classes for young people.	Sport Northland	Local community	Short
Hockey	Investigate partnership options with schools to increase local access to hockey turf facilities to support the regional approach of hub and spoke provision. Local turfs should be multi-use where possible and focussed on training and introductory level hockey needs, with the main competition facilities continuing to be based in Whangarei and Kaikohe. Also see Sportville Dargaville recommendation.	Sport Northland, Northland Hockey	KCRS, KDC	Ongoing
	Specifically consider opportunities the new multi-use turf at Dargaville Intermediate may provide for basic hockey skills practice for local community use.	Hockey clubs, Dargaville Intermediate		Short

Facility/Activity Type:	Recommendation:	Facilitator(s):	Supporters:	Timeframe: Short 1-3 years, Medium 4-6, Long 7 plus
Squash	Many squash facilities in the district are aging. Clubs should prioritise general maintenance and minor upgrades to raise existing facility standards and/or keep facilities fit-for-purpose. When undertaking maintenance and minor upgrades clubs should consider enhancing aspects such as court surfaces and walls, lighting (consider LED), heating/ventilation and improving the general amenity of the club including enhancing toilet and change room areas.	Squash Northland, squash clubs	Funders	Ongoing
	To retain existing and attract new members, ensure quality programmes are being offered. Consider options and systems to make access for casual players easier to maximise the potential from growth in this player type.	Squash Northland, squash clubs		Ongoing
	Undertake a needs and feasibility assessment to consider the potential expansion of the Maungaturoto Squash Club to a three court facility (currently two courts). This assessment should include consideration of providing a fit-for-purpose doubles court as there are currently none in the region.	Maungaturoto Squash (and Country Club), Squash Northland	Sport Northland	Medium
Softball	Continue to provide for softball on multiuse grass sites. Do not invest in single-use facilities (dirt diamonds).	KDC	Sport Northland, Northland Softball Association	Ongoing
Dargaville Speedway	Continue to maintain as an important district asset for motor-sport. Consider opportunities to increase use of the site for other recreation activities where it is practical and safe to do so.	Dargaville Production Stockcar Club	KDC	Ongoing

9.6 Community Halls

Facility/Activity Type:	Recommendation:	Facilitator(s):	Supporters:	Timeframe: Short 1-3 years, Medium 4-6, Long 7 plus
General	Continue to support and maintain a network of multi-use community halls catering to a wide range of uses, including indoor sports and recreation, where sufficient demand and use exist. This should include ongoing maintenance and minor facility upgrades (e.g. floor surface, climate control/heating) to enhance suitability for users.	KDC, asset owners	User groups	Ongoing
Indoor Bowls	Continue to use existing multi-use facilities such as community halls. Where possible installation of climate control to improve the suitability of these venues should be considered.	Indoor bowls clubs, asset owners	KDC	Ongoing
Dance	Continue to use existing multi-use facilities such as community halls. Where possible future upgrades to community hall style facilities should consider the needs of dance groups (e.g. floor type, mirrors, climate control/heating).	Dance groups, asset owners	KDC	Ongoing

9.7 Play and Recreation Facilities

Facility/Activity Type:	Recommendation:	Facilitator(s):	Supporters:	Timeframe: Short 1-3 years, Medium 4-6, Long 7 plus
Walking & Cycling	Continue to implement key Kaipara-based projects linked to the identified objectives and priorities in the Northland Walking and Cycling Strategy.	KDC, Northland Walking & Cycling Forum	Sport Northland	Ongoing
	Improve walking and cycle connectivity between Sportville Dargaville, Northern Wairoa Memorial Park, Pioneer Park and the Dargaville town centre. Incorporate design features that encourage play on the way opportunities for young people using walkway and cycle ways.	KDC	Northern Wairoa Rugby Sub Union, KCRS	Short
Cycling	Investigate additional pump track provision to support children's bike activity across the wider district where communities show a strong interest and desire to support implementation and future maintenance of these facilities. These tracks can support the pathway to BMX and mountain bike participation.	KDC	Northland Walking & Cycling Forum	Short
	Plan to ensure that support amenities such as adequate car parking, toilets and relaxation facilities (shaded picnic tables) are considered as part of bike track and trail provision.	KDC	Northland Walking & Cycling Forum	Ongoing

Facility/Activity Type:	Recommendation:	Facilitator(s):	Supporters:	Timeframe: Short 1-3 years, Medium 4-6, Long 7 plus
Playgrounds	Continue to maintain existing playground facilities across the district. When play equipment assets are nearing the end of their useful life, consider the changing needs of the community and potential for alternative provision such as play spaces and natural play options before replacing with new equipment of the same type.	KDC, asset owners	Local community	Ongoing
	Work with hapū, and iwi to identify opportunities for distinct Māori play opportunities that create pathways to celebrate and learn cultural identity. This could include consideration of creating Mara Hupara (traditional playground) space within the Kaipara District.	KDC, hapū, iwi	whānau	Short
Parks and Public space	Neighbourhood parks and schools provide a key sites for local communities. Work with local communities to develop and activate these places in a way that suits local community needs, with a focus on providing opportunities for tamariki and rangatahi for spontaneous, informal and casual play and recreation.	KDC	Local community, whānau	Ongoing
Youth Space	Undertake a community needs assessment to consider the demand and possible options for a multi-purpose youth centre catering to drop-in and social requirements of youth as well as catering to youth sport and recreation needs. Ideally this would be part of an existing or multi-purpose facility.	KDC, youth organisations.	Health organisations, MSD	Short

KŌKIRI AI TE WAKA HOURUA

Te Tai Tokerau moving forward in partnership
A strategy for play, active recreation and sport

(2021-2030)

KŌKIRI AI TE WAKA HOURUA

Te Tai Tokerau moving forward in partnership
A strategy for play, active recreation and sport

(2021-2030)

KŌKIRI

1. (verb) (-tia) to thrust forward, attack, call, charge, rush forward.
2. (verb) (-hia, -tia) to champion (a cause), promote, advocate, lead.
3. (verb) to rise in a column.
4. (noun) attack, assault, charge, offensive, strike.
5. (noun) body of men rushing forward, attack party, forward movement of a kapa haka.

MOVING

1. (adjective) in motion (adjective) changing or capable of changing position

WAKA HOURUA

Double-hulled canoe

MOVEMENT

1. (noun) action, motion, exercise, progress, progression



Introduction - He Timatanga Kōrero



He waka hourua, he waka eke noa
E mihi ana ki ngā mate kua wheturangitia haere hoki atu
ki hawaiki nui hawaiki roa hawaiki pamamao.
Huri noa ki a tatou te kano hi ora, e mihi ana.

We acknowledge those who have passed on and now
live in the spiritual world
We acknowledge the living, and give thanks for our
continued existence
Greetings to you all.

This strategy sets out the vision for the future of the play,
active recreation and sport in Te Tai Tokerau and provides
high-level strategic guidance for everyone in the sector.
It identifies future priorities for the region to focus on
to improve participation levels and access to play, active
recreation and sporting opportunities across the region.

The strategy provides a snapshot of the current situation in the region including key demographics, participation trends, challenges, opportunities and advantages. It is intended to inform the development of future Long-term and Annual Plans for Councils and key organisations working within the sector, including funders. It considers the spaces, places and programmes that support play, active recreation and sport activities in the region.

It was developed in a spirit of partnership with input from a wide range of organisations, clubs, community groups and interested individuals across the region. Thanks to everyone who contributed through the survey, community workshops, hui, stakeholder meetings and consultation process. A strong desire for a more active future for Te Tai Tokerau was clearly expressed.

This strategy covers the Far North, Kaipara and Whangarei Districts of Te Tai Tokerau(Northland).

In support of the Tuia 250 movement, Te Tai Tokerau recognises the extraordinary voyaging traditions and cultures of Te Moana Nui a Kiwa, the exceptional feats of Pacific voyages, mātauranga, innovation, non-instrument navigation prowess and their decision to settle in Aotearoa many generations ago.

In addition to the voyaging traditions, a way of life for Māori was established as they settled in Aotearoa many generations ago. Many of these traditions and practises are still used today and are continuing to be acknowledged and seen as a way of life for Māori.

Kōrero paki highlight the feats of tupuna Māori including Kupe, Rahiri, Te Houtaewa, Kawiti and other tupuna who took full advantage of their natural abilities and Te Taiao to create an adventurous life that in today's society is relevant to the play, active recreation and sport sector.

The vision is to set out a strategy that caters for whānau, hapū, iwi Māori across Te Tai Tokerau to thrive as Māori within the sector.

As well as visiting our past, it is also important to acknowledge key moments of history for Māori and acknowledge Te Tai Tokerau as being the home for He Whakaputanga and Te Tiriti o Waitangi.

These documents acknowledge the mana of the articles of He Whakaputanga and Te Tiriti o Waitangi and in doing so acknowledges Māori as mana whenua.

This document looks to create a bi-cultural future for play, active recreation and sport in Te Tai Tokerau. The name of the document reflects a desire to create this future under the waka hourua partnership allowing people to give effect from a tangata whenua and tangata tiriti approach.

It is appropriate to acknowledge the time, effort, knowledge and experiences shared by whānau throughout Te Tai Tokerau who contributed to this strategy and provided insights into the challenges, the realities and a way forward for Māori participation across Te Tai Tokerau within the sector.

Purpose - Te Kaupapa o Te Rautaki

This strategy and its insights will help guide our approach, programme of work and how best to undertake planning for future provision. By working in a collaborative manner, a view of the priorities for future play, active recreation and sport needs has been developed. It is intended this will help guide Councils across Te Tai Tokerau, and relevant funding agencies, in their decision making. It will help the sector as a whole, be better informed as to what the needs, rather than wants, are across the region and its districts.

Strategic Fit - He rautaki e here ngā kōrero

This strategy provides a high-level strategic framework to guide future decision making for play, active recreation and sport. The diagram below acknowledges the importance of the need for the regional strategy to be supported by district level, facility and programmes focussed plans and strategies. Whangārei, Kaipara and the Far North district level plans, will help inform future reviews of the over-arching regional strategy and will collectively inform council long term plans (LTPs) and work programmes across the full range of sector organisations.

KŌKIRI AI TE WAKA HOURUA

INFORMING
SECTOR WORK
PROGRAMMES



WHANGĀREI ACTIVE
RECREATION & SPORT STRATEGY



KAIPARA
SPACES & PLACES PLAN



FAR NORTH
SPACES & PLACES PLAN

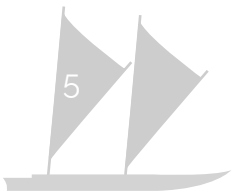

INFORMING
COUNCILS LONG
TERM PLANS



**“Our whānau loves sports”
- survey respondent**

**“I support anything that keeps Northlanders active”
- survey respondent**

**“Working together as a community is important. Another code should never be treated as
a threat, we all want the same thing and should work together” – survey respondent**



Current Context - Te Horopaki o tēnēi wā

Covid-19 is continuing to have a significant impact on New Zealand and all communities and sectors. It provides opportunities for strategic change, doing things differently and better in the play, active recreation and sport sector at all levels.

“It’s timely post the COVID experience to rethink the whole sector and how this could be flipped or reimaged for the 21st century and beyond” – survey respondent

Demographics

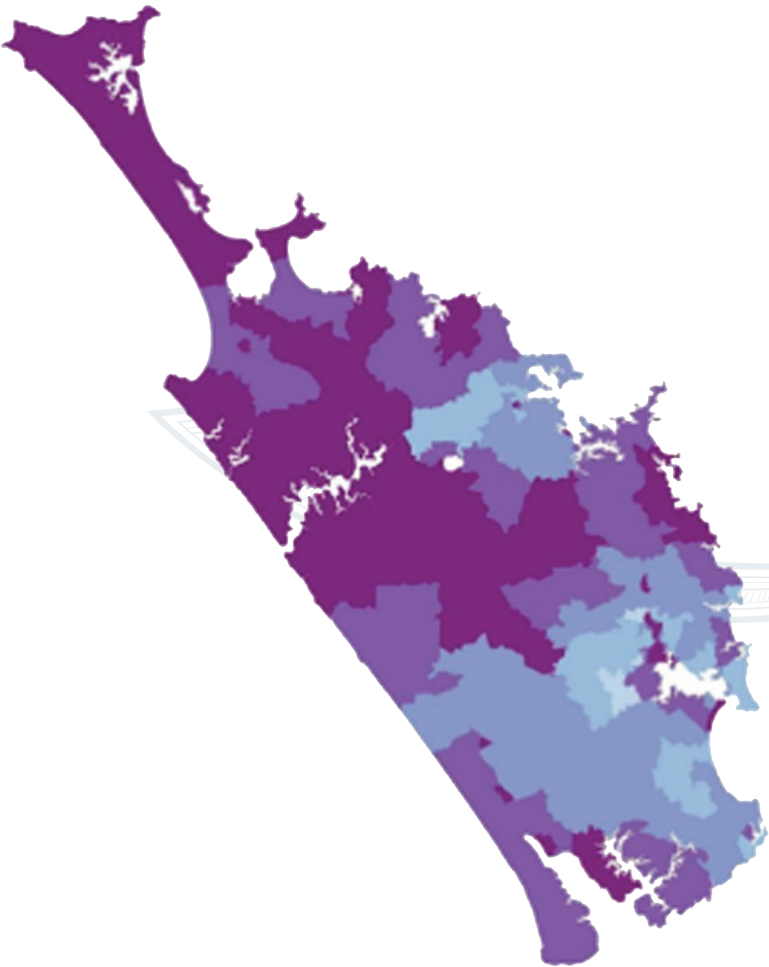
- Regional population was 179,076 in 2018, a 21% increase from 2006.
- Northland population projected to reach 196,700 by 2043.
- All districts in the region have grown steadily since 2006 - Kaipara 26%, Whangarei 22%, Far North 17%.
- 51% of residents live in the Whangarei District, 36% in Far North and 13% in Kaipara.
- Median age in the region is 42.6years, the median age for Māori is 27.2 years.
- A 126% projected increase in the 65+ age group (2013-2043), to become 35.9% of the regional population.
- Adults over 65+ projected to reach 80,440 by 2043, more than the 0-14 (43,300) and 15-29 (34,490) age groups combined.
- 36% of the population identified as Māori in 2018, of this approximately 45% were under 20 years old.
- It is projected Māori will make up 39% of Northland’s population by 2033¹.

1. Sources: Statistics NZ Census Counts usually resident population counts, 2006, 2013, and 2018 Censuses. (2018 Data set); Statistics NZ 2018 Census Place Summaries Northland Region; Statistics NZ Subnational Population projections 2013 – high series; Northland Population Projections by Age Group 2013 – High Series

Deprivation

New Zealand Index of Multiple Deprivation

Te Tai Tokerau has the largest proportion of highly deprived areas in New Zealand.

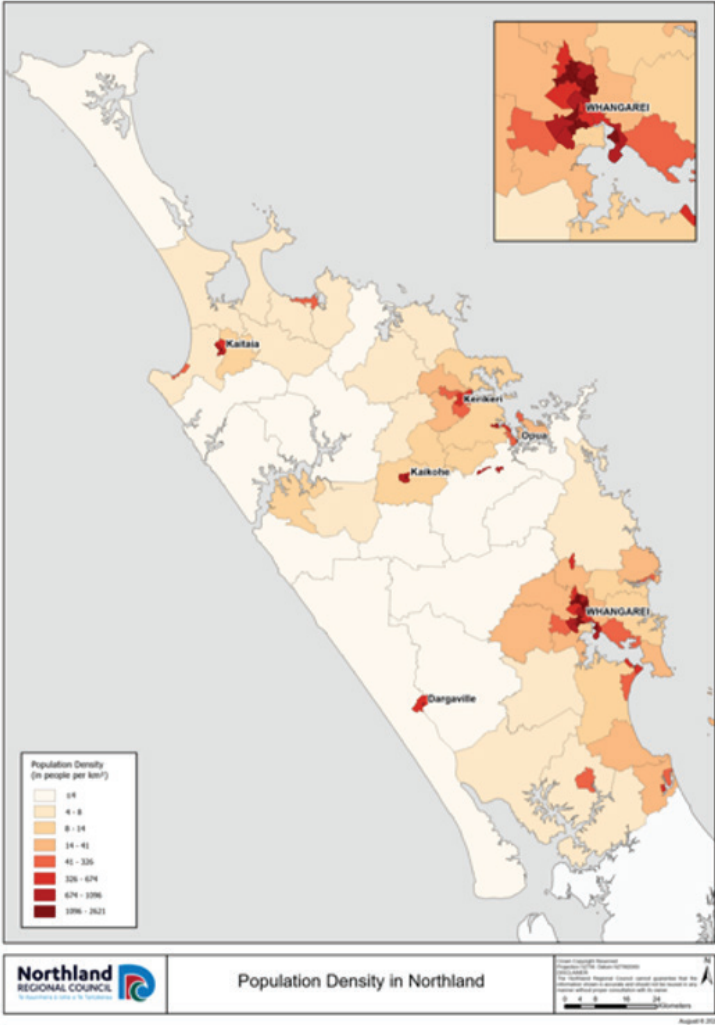


● Highly Deprived

● Least deprived

Population Density

There are many small communities spread throughout the region, many are not large enough to sustain anything other than basic play, active recreation and sport amenities.



Participation Trends - Ngā Tatauranga o Te Tai Tokerau

Regional Participation Trends

- Only 67% of Northland adults are active (72% nationally).
- Less Northlanders are physically active for 5 hours or more per week (38.9% compared to 43.8% nationally).
- Less Northlanders achieve at least 2.5 hours of activity per week (43.3% compared to 49.5% nationally).
- Northlanders are more likely to participate in little or no physical activity (16.6% compared to 14.3% nationally).

There is no representation of team-based sports in the top 15 activities for Northland, individual activities such as 'playing games' or an 'individual workout' are more common. Therefore, support for informal, active recreation and play is very important.

High ranked activities such as swimming, jogging/running, playing games and individual workout occur in a range of settings, natural and built.

Northland provides a great natural environment; how can this be better leveraged to support Northlanders being active?

Activity trends for young people in Northland:

- 93% of young people are active (compared to 94% nationally)
- Student involvement in secondary school sport has increased from 42% in 2005 to 45% in 2019.
- students at high decile schools are more involved in sport (69.4%) than those in medium (43%) and low decile schools (48.2%)

When compared to Northland as a whole Māori have:

- lower rates of physical activity overall.
- higher team sports participation.

A high portion of Māori participation is in ways that are not always recognised as traditional sport and recreation. It is instead a lifestyle and way of living that is purposeful, that benefits the whole whānau (whānau centric) and due to the humble nature of our people, it is not always classed as being physically active by the participants themselves. Providing for whānau and/or hui through diving/hunting/māra kai, rongoa Māori is seen as a purposeful activity.

Te Taiao – connection to and through the natural environment provides physical activities that are challenging and purposeful.

Kaitiakitanga – guardianship of our awa, moana, taha moana, whenua, ngahere, wāhi tapu.

Exploring and reliving the ways of our tupuna. Warfare skill development – traditional Māori movement, taonga takāro, and mau rakau.

Kapa haka a way for Māori to express themselves, retell kōrero through waiata, haka, moteatea, poi and connect with the realm of Ngā mahi a te rehia.

The practise of karakia provides balance in the space of tapu and noa to all activities that are carried out by whānau.



Regional Advantages - Ngā Painga o Te Tai Tokerau

Te Tai Tokerau has some key advantages when it comes to play, active recreation and sport. Arguably, the key advantage is it has the best natural environment (Te Taiao) and climate of anywhere in the country to be active. Identified advantages are:

- Climate
- Te Taiao (natural environment.)
- Provision of play, active recreation and sport facilities by state schools and state integrated schools is important for local access, particularly for small communities.
- Working together – for example, the Northland Sports Coalition.
- Regional Sports Facilities Rate – provides crucial funding support to many sport facility projects.
- Tourism facilities available to community – tourism provides some access to facilities that might not otherwise be available to locals.
- Some first class facilities – that bring events and economic benefits to the region and also provide for regional use.

Advantages for Māori

- Whakapapa to whenua is a huge advantage for Māori in accessing Te Taiao and purposeful activities that engage them ā tinana ā wairua.
- Hard physical workers and providers for whānau.
- Based on the marae model, everyone has a role on the marae and therefore our whānau are strong in volunteerism and being resourceful to provide opportunities to engage. Koha atu, koha mai.
- Whakapapa and mātauranga create a deeper and meaningful connection for some.
- Connection with our culture, our reo, our tikanga.
- Stories of our history show our tupuna were strong, intelligent, resilient physical people. It is in our DNA.

These are all huge advantages for those that are connected as there is a sense of belonging and knowing our place in this world.



“Make the most of our incredible environment e.g. bush, water sports, recreation” - survey respondent

Challenges - Ngā wero o Te Tai Tokerau

Key strategic challenges in Te Tai Tokerau:

Population Distribution	"It can be hard to find enough teams, or (players for), full 15 or 13 a-side teams. Regular small sided, (7 or 9 a-side), competition would be more realistic" - survey respondent
Equity Issues	There are social and economic barriers that limit opportunities for some people to participate and thrive in play, active recreation and sport.
Transport Challenges	The need to travel and the distances involved can put people off participating.
Small Ratepayer Base and Limited Council Funds	Councils must carefully balance delivery of all core services including support for play, active recreation and sport.



The specific insights, challenges and opportunities information summarised in the following pages was gained from community engagement, including specific consultation with Māori.

Key sector challenges:

- Declining volunteerism - the availability of volunteers including referees, coaches, administrators.
- Membership retention - including youth drop-off and youth leaving the region.
- Funding and operational sustainability - ability to fund maintenance of facilities and operations, including programmes. Resources required for compliance.
- Affordability - RSO & NSO affiliation fees affect affordability.
- Accessibility for all.
- Facility distribution and quality throughout the region.
- Centralisation of competitions and facilities can challenge the ability to deliver to local communities.
- Improving awareness of existing opportunities.
- Active recreation and play are not 'organised' and do not have a voice.
- Skill gaps within the sector in volunteer and paid roles.
- Changing expectations and demands for enhanced services including paid staff.

Key challenges for Māori:

- Accessibility to facilities / spaces.
- A sense of disconnect is felt in spaces and places around the rohe (area) by Māori due to the foreign environment.
- Access to information.
- Cost of travel and participation in play, active recreation and sport.
- The level of service in smaller communities tends to drop off making it more difficult to access opportunities.
- Lack of time to volunteer and coach – many other responsibilities and commitments to our own people first.
- Some are disconnected to whānau, hapū, iwi and therefore lack understanding and connection with whakapapa, mātauranga, Te Taiao and a whānau centric approach or way of living.

This strategy looks to leverage advantages and minimise the impact of challenges.



Opportunities - Ngā whai wāhitanga

There are a number of key opportunities to help increase participation in play, active recreation and sport across the region.

- Recruiting, upskilling and supporting volunteers.
- Multi-use facilities.
- Sport and active recreation delivering wider community benefits.
- Maximising connection with the natural environment.
- Working in partnership within and outside the sector.
- Changing the way the sector is funded.
- Having local facilities that meet basic needs.
- Increased promotion of sport and active recreation activities that are available.
- Community driven approaches.
- Quality programmes and opportunities that cater to all levels of interest, diversity.
- Increasing informal, casual participation opportunities.

Opportunities for Māori

- Reflecting the whakapapa/mātauranga/history of areas in parks, facilities, maunga, moana, awa, roto.
- Exercising kaitiakitanga/ taking ownership of and working with the people to maintain and look after parks and local spaces that fall in their boundaries.
- Having appropriate names of spaces and places that reflect the community.
- Sharing a Māori approach; whānau centric; marae model for volunteerism and governance and active kaitiakitanga through development, establishment and review of sector-wide activities.
- Developing marae to include provisions for participation including adequate accessible playground/areas for tamariki, space for kaumatua/kuia to enjoy physical movement, other provisions based on local whānau needs/wants.
- Reconnecting ahi teretere, ahi matao to culture through play, active recreation and sport with the support of ahi kaa. Seeing themselves as Māori first - 'Are you a Māori sportsperson or do you play sport and happen to be Māori?'

"If you can afford for your whānau to play sports there are a lot of opportunities. If you cannot afford petrol to get to sport, equipment or fees, then whānau cannot participate in sport." - survey respondent

"Think outside the box and be more inclusive in relation to seeing culture, recreation, leisure and sport as part of a bigger thing than merely being a thing." – survey respondent



Current Provision - Ngā whai wahitanga

Overview

- There are a large number of play, active recreation and sport facilities in the region. However, many are ageing and poorly maintained.
- There is a clear need to apply a hierarchy approach to facilities to cater to different needs, without over-provision of one level of facility.
- There is also a need to optimise existing facilities, making the most of what Te Tai Tokerau currently has before investing in new facilities unless clear gaps have been identified.
- Hubbing is highly desirable but not at the expense of a base level of local provision and delivery to ensure appropriate access for small communities, allowing everyone to participate.
- A base level of service is desired - provision of facilities that support local community involvement at an informal, social/casual and recreational level.
- Partnerships, repurposing and rationalisation of facilities is needed e.g. clubrooms.
- There are a number of facility projects that are currently underway in the region, these are an important part of the ongoing work towards resolving some of the facility gaps identified in this strategy.

“We have facilities but youth are looking for something to do. The part that is missing is the conduit - parents, volunteers” - stakeholder

“Sports seem to be siloed so would be economical (to) see more multisport facilities.” – survey respondent

Key Facility gaps

- Indoor and outdoor courts.
- Aquatic facilities – multi-generational i.e. warmer water for kaumatua, kuia, play water and swimming lessons
- Lighting – fields and outdoor courts to support training and night games (alternative delivery scenarios).
- Accessible facilities (catering effectively to disability access also suits older people, young people etc).
- Quality playing and training facilities surfaces (fields and courts) – quality (drainage, irrigation, lighting, storage, changing rooms).
- Spectator facilities – shade, shelter, seating.
- Water provision – water supply issues, particularly in the Far North can impact sport and active recreation. There is also a lack of water provision at many sport and active recreation facilities across the region, such as hoses/taps for water-based sports for washing boats.
- Youth spaces (facilities that are appealing to youth and easy for them to access).
- Active recreation facilities to support informal, social/casual use – skateparks, multiuse local courts, linked up cycleways, walkways, footpaths.
- Mara Hupara (traditional playgrounds).

Programme gaps

- Volunteer training and education including coaching, officials’ roles and succession planning to transfer knowledge from outgoing to new volunteers.
- More water safety education, including in natural settings (beach, ocean, rivers) and more learn to swim opportunities (including for adults).
- More “event’s” people can participate in, in their own time. For example, parkrun, app based or online ‘competition’.
- More play “events” (activation of existing spaces for play) – provided by local communities.

Vision - A mātou moemoea

Keeping Te Tai Tokerau moving in partnership, using our tikanga (way of doing things) to guide how we act now and in the future.

Our Principles and Values - A mātou whakapono

He Whakaputanga o te Rangatiratanga o Nu Tirene me Te Tiriti o Waitangi

We acknowledge the mana of the articles of He Whakaputanga and Te Tiriti o Waitangi and in doing so acknowledge Māori as mana whenua.

Poipoia te kakano kia puawai

Young people (mokopuna, tamariki and rangatahi) will be our primary focus. We will focus on fun and encourage young people to not specialise too early. We acknowledge that childhood sporting success is not a reliable predictor of adult athlete success. We value the importance of play and the right of young people to have varied, self-directed, playful experiences.

Whakawhanaungatanga

We will use play, active recreation and sport to support the mahi of other sectors (through strategic partnerships). Working together - using our local connections, knowledge and input to create a better, more active future throughout Te Tai Tokerau.

Oranga Taiao, Oranga Tāngata

We actively encourage the connection of people to place. It is important that play, active recreation and sport supports holistic wellbeing. Our spaces and places will be increasingly used for a wide range of play, active recreation and sport and community outcomes. We will empower individual communities to create participation initiatives specifically suited to their place and their people.



Strategic Outcomes - Ngā putanga rautaki

From engagement with individuals, whanau and organisations across the sector and region, there were different views expressed, but also many consistent themes regarding what the key strategic outcomes and areas of future focus should be in the region. The key strategic outcomes are captured in these symbols.



Opportunities
to be active for life



Inclusive, accessible
and affordable



Connecting tangata to te taiao
(people to the environment)



Increase
participation



Quality
experiences



Supporting
local capability



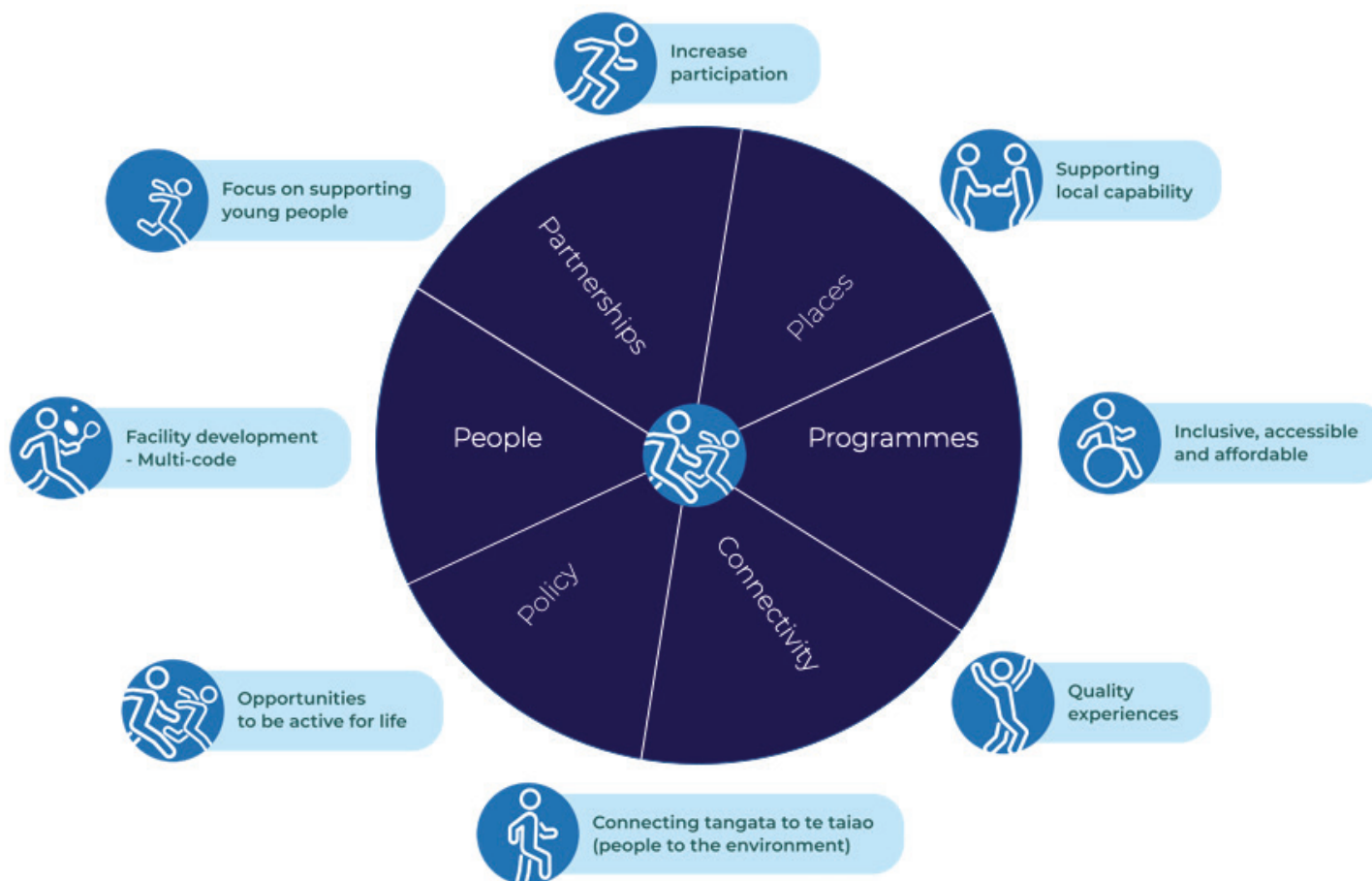
Facility development
- Multi-code



Focus on supporting
young people

Strategic Pillars - Ngā pou

To increase participation across play, active recreation and sport within Te Tai Tokerau a multi-faceted approach is required. This strategy identifies six key pillars that provide the framework to the recommended programme of work that will support the region to achieve the desired strategic outcomes identified in this strategy.



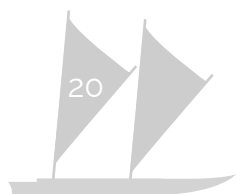
Pillars - Ngā pou

Partnerships - Mana Orite				
Objectives	Priorities:	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Strengthen partnerships with Māori.	Work with whānau, hapū, Marae and Iwi to partner and support play, active recreation and sport within their settings.	Sport Northland, Māori Organisations	NSC, Play Coalition	Ongoing
Play, active recreation and sport is used as a tool to deliver wider whānau and community benefits.	Use the Northland Intersectoral Forum to seek better alignment with other sectors, linking play, active recreation and sport to other community benefits.	Sport Northland	Northland Intersectoral Forum	Ongoing
Further develop partnerships within the play, active recreation and sport sector.	Establish a Kōkiri Strategy Working Group (KSWG) to oversee the implementation and regular reviews of this strategy. Ensure the group membership includes all key partners to ensure diverse perspectives are represented.	Sport Northland	Councils, NSC, iwi	Ongoing
	Provide an opportunity for active recreation organisations to come together to improve regional planning and advocacy for these activities. Consider including active recreation as a stream within the sports coalition alongside field sports, water and court sports.	Sport Northland	NSC	Short
	Consider expanding the Northland Sports Coalition as a forum to include active recreation groups. Work is already occurring to expand it to provide health and youth perspectives.	NSC	Active Recreation Groups	Medium
	Develop a Te Tai Tokerau Play Coalition, (or similar group), to progress regional improvements in the planning and provision of play opportunities.	Sport Northland	District Councils, providers of play	Short
	Develop more RSO partnerships to help improve access to and sharing of support services (e.g. Admin, Finance, IT, Marketing, Legal, HR.).	NSC	RSOs, Sport Northland	Medium

Partnerships - Mana Orite				
Objectives	Priorities:	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Partnerships with other sectors.	Work with mana whenua (hapū and iwi) and the Department of Conservation (DoC) to identify jointly beneficial partnerships delivering environmental and recreational outcomes.	Sport Northland Mana whenua	DoC, District Councils	Short
	Work closely with health agencies including Mahitahi Hauora, and Māori Health providers around the rohe, to identify jointly beneficial partnerships delivering health and recreational participation benefits to Te Tai Tokerau communities.	Sport Northland,	Health Agencies, District Councils	Short
	Strengthen the relationship with regional Ministry of Education representatives, state schools and state-integrated schools in the region to ensure early awareness of school facility development plans and advocate for community access partnerships.	Sport Northland	Sport NZ, MoE, state schools and state-integrated schools	Short
	Improving community access to state school and state-integrated school facilities that provide mutually beneficial outcomes, avoid duplication of effort and investment, contribute to providing a District wide network of spaces and places for increased participation. Where community access to existing state school and state-integrated school facilities or the joint development or upgrading of new facilities will meet a demonstrated need then the parties (MoE, Sport Northland and the relevant District Council) will work collaboratively to support the development of specific partnership agreements. This may include agreements to support operations and maintenance of facilities in return for community access.	MoE, Sport Northland, relevant District Council	State schools and state-integrated schools	Ongoing
	Develop a pilot programme of school-club partnerships with a focus on reducing drop-off from school to club sport. Ensure that young people are part of the planning and development process.	NSC	Sport Northland, RSOs	Medium
	Investigate partnership opportunities to improve sharing of existing transport resources in the region to support young people participating.	NSC	Sport Northland	Short
	Advocate to Waka Kotahi (NZTA) for improved pathways (for walking and cycling) to provide safer recreation opportunities.	Sport Northland, Councils	Walking & Cycling Strategy Group, Northland Transportation Alliance	Ongoing

People - Tāngata whaiora				
Objectives	Priorities	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Partnership approach.	Build sector understanding of a partnership approach; Tangata Tiriti and Tangata whenua and the roles of the two to ensure cohesiveness and positive outcomes for all,	KSWG, Mana whenua	Sector	Ongoing
Re-ignited volunteers.	Seek advice and a potential partnership with marae and runanga to understand a whānau approach to volunteering, as well as Volunteering Northland to develop a volunteer strategy and potentially a dedicated Volunteer Coordinator role within Sport Northland. This will help build capacity and capability in volunteers in all areas of play, active recreation and sport.	Sport Northland	NSC, Play Coalition, Regional Organisations	Short
	Work with appropriate partners to investigate establishment of a mentoring system for getting young people involved in volunteer enabler roles within play, active recreation and sport. Consider needs and opportunities for young people in alternative education as part of this.	Sport Northland	MSD, marae, hapū, iwi, state schools and state-integrated schools	Medium
Strong, supported Coaching Network.	Many National Sports Organisations (NSOs) are developing coaching strategies. Work with local groups to provide effective, local implementation.	RSOs	Clubs, hapū, whānau, state schools and state-integrated schools	Short
Support and develop local capability.	Work with local community level groups to develop their individual and organisational capability to deliver more effectively.	Sport Northland	Regional Organisations	Ongoing
	Increase provision of training and development opportunities for all whānau, including the paid and volunteer workforce across Te Tai Tokerau.	Sport Northland	NSC, Regional Organisations	Short
	Where opportunities arise, work with existing and new community organisations and mana whenua to consider more local community involvement in the maintenance and activations of parks. This type of approach could increase feelings of community ownership and use of public parks. Support with minimising compliance barriers for community organisations (e.g. health and safety paperwork, public liability insurance) may be required.	District Councils	DoC	Ongoing

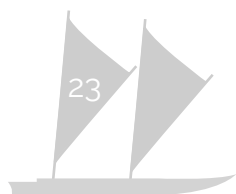
People - Tāngata whaiora				
Objectives	Priorities	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Strong, successful sector organisations.	Continue to implement a programme of governance training and development initiatives for active recreation and sport governance boards.	NSC	Sport Northland	Ongoing
	Work with iwi, hapū and marae to understand a Māori approach to governance and operations and develop a strategy for implementation.	Sport Northland	Iwi, hapū, marae	Medium
	Investigate options to provide increased operational support to sport and active recreation groups across the region. This could include consideration of shared staffing resource across multiple organisations.	NSC	Sport Northland	Short
	Ensure existing and planned multi-sport hubs receive targeted governance and operational management training and support. This may include advice around effective asset management planning.	Sport Northland	District Councils	Ongoing
	Investigate development of a joint governance board initiative with interested RSO organisations. The governance skills and requirements are very similar across different codes so one board may be able to oversee more than one code.	NSC	Sport Northland, RSOs	Long
Build capacity in key roles.	That resources are provided to support a full time Spaces and Places Lead role to increase focus on work in this area and support the implementation of District Spaces and Places plans.	Sport Northland	Sport NZ, District Councils, funders	Short
	That resources are provided to support a Play Systems Lead role to advocate for and support regional improvements in play. This will include supporting each district to develop integrated play strategies.	Sport Northland	Sport NZ	Short



Connectivity - Whanaungatanga				
Objectives	Priorities	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Promotion to encourage increased participation.	Develop a range of joint promotions across play, active recreation and sport participation opportunities. This should include promoting the health and wellbeing benefits of these participation opportunities.	NSC, Play Coalition, Regional Organisations	Sport Northland	Short
	Explore the development of a social media initiative to help encourage play, active recreation and sport participation through the use of local heroes and role-models to inspire our community to be active.	KSWG, Sport Northland	NSC, Play Coalition, Regional Organisations	Medium
	Continue the 'media promotion for sport' initiative whereby local play, active recreation and sport stories are provided to media outlets to increase the profile of local sport and activity.	NSC, RSOs	Media organisations	Ongoing
Better utilisation of technology.	Use online delivery mechanisms to increase local participation opportunities and decrease the negative impacts travel has on participation. This may include 'online events' that people can participate in at times that suit them.	Deliverers e.g. active recreation, event providers		Ongoing
	Investigate development of a centralised information hub promoting play, active recreation and sport throughout the region to make it easy for people to find opportunities to be active. This may involve building on an existing system to link more effectively to multiple organisations' websites and sources of information. Ideally this would also link to information on health and wellbeing programmes.	KSWG	Sport Northland, Councils, NSC, RSOs, iwi providers	Long

Connectivity - Whanaungatanga				
Objectives	Priorities	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Strong leadership.	Share and highlight local organisational good practise from a range of settings including iwi, marae, clubs and community to provide a variety of approaches to strong leadership in play, active recreation and sport	Sport Northland, NSC	Councils, RSO's, sector	Ongoing
	Share local and national good practice guidance for play and active recreation to support and enable spontaneous play, informal, recreational and social/casual participation. Use existing connections with Sport NZ and Recreation Aotearoa to help in this area.	Sport Northland	Play Coalition, Sport NZ, Recreation Aotearoa	Medium
	Work to increase the information flow and connection between regional groups (NSC and RSOs) and people involved in local, grass roots delivery.	NSC	Regional organisations, local groups	Short
	Investigate options to help drive increased diversity across the sector in governance, management and delivery roles.	KSWG	Sport Northland, NSC, Play Coalition	Medium
	Promote Te Whetu Rehua as a tool to develop understanding and approach to better fulfil Māori needs.	Sport Northland	Iwi, hapū	Ongoing

Programmes and Participation - Ngā whai wāhitanga				
Objectives	Priorities	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Regional implementation of the Balance is Better approach.	Work with RSOs to get them on board with the philosophy of Balance is Better. Then work to progressively deliver Balance is Better initiatives across the region.	Sport Northland, NSC	RSOs, clubs	Short
Acknowledging connection between tangata and Te Taiao.	Prioritise and support kaitiakitanga and similar kaupapa that focus on connection between tangata and Te Taiao. Link people to culture through the natural environment.	Sport Northland, hapū		Short
Culturally appropriate programmes.	Support whānau, hapū, iwi, marae to achieve their play, active recreation and sport outcomes and participation opportunities.	KSWG	Sector	Ongoing
	Work with whānau and hapū to develop programmes that focus on the development of cultural knowledge and practices to be implemented into physical activity settings beyond whānau and hapū.	KSWG	Sector	Short
	Te Whetu Rehua is the framework used to align with, build and measure cultural appropriateness	Sport Northland	Sector	Ongoing
	Investigate the potential of mātauranga Māori to enhance the experience for participants (Māori and non-Māori).	Sport Northland, hapū, whānau	Sector	Medium
Locally led, community driven programmes.	Continue to resource and enhance the Sport Northland Community Connector roles to empower whānau/hapū/hapori Māori and communities to co-decide and lead initiatives by local people for local people.	Sport Northland	Whānau, hapū, hapori Māori and communities.	Ongoing
	Support rangatahi to achieve their play, active recreation and sport outcomes and participation opportunities.	Sport Northland	Youth Organisations, RSOs, clubs, community groups.	Ongoing



Programmes and Participation - Ngā whai wāhitanga				
Objectives	Priorities	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Quality opportunities for all.	Investigate the establishment of a participation incentive programme with membership fees and/or equipment sponsorship for people who need financial support to participate. This should have a specific focus on young people but could also cater to a broad range of people who need financial support, such as those with disabilities or different ethnic groups.	NSC	Regional Investors Forum (RIF), Sport Northland	Short
	Investigate the establishment of a promising athlete (over 16 years) travel scholarship programme to support those who face financial challenges to travel at regional level for higher competition and training requirements. This would complement the Kauri Club grants which are focussed at national level.	Sport Northland	Northland Sports Development Panel (NSTDP), RIF	Medium
	Support new initiatives offering fully inclusive participation opportunities across play, active recreation and sport. Ensure that appropriate experts are used to inform the development and implementation of these initiatives including hāpu, iwi, whānau, Parafed Northland, Special Olympics, Halberg and others including older adult and youth advisory groups.	NSC, Play Coalition	RIF, Sport Northland, District Councils	Ongoing
	Increase the ways that introductory water safety programmes are provided across the region. This should include exploring opportunities for vessel-based water education programmes that can be delivered through a partnership of water-based sport and active recreation groups.	Sport Northland	NSC – water sports	Short
	Seek resourcing to increase the availability of learn to swim programmes across the region, including for adults.	Sport Northland, Deliverers	RIF, state schools and state-integrated schools	Medium
	Support tamariki to achieve their play, active recreation and sport outcomes and participation opportunities and recognise that time, place and permission is central to creating quality play opportunities and outcomes.	Sport Northland, Play Coalition	District Councils, Local groups	Short
	RSOs build their own cultural capability and partnerships to work with clubs/community/whānau groups to increase support for Māori participation.	RSOs	Local groups	Ongoing

Planning and Policy - Whakamahere me ngā kaupapa here				
Objectives	Priorities	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Reflect the importance of Te Tiriti o Waitangi	Ensure recognition of Te Tiriti o Waitangi articles and principles in all play, active recreation and sport policy that is reviewed and developed in future.	Councils, NSC, RSOs, Sport Northland		Ongoing
Policy criteria support the strategy vision and priorities	Develop policy that encourages investment into multi-use sport and active recreation hub sites (over single use facilities where practical).	Councils, Funders	Sport Northland	Medium
	RSOs investigate the relaxation of participation/membership and competition rules to increase flexibility of delivery and participation, particularly for small, rural communities.	NSC, RSOs		Short
Funding approaches support the strategy vision and priorities	Develop a Regional Investors Forum (RIF) to consider and agree principles to abide by when investing in play, active recreation and sport. This needs to consider ways to create greater certainty regarding operational funding.	Sport Northland, Funders		Short
	Work with Councils and Sport NZ to review how the rural travel fund is working in Te Tai Tokerau, seeking ways to ensure the guidelines and process best support desired outcomes for young people.	Sport Northland	Sport NZ, District Councils	Short
Increased diversity	Develop recruitment policy for sector roles in both operations and governance that reflects and encourages diversity.	Sport Northland, NSC, RSO's		Short
Supporting Te Taiao	Undertake a project to identify key, regional sport and recreation assets that are at risk to climate change e.g. sea level rise. This will be important to support future planning as a planned withdrawal from some sites may be required in future.	KSWG, NRC	Sport Northland, District Councils	Long
	Investigate how the sector could reduce carbon emissions going forward.	KSWG	Sport Northland, NSC, RSOs	Long

Planning and Policy - Whakamahere me ngā kaupapa here				
Objectives	Priorities	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Locally accessible facilities and opportunities	Facilitate the development of a Community and School Partnerships – Shared Use Policy. Such a policy will increase the use of school facilities for local community needs, supporting a hub and spoke approach to facility provision in the region.	Sport Northland	Sport NZ, MoE, District Councils, state schools and state-integrated schools	Medium
	Establish local levels of service for multi-use, introductory level play, active recreation and sport facilities to ensure appropriate provision, considering different community needs within a District.	District Councils, Sport Northland	community, whānau	Medium
	Ensure young people have access to a variety of play opportunities within their local environments (natural and built). Applying child friendly design and the philosophy that any space is a play space will increase opportunities for spontaneous play to occur. Take into consideration local mātauranga and whakapapa that can be incorporated into these play opportunities where appropriate.	District Councils iwi, hapū	Play Coalition	Medium
	Work with local communities, iwi, hapū and regional sport and active recreation groups to improve sport and activity specific facility planning, with a focus on partnerships, enhancing local facility access and maximising existing facilities through proactive maintenance plans.	Sport Northland, RSO's	Councils	Short
	Support each District Council in the region to develop an integrated play strategy, with cross-council initiatives to improve access and use of public space for play. Ensure shade and shelter provision are considered in all planning processes.	Sport Northland, Sport NZ	District Councils Iwi/hapū	Short
	Work with regional play, active recreation and sport organisations to update or develop accessibility policies to increase the focus on universal design, access and opportunities for those with disabilities.	Parafed Northland	Sport Northland	Medium
	Support Parafed Northland to develop an inventory of facilities that should be prioritised for investment to enhance physical accessibility through meeting universal access requirements.	KSWG, Parafed Northland	RIF, Sport Northland	Short
	Investigate opportunities to improve how the Whangarei bus service supports young peoples' access to sport and active recreation hub sites through advocating for changed routes and hours of service.	KSWG	NSC, WDC, Sport Northland	Medium

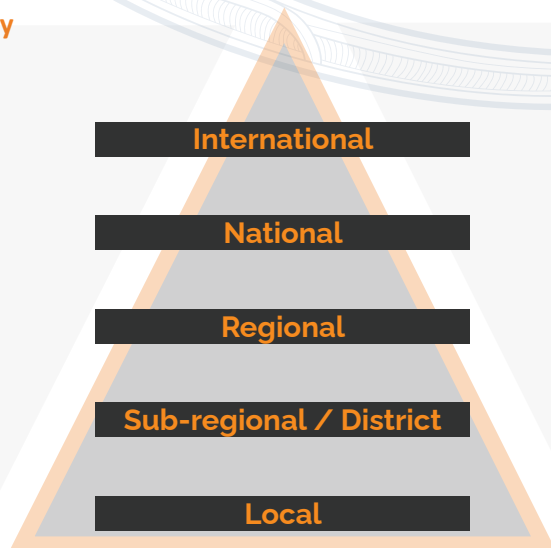
Spaces and Places - Ngā wāhi o Te Tai Tokerau

Spaces and places (facilities) work will use and consider the Sport NZ facility hierarchy and this strategies facility planning principles. This section provides direction on matters important to spaces and places across the region and facilities at the regional level of the facility hierarchy. District level plans provide direction at the sub-regional/district and local level of the facility hierarchy.

Facility Planning Principles

- Sustainability
- Partnerships and collaboration
- Meeting an identified need
- Multi-use
- Future proofed
- Inclusive, accessible and affordable
- Deliver wider community benefits
- Unique needs of Northland(ers)
- Optimised

Facility Hierarchy



Future work in this strategy area will also be informed by:

- Existing local and regional priority projects that are already underway such as Pohe island, Te Hiku and others.
- Whangarei Sport and Active Recreation Strategy
- Far North Spaces and Places Plan
- Kaipara Spaces and Places Plan

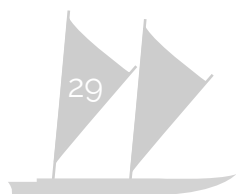
Overall, this strategy endorses and supports the implementation of the Whangarei Active Recreation and Sport Strategy which will be a key contributor to helping the regional strategy be successful.



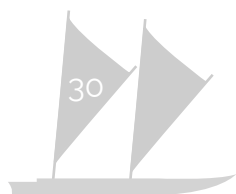
Spaces & Places - Ngā wāhi o Te Tai Tokerau				
Objectives	Priorities	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Culturally appropriate places and spaces.	Enhance the connection between people and place through working with mana whenua (taking into consideration local mātauranga and whakapapa that can be incorporated into these spaces and places where appropriate).	District Councils, iwi, hapū, landowners	DoC	Ongoing
	Ensure appropriate space and time is provided for taonga takāro (traditional Māori sports) such as ki-o-rahi and mahi a te rehia on parks and reserves.	District Councils	Sport Northland, NSC	Short
	Where marae are considered the hub of the community, engage with and investigate ways in which funding and support can be provided to develop the spaces in order to provide participation opportunities within play, active recreation and sport.	KSWG, marae	Sport Northland, District Councils, funders	Ongoing
	Advocate for taking a waka hourua approach to facility development across the region. Ensuring a Māori voice from the beginning to the end.	KSWG	Sport Northland, NSC, Councils, funders	Ongoing



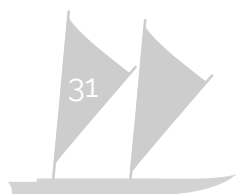
Spaces & Places - Ngā wāhi o Te Tai Tokerau				
Objectives	Priorities	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
A well planned network of spaces and places across the region.	Maximise existing facilities in the first instance, before building new. This will include the development of well-planned maintenance and renewal programmes.	Facility owners, KSWG	Councils, Sport Northland, Regional Investors Forum, iwi, state schools and state-integrated schools	Ongoing
	Investigate expanding the criteria of the Northland Regional Councils, (NRC), Regional Sports Facility Rate to also provide support to play and active recreation facility projects. The outcome of the investigation to inform the 2024 LTP process.	NRC	Sport Northland	Short
	Actively support the development of multi-use sport and active recreation hubs as part of a hub and spoke approach to the network of facility provision across the region. It is important to ensure that regional and district hub, (competition,) facilities are supported with appropriate 'spoke', (training/junior play), facilities at local level.	Sport Northland, NSC	Councils, RSOs	Ongoing
	Develop a regional aquatic facilities plan that considers provision of warmer water facilities, learn to swim (all ages), competitive swimming and aquatic sport needs across the region. This work will replace or align with the proposed Whangarei District Aquatic Facilities Plan. Focus should be given to maximising use and access to existing facilities through partnerships and upgrades/re-developments to ensure facilities are fit-for purpose for an aging population. Priority should be given to increasing local access rather than developing an additional 50m pool in the region.	KSWG	Sport Northland, Councils, NSC, RSOs, iwi, state schools and state-integrated schools	Short



Spaces & Places - Ngā wāhi o Te Tai Tokerau				
Objectives	Priorities	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
A well planned network of spaces and places across the region.	Develop a regional courts plan to ensure appropriate provision and use of indoor and outdoor courts throughout the region. This work will replace or align with the proposed Whangarei District Courts Plan and needs to consider the balance between outdoor and indoor court provision, local and casual access needs and playing surface quality. The plan will need to consider maximising partnerships with state schools and state-integrated schools and the use of multiuse courts, development of covers and lights to enhance usability of existing outdoor courts.	KSWG	Sport Northland, Councils, RSOs, iwi	Short
	Ensure existing key regional, national and international hierarchy facilities have asset management plans in place and are maintained in accordance with the plans.	KSWG	Asset owners	Ongoing
	Investigate opportunities to enhance existing facilities to increase use through investment in lighting and playing surface improvements.	Asset owners, Clubs	RIF, Councils, Sport Northland, NSC	Short
	Prioritise investment into fit-for-purpose support amenities at sport and active recreation hub sites to enhance the participant and spectator experience (toilets, change rooms, shade, shelter, car parking). This includes provision of drinking and wash down water to support water based sport, active recreation and play needs at key access points.	Asset owners	RIF, Councils, Sport Northland, NSC	Medium



Spaces & Places - Ngā wāhi o Te Tai Tokerau				
Objectives	Priorities	Facilitator(s)	Supporters	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Support the implementation of District Spaces & Places Plans.	Work with Councils to implement Facility Navigator roles across the region, to assist local communities to work with Councils on facility development and enhancement projects.	Sport Northland	Councils	Short
	Ensure regular reviews are undertaken of District Level Spaces & Places Plans/Strategies in line with LTP timeframes.	KSWG	Sport Northland, Councils	Ongoing
Locally accessible opportunities and facilities.	Ensure that all districts in the region provide and promote the use of sites with a diverse range of play opportunities, including imaginative play and nature play. Young people should have access to both built environments and natural spaces for play.	KSWG	District Councils, Sport Northland	Short
	Leverage investment opportunities to support local community organisations and volunteers to activate play spaces, increasing the time, place and permission for play to occur. This could include local play trails, play on the way initiatives and regional or district mobile play equipment provision.	Play Coalition	Sport Northland, RIF, District Councils	Short
	Investigate provision of more youth-friendly spaces that cater to informal and casual play, active recreation and sport alongside other desirable youth focussed facilities and services.	District Councils	Youth organisations	Medium

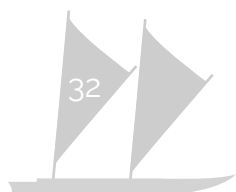


Regional Priority Facility Projects

This section presents the specific facility projects that are considered to be regionally significant, short term priorities in Te Tai Tokerau. The full strategy reference document, the 2020 Whangarei Active Recreation and Sport Strategy, 2021 Kaipara Spaces and Places Plan and 2021 Far North Spaces and Places Plan contain more detail on sub-regional/district and local level facility projects.

These recommendations assume the completion of the Pohe Island Rugby Development project that is currently nearing completion, and that no further funding priority or direction is required for that project.

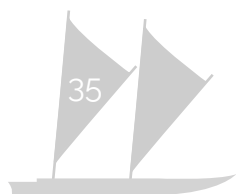
Facility/Activity	Recommendation:	Lead:	Support:	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Regional Facility Planning				
Collective prioritisation process	Use the Kōkiri Strategy Working Group (KSWG) along with other parties as required, to regularly review, prioritise and reprioritise facility specific projects. This will allow the prioritisation to remain current as individual projects progress through planning and construction phases at different rates.	KSWG	Sport Northland, Councils, NSC, RSOs, iwi	Ongoing
Courts and Aquatics	Complete regional planning for the provision of court space and aquatic facilities as a high priority to inform future work. (See the Spaces and Places pillar for more detail on these projects).	KSWG	Sport Northland, Councils, NSC, RSOs, iwi	Short



Facility/Activity	Recommendation:	Lead:	Support:	Timeframe: Short - 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Far North				
Te Hiku	Support the completion of this major multi-sport hub project that is due to commence construction. This will provide a key sub-regional/district asset. Through the final detailed design and development phase, or future project stages, ensure that all ages and abilities (including youth) are provided for in the aquatic area through the provision of hydrotherapy space, learn to swim and general water space (including play features). This may require future-proofing considerations in the design phase to allow for future expansion or change if required.	Te Hiku Sports Inc.	Sport Northland, FNDC, NRC, funders	Short
Bay of Islands Sports Hub	Support the staged development of this new, multi-sport hub site which will become an important sub-regional sport, active recreation and play asset. Completion of stage one is the initial priority and will result in the development of playing fields (with lighting), car parking and an amenity block to support football and cricket. It is important to ensure that casual and informal play opportunities are also considered at all stages of site planning. (See Strategy Reference Document and 2021 Far North Spaces and Places Plan regarding later stages).	FNDC	Sport Northland, RIF	Short
Sportsville Kaikohe	Support the completion of this important sub-regional level facility for the mid-North area. There is a strong need for provision of additional court space in the region. The indoor court component of this site development is an initial high priority and should be planned to cater for local and sub-regional needs in the first instance. Catering for wider regional needs should be informed by the outcomes of the regional courts plan. (See 2021 Far North Spaces and Places Plan regarding later stages).	Sportsville Kaikohe, FNDC	Sport Northland, RIF	Short
Kerikeri Gymnastics Club	Complete a needs assessment and feasibility study for the development of a fit-for-purpose gymnastics facility to replace the current Kerikeri Gymnastics facility which is not meeting needs. Note: Gymnastics NZ 2017 Gymsports National Facilities Strategy identifies that Northland requires a sub-regional hub gymsports facility in Kerikeri.	Kerikeri Gymnastics Club, funders	Sport Northland, FNDC	Short
Kerikeri Squash Club	Progress the project to relocate and rebuild the Kerikeri Squash Club. The lack of squash facilities in Kerikeri is impacting on facility access for squash across the wider region (not just Kerikeri based players). This facility should be focussed on regional level, including consideration of providing a purpose-built doubles court if sufficient demand exists. It is important to ensure the facility is future proofed to allow for ongoing population growth in the area.	Kerikeri Squash Club, Squash Northland, funders	Sport Northland, FNDC	Short

Facility/Activity	Recommendation:	Lead:	Support:	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Whangarei				
Bike – Pohe Island	Support the completion of this facility that is currently under construction. It will provide a key regional facility. Ensure that accessibility needs for disabled participants, tamariki and older adults are considered in the final development and programming of the facility.	Bike Northland, WDC	Sport Northland, RIF	Short
Marine Activities - Pohe Island	Implement the master plan for Pohe Island Marine Activities. (See 2020 Whangarei Active Recreation and Sport Strategy recommendation 23 for more detail). This is endorsed as a high priority as access and support facilities for water sports are a key consideration regionally.	WDC, water-based sports	Sport Northland, RIF	Short
Football - Northland Football Hub	Subject to the outcome of needs and feasibility assessments, progress the proposed 'Home of Football' development at Tikipunga Sports Park to cater for the regional needs for player, coach and referee development and provide the base for Northern Football Federation and Northland Football. Initial priority should be given to field and lighting upgrades and support amenities (clubroom, changing room and car park upgrades). See 2020 Whangarei Active Recreation and Sport Strategy recommendation 31 for more detail.	Northern Football, WDC	Sport Northland, RIF	Short
Rugby League	In line with the 2020 Whangarei Active Recreation and Sport Strategy (recommendation 46) implement the Otaika Sports Ground development plan, including the sale or lease of Jubilee Park with proceeds being used for the development of the 'home' of rugby league at Otaika Sports Ground. The facilities at Otaika Sports Ground are crucial for rugby league regionally. Further enhancement to these facilities is important. Otaika will also need to be supported by increased local level provision and access for rugby league across the wider region, particularly access to playing fields with quality lighting.	WDC, Northland Rugby League	Sport Northland, RIF	Short
Netball	The Whangarei Netball courts project, to install covers and lighting at Kensington courts, can/should proceed without the need for the regional courts plan to be completed, as these are key enhancements to maximise the use of existing assets to help the courts shortfall in the short term.	Whangarei Netball, Netball Northern	Sport Northland, RIF, WDC	Short
Ruakaka Recreation Centre (Indoor Sports Facility)	Support the new indoor court facility in Ruakaka as a way to increase indoor court capacity in the region. This facility will become the regional base for volleyball in Northland. This project will provide increased indoor court access for volleyball along with outdoor, sand-based 'beach' volleyball courts adjacent to the indoor facility to enable the provision and promotion of different formats of the game. This facility will also serve as an important base for both Basketball and Netball along with other indoor court codes.	Ruakaka Group, Volleyball Northland	Sport Northland, RSOs, RIF	Short

Facility/Activity	Recommendation:	Lead:	Support:	Timeframe: Short = 1-3 years Medium 4-6 Long 7 plus:
Kaipara				
Pioneer Park, Northern Wairoa Memorial Park and Sportsville Dargaville Precinct	Joint planning is required regarding future developments at these sites to ensure synergies and reduce any duplication across the wider precinct area. Undertake a joint planning project to consider opportunities to enhance the provision and standard of sports field lighting to allow for multiple codes (football, rugby league, rugby) to use for training and night games. Ensure any initiative by Sportsville Dargaville to provide a lit, multi-use turf area is considered as part of this planning.	KDC	Kauri Coast Recreation Society (KCRS), Northern Wairoa Rugby Sub Union	Short
Sportsville Dargaville	Undertake a detailed options and feasibility assessment for a multi-use turf installation in Dargaville. The replacement of the existing turf at Dargaville High School needs to be one of the options considered. Subject to the outcome of this assessment ensure that the proposed multi-use turf is primarily suitable for hockey, whilst also providing a resource to support other codes, particularly for training needs. The specifications need to cater for adult hockey (training) and junior hockey training and games. Ideally the turf will meet full-sized hockey specifications (1/2 turf at a minimum) to make it suitable for a wide range of other uses and be lit to the appropriate standards to support training for multiple codes.	KDC, KCRS	Sport Northland, Northland Hockey, RSOs	Short
Kauri Coast Community Pool	Maintain this as the key aquatic facility for the Kaipara District. Undertake an options assessment and feasibility study for upgrading the facility to meet the future needs of the community, focussing on catering for all ages and abilities. A priority consideration is options for extending the season and maximising use of the hydrotherapy / children's pool through covering these areas. Options for provision of some covered lane space could also be considered within this planning work. This should be done in conjunction with the Regional Aquatic Facility Plan as proposed in the regional strategy.	Sport Northland, KDC	RIF	Short



Acknowledgements

This strategy was developed in a spirit of partnership, with input from a wide range of people and organisations across Te Tai Tokerau and New Zealand. Everyone who contributed had a real interest in making a difference for the people of Te Tai Tokerau, with a genuine desire for improvement across the play, active recreation and sport sector.

Our sincere gratitude goes to all individuals, rangatahi, whānau, clubs, community groups, schools and regional sports organisations that gave up their valuable time to complete surveys and attend workshops, hui and answer our questions. Your local knowledge and insight as participants and providers was invaluable, giving real meaning to the strategy. Ngā mih nui

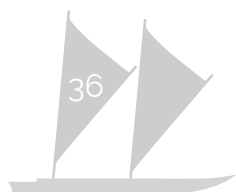
Thanks to the Project Steering Group members for their wise guidance:

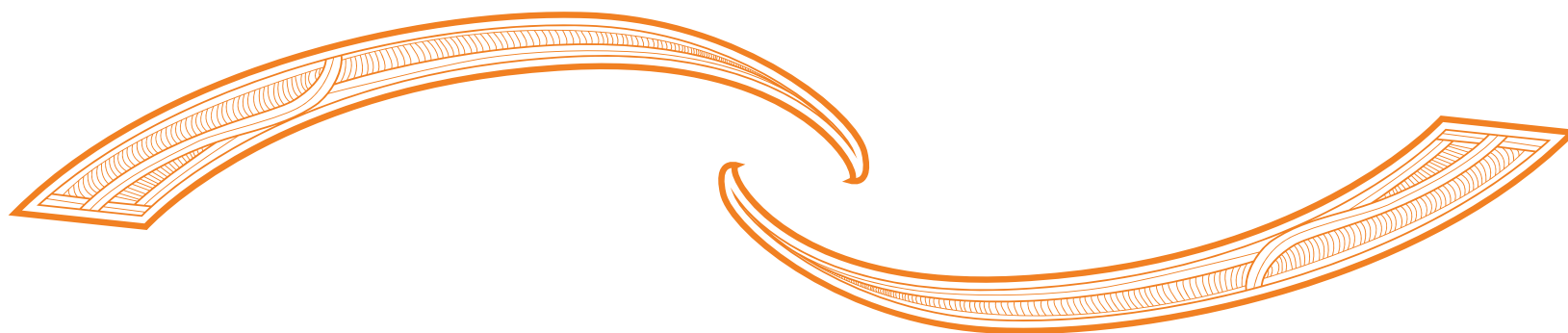
Brent Eastwood, Stu Middleton – Sport Northland
Phil Marsh, Josh Port - Northland Sports Coalition
Walter Wells – Te Kahu o Taonui
Deborah Harding – Māori advisory
Ana Mules – Far North District Council
Darlene Lang – Kaipara District Council
Sue Hodge – Whangarei District Council
Phil Heatley – Northland Regional Council
Jamie Delich – Sport New Zealand
Joey Yovich – Sport Northland (PSG Administrator)

Thanks to the Northland Sports Coalition (including executive members Sharon Carroll, Kura Heke, Trevor Reader).

Thanks to the whole team at Sport Northland, with special appreciation of Trina Henare, April Rawiri, Heather Deane, Roxanne Kelly, Lesley Wallace and Cheryl Smith.

Thanks also to Tui Marsh and Te Maapi Simich-Pene (Te Puni Kōkiri), Scott Mackenzie and Ellie Davidson (Sport NZ), Hamish Watson (KDC), Bernadete Aperahama (WDC), Emily Robinson, Nina Gobie (FNDC), Rana Poletti-Vette (Mahitahi Hauora), Ryan Donaldson (Whangarei Youth Space) and Carol Berghan and Tania Pere (Te Hiku Iwi Development Trust).





Mangawhai Community Plan – Transition to a New Way of Working

Meeting: Council Briefing
Date of meeting: 7 April 2021
Reporting officer: Jim Sephton, GM Infrastructure Services

Purpose/Ngā whāinga

To propose a new way of working which allows the Mangawhai Community Plan to be absorbed into business as usual

Context/Horopaki

The MCP was adopted by the Council in June 2017 following substantive public engagement. Projects identified in the MCP were included in the 2018 LTP.

The MCP was developed at a time when there was little in terms of a vision for Mangawhai and no co-ordinated plan of infrastructure investment.

The Community (through a Community Advisory Panel) created a vision and principals. This was developed by Council into a Community Plan.



We now have a Spatial Plan for Mangawhai which has absorbed the vision for the area. Projects and land use planning are contained within

- The 2021 Long Term Plan
 - Infrastructure Strategy
 - Activity Management Plans
- District Plan
 - Spatial Plan
 - Urban Design Landscape Framework (Under development)
 - Engineering Standards
- Management Plans
 - Network Operating Framework
 - Mangawhai Community Park Masterplan
 - Omnibus Reserve Management Plan

It is important that we continue to engage with the community in the development and delivery of projects within Mangawhai. A key success of the MCP process was creating a more inclusive environment. We now have new community groups including Mangawhai Matters and a range of engagement strands including

- A dedicated 'Mangawhai Community Plan' website
- Project specific engagement – e.g. Shared Path, Wood Street
- Media – News Papers, Facebook
- Media

The risk of having a Mangawhai Community Plan Document is that it quickly becomes dated and inconsistent with the actual position.

The proposition is that we retire the formal MCP Document but clarify how we work with the community to communicate what we are planning to do and what we have done to progress towards their vision. We will also need to community clearly how the MCP vision and principals have been absorbed within other documentation.

Discussion/Ngā kōrerorero

Have we delivered the MCP?

An audit of the current MCP has been undertaken and the majority of the plan is either incorporated elsewhere or projects are underway.

Section	Comment	Going Forward
Introduction		
Mangawhai Growing Well	The statistics around growth are dated. The 2021 LTP contains the latest figures and the Mangawhai Spatial Plan focuses in on this area	The website could include live information on numbers including Building Consents and Connections to the MCWWS
Vision	The vision has been incorporated within the Spatial Plan	
Key Moves <i>And Vision</i>		
Slow Street from school to beach <i>Maintaining and Improving Infrastructure</i>	This is now included in the Mangawhai Shared Path Business Case A Network Operating Framework for Mangawhai has been developed which locks in this principle. The Speed Management Review also gives effect to this.	The Mangawhai Shared Path will be a core project with a specific Engagement Plan
Blue Green Infrastructure <i>Protecting and enhancing our natural assets and open spaces</i>	Incorporated into - Spatial Plan - District Plan - Engineering Standards - Mangawhai Urban Landscape Design Framework	Further emphasis in the District Plan Review
Improve Connectivity <i>Assisting and supporting community involvement</i> <i>Partnering with communities to develop sports and recreational facilities</i>	Grants committee Projects in LTP include Browns Road Biketrack	Access to the coast – including Coastal Walkway - will be a core project with a specific Engagement Plan Community team will continue to undertake this role across the District
Facilitating Key Developments <i>Making it simpler to work with us</i>	Mangawhai Central is an example of working with them to create Development Agreements which lock in outcomes the community	Growing the Planning and Development team to be able to keep working like this

<i>Open, transparent and engaged with communities and business</i>		
Protecting Coastal character and history <i>Protecting and enhancing our natural assets and open spaces</i>		Regional Policy Statement map will be incorporated in the District Plan
Providing for a choice of housing and lifestyles - <i>Maintaining and improving infrastructure</i> - <i>Intent on lifting Kaipara's wellbeing</i> - <i>Protecting and enhancing our natural assets and open spaces</i>	Incorporated into - Spatial Plan - District Plan	

Transport

Projects identified in the MCP have been included in the LTP and have been developed through a business case approach to enable funding to be secured and construction commenced

- Mangawhai Shared Path and Intersections
- Alternative route into Mangawhai - Cove Road Connection
- Increase in footpath spend

In addition to what was requested in the LTP, the following have been undertaken

- Network Operating Framework
- Speed Management Review

The Activity Management Plan will reflect the proposed projects.

Water supply

A change in direction from the MCP is envisaged. An opportunity to create a water supply for Mangawhai has been identified through the Mangawhai Central who are considering the development of a reticulated system.

This change will need to be incorporated in the LTP and Activity Management Plan. This could come through the submission process or occur in the next LTP.

Stormwater Management

A business case has been developed for Wood Street and projects underway for Eveline Street. Quail Way was completed although it is noted that there is a level of service concern.

Engineering Standards are being updated and an Urban Landscape Design Framework being developed which will capture the aspirations.

The Activity Management Plan will reflect the proposed projects.

Wastewater Management

The investment plan for MCWWS has changed since the MCP was developed. The Infrastructure Strategy and AMP set out a roadmap to reuse. The Balancing Tank will be completed this year and alongside other improvements, the system has capacity to accommodate immediate growth and demand.

The LTP commits funding to growing capacity of the system

- The Business Case for increasing disposal field capacity through the Golf Course is being finalised and construction will commence in 2022,
- The provision of Membrane Filters will see the capacity of the plant increase to accommodate growth.

The Mangawhai CWWS Activity Management Plan sets out the approach and an Advisory Group (consisting of Te Uri o Hau, NRC, Ventia, WSP, Golf Club, Community Rep & Elected Member) established.

Open Space

There is an emphasis on creating walking and amenity facilities in the LTP. This includes the completion of Stage 1 of the Coastal Walkway and future stages as well as in land connections.

The Omnibus Reserve Management Plan will set out how existing open spaces will be protected and the Spatial Plan signals the creation of new recreational facilities. These will be developed as part of the work on the District Plan.

Mangawhai Community Park

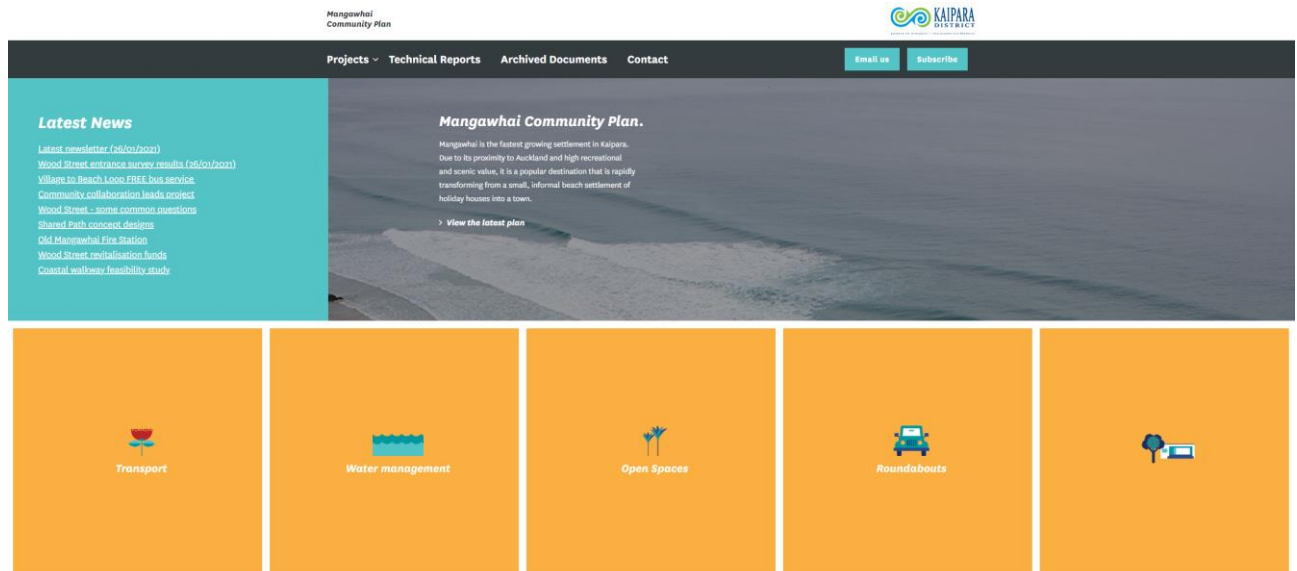
A Committee of Council governs the Park and there have been increased efforts to form a more a stronger relationship with the Friends Group. This will see a review of the MCP in year 2 of the LTP with a clearer vision of how the space in the park will be used.

How would we continue to communicate with the public on the plan?

There is a need for a place based summary of Council activities – not just in Mangawhai but in all our centres.

The **Infrastructure Strategy** will include a place based story. This sets out what is expected to be achieved in the next 3 to 10 years.

The dedicated **Managawhai website** would remain as a central location for sharing information <https://www.mangawhaicommunityplan.co.nz/>



There is a need for a place based summary of Council activities – not just in Mangawhai but in all our centres.

It is proposed that the orange boxes continue to provide access to the latest information on the core programmes and activities

- Mangawhai Shared Path and intersections
- Water management
- Waste water system
- Mangawhai Community Park
- Coastal Access

In addition to the core programmes/activities, the website will also be used to share information about how **Mangawhai is performing**. This could include data on population, consents, environmental quality, waste water connections, recycling levels etc.

Advisory Groups will be established for each of the key projects which will include representation from Iwi, technical and community. These are already in place for the Wastewater System, Mangawhai Community Park and Coastal Access

An MCP co-ordination team has been established which includes representatives of different parts of Council.

What are the risks or retiring or not the MCP?

The risks of keeping the MCP are that it becomes increasingly outdated and provides information which is not accurate or is misleading. The existing plans and figures are not correct and if it is not retired then a significant rewrite is required.

As long as there is good visibility of the Infrastructure Strategy and what that means for Mangawhai, the function of the MCP as a place to explain what is superceded.

The main lesson learnt from the last three years is that we need to remain engaged with our community at different levels

- Informing everyone about what we're doing, when and why
- Directly Iwi and affected parties in the development of the projects
- Keeping people informed of progress

The Advisory Panel involved in the development of the MCP have informed this discussion paper. They emphasised the importance of continuing to create an inclusive environment and also developing the vision in terms of cultural and biodiversity lenses.

Next steps/E whaiake nei

A communication will be developed explaining how the MCP has been absorbed into other areas and that whilst the physical document is being retired, the MCP lives on.

Engagement Plans for the core programmes/activities will be developed and executed

Website will be updated accordingly

Mangawhai Network Operating Framework

Meeting: Council Briefing
Date of meeting: 07 April 2021
Reporting officer: Andy Brown, Senior Asset Manager, Roading

Purpose | Ngā whāinga

To brief Council on the Mangawhai Network Operating Framework ahead of seeking Approval at the next Council Meeting.

Context | Horopaki

The transport system is complicated with many competing demands and users. We need a smarter proactive approach to managing our transport network - one that reflects agreed strategic goals and one that helps resolve competing demands for the limited space that is available.

While there will always be a need to maintain quality roads and occasionally enhance capacity, there is increasingly the need to better use existing transport resources and involve all types of network users to get the best from existing resources.

The network operating framework is an integrated process that helps us better manage and plan the use of the transport network and explicitly link transport to the adjacent land uses. It was adopted by NZTA and is used to form a platform for investment decisions.

Discussion | Ngā kōrerorero

What it is?

The network operating framework is simply an agreed process that enables collaborative discussions and that links strategic intent with operational and planning decisions. It does this using workshop-based steps and a common language for the stakeholders to use.

It is also a holistic vision of transport that focuses on:

- Moving people and goods, not vehicles, and seeing this by time of day
- Seeing transport as supporting broader community goals
- Balancing the competing demands for limited road space
- Thinking 'network' rather than sites or routes

What does it do and what does it deliver?

The framework is a collaborative process based on a common language. For the Network Operating Framework to work, partnerships are needed across all stakeholders and at all levels.

All road users will continue to have legitimate access to the entire transport network. However, by applying the framework, certain routes will be assigned priority to enable them to work better for designated modes at particular times of day. This attempts to provide an integrated approach to managing congestion, safety and competing demands for limited road space on these routes. It also supports future planning and development of transport and travel choices by establishing the future networks with modal priority attached that deliver strategic goals.

The process involves all relevant and major transport stakeholders agreeing on a collaborative view of strategic intent for a geographic area and how this is enabled and delivered by transport. This leads to a vision and language that embraces all modes across the entire network.

At all stages, stakeholders agree what is expected of transport, how and to whom priority is assigned and what the effects are of interventions on the network. The process is also an engagement and agreement framework, assisting clear and consistent informed decision making.

The framework has a tool that visually demonstrates overarching effect and any detailed trade-offs being made in order to deliver strategic goals that result from a given transport project or land use development. It informs decision making and helps establish agreements, partnerships and understanding of the network-wide effects of interventions as the basis for wider consultation and network or project development.

The framework is a key planning and operational tool to inform decisions and to link those decisions to both strategic objectives and operational interventions. It also enables users to make informed travel decisions in relation to how they see the network developing and being operated.

What is the benefit of having a NOF?

The NOF plays a pivotal role in the Waka Kotahi investment process. Setting out the foundation for future planning in Mangawhai and allowing the right steps to be undertaken when introducing a project or programme of works to be considered for subsidised investment. By adding confidence to the investment story through a well thought out transport system, right sized business cases and the appropriate consultation and considerations for investment are given direction.

What does it mean for Mangawhai

The NOF reinforces the desirable transport system that was envisaged in the Managawhai Community Plan – slow streets, high priorities for walking and cycling.

It supports key investment decisions including

- a connection between Molesworth Drive and Cove Road
- a connection between Mangawhai Heads Road and Boat Ramp

Next steps | E whaiake nei

The Network Operating Framework is presented to the 28th April 2021 Council meeting and recommended for adoption.

Attachments | Ngā tapiritanga

	Title
A	Mangawhai Network Operating Framework



Kaipara District Council

Mangawhai Network Operating Framework (NOF)

KAIPARA DISTRICT COUNCIL

NORTHLAND TRANSPORTATION ALLIANCE

COMMUTE TRANSPORTATION CONSULTANTS

12 MARCH 2021

V1.0 FINAL

CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION.....	4
1.1. Network Operating Framework Purpose and Objectives	4
1.2. Stakeholder Involvement	5
1.3. Purpose of this report	5
2. NETWORK OPERATING FRAMEWORK DEVELOPMENT PROCESS.....	6
2.1. Process Overview.....	6
2.2. Phase 1 Development	7
Strategic Objectives and Principles	7
Network Links and Places.....	7
Modal Priorities.....	7
3. NETWORK CONTEXT	8
3.1. Geographic area.....	8
4. STRATEGIC POLICY AND PLANNING	10
4.1. Whangarei to Auckland Programme Business Case (PBC).....	10
4.2. Mangawhai Spatial Plan (2020)	12
Mangawhai Community Plan (2018).....	13
4.3. Mangawhai Transport Study (2018)	13
4.4. Mangawhai Shared Path Connections Options Report (2018).....	14
4.5. Mangawhai and Mangawhai Heads Infrastructure Plan Transportation (2016)	14
4.6. Kaipara Walking and Cycling Strategy (2017)	15
4.7. Infrastructure Strategy 2015 – 2045 KDC (2017).....	15
4.8. Mangawhai & Mangawhai Heads – Review of Speed Limit Provisions (2017)..	15
5. LAND USE AND GROWTH.....	16
5.1. Land use planning and development in Mangawhai.....	16
5.2. Operative District Plan	16
5.3. Mangawhai Structure Plan.....	17
5.4. Mangawhai Spatial Plan (2020)	19
5.5. Key Land Use Sensitivities.....	21
6. NETWORK OPERATING FRAMEWORK DEVELOPMENT	22
6.1. Operating Framework Horizon	22
7. STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES AND PRINCIPLES	23
7.1. Pedestrians.....	25
Strategic Objective:	25
Principles:.....	25
7.2. Cyclists.....	26
Strategic Objective:	26
Principles:.....	26

7.3. Public Transport.....	27
Strategic Objective:	27
Principles:.....	27
7.4. Freight	28
Strategic Objective:	28
Principles:.....	28
7.5. General Traffic.....	29
Strategic Objective:	29
Principles:.....	29
8. MULTI-MODAL NETWORK PRIORITISATION	30
9. MODAL PRIORITY CONFLICTS AND CRITICAL NETWORK CAPABILITIES.....	36
9.1. Wood Street.....	38
9.2. Mangawhai Boat Ramp	38
9.3. Molesworth Drive.....	38
9.4. Mangawhai Village (Molesworth Drive / Moir Street / Insley Street area).....	39
9.5. Kaiwaka Mangawhai Road and Cove Road.....	39
9.6. Tomarata Bridge/Carnes Road	40
9.7. Summary.....	40
10. APPLICATION OF NETWORK OPERATING FRAMEWORK.....	42
10.1. Business Case Development.....	42
10.2. Network Operating Framework lifecycle.....	42
10.3. Network Operating Plans	42
11. APPENDIX A	43
12. APPENDIX B.....	45

1. INTRODUCTION

Kaipara District Council (KDC) has commissioned Commute Transportation Consultants to develop a Network Operating Framework (NOF) for Mangawhai area (noting that Mangawhai encompasses the Village, Central and Mangawhai Heads). The NOF seeks to develop a consistent set of transport priorities for Mangawhai which integrates with land use decisions including the Spatial Plan process. This NOF will be used to prioritise investment in the Mangawhai area, supporting wider outcomes for the Kaipara District.

1.1. Network Operating Framework Purpose and Objectives

A Network Operating Framework (NOF) assists in guiding the network planning process to manage the transport system. The framework provides an integrated approach that recognises all road users and the inter-relationship with land use, transport networks, and transport infrastructure and services.

The NOF considers all road users and their various needs on the transport network. The framework is developed through a strategic and collaborative process, with active involvement from key stakeholders and road user groups and aims to provide a consistent set of transport priorities to ensure future investment schemes focus on the needs and demands of its users.

The NOF also provides strategic guidance to support the development of Network Operating Plans and various transport investment decisions / schemes and enables road agencies to respond effectively to interactions between road users, land use and the transport network and. The NOF will:

- Undertake a collaborative process to determine planning outcomes
- Take a holistic view of the transport network
- Be transparent in decision-making
- Support decisions as part of a wider decision-making framework
- Complement Business Case development and land use planning
- Assist with understanding effective network interventions
- Form an iterative process that supports an integrated transport network

The NOF aims to address the network needs of pedestrians, cyclists, public transport users, freight, and general traffic. The framework will provide guidance on network operations planning, specifically relating to the inter-relationship of these road user groups with land use.

This NOF is a 'live' framework which is expected to progressively evolve to cater for the changing strategic environment, development and implementation of new transport initiatives, further analysis and new data becoming available and new technologies.

1.2. Stakeholder Involvement

The NOF has been developed through a collaborative process with active involvement from representatives from key stakeholder groups. Two workshops were held:

- Workshop 1: Strategic Setting and Key Links and Places (19 May 2020)
- Workshop 2: Modal Priorities (19 June 2020)

Key stakeholder groups involved are as follows:

- Kaipara District Council
- Waka Kotahi NZ Transport Agency
- Northland Transportation Alliance (NTA)
- Northland Regional Council
- Whangarei District Council
- Campbell Brown Planning
- National Road Carriers

1.3. Purpose of this report

This report seeks to outline the development process of the NOF and document the discussions. This report has been prepared by Commute Transportation Consultants for Kaipara District Council.

2. NETWORK OPERATING FRAMEWORK DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

The Austroads Network Operations Planning Framework and Part 4: Network Management guidelines were used to guide the NOF development process. This included two workshop sessions with key stakeholders and road user groups to develop the strategic objectives and network principles, and the networks and places roles of each transport corridor. A collaborative exercise was undertaken to determine mode priorities for each of the five modes on maps of the Mangawhai area.

2.1. Process Overview

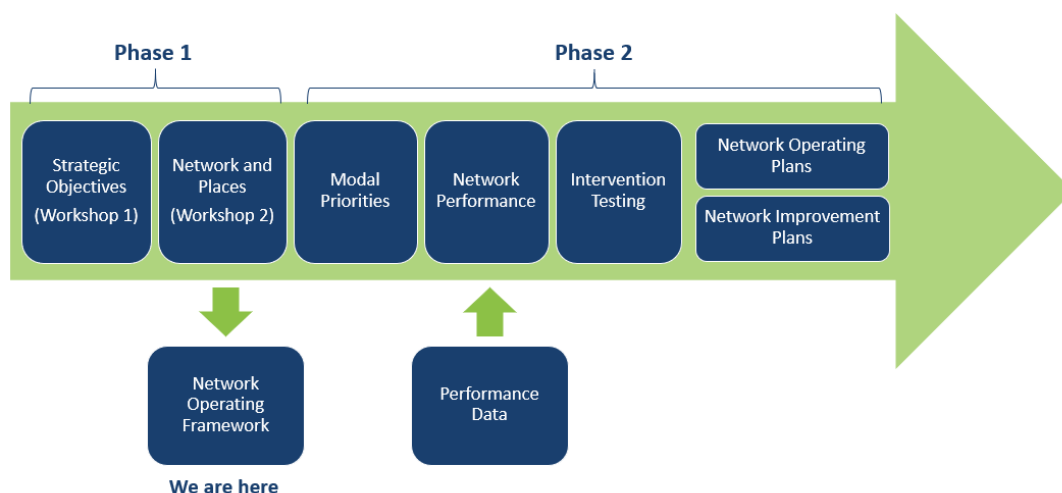
A NOF generally has two phases. The first phase involves the development of the strategic setting, where strategic objectives and network prioritisation maps are produced for each mode. Phase 1 aims to provide a strong foundation and supports transport network planning processes including Strategic and Programme Business Cases / Land use Planning.

Phase 2 undertakes both a quantitative and qualitative assessment of the transport network and network interventions to further understand network prioritisation and current network performance in detail. This phase typically requires multi-modal performance and volume data.

This document outlines Phase 1 of the Network Operating Framework, including consideration of modal priorities.

Figure 1 below summarises the NOF development process. The NOF development has now been completed and is finalised for adoption by council. The next stages involve developing the network operating plans and the network improvement plans which will include the outcomes from the developed spatial plans and Council's infrastructure strategy. Business cases will be developed that Waka Kotahi can consider for local road improvement subsidised investments.

Figure 1: Network Operating Framework process



2.2. Phase 1 Development

Strategic Objectives and Principles

Strategic Objectives and Principles are the high-level goals or aspirations for the operation of each mode in the future network. These set the strategic context and guide the development of the Strategic Network and the overall NOF. Principles for the Primary and Secondary routes are typically developed to identify priority routes for each mode, and also identify any supplementary routes for each mode.

The five modes considered are as follows:

- Pedestrians – Walking, motorised scooters, mobility impaired users
- Cyclists – Commuter and recreational
- Public Transport – Publicly available transport including tourist coaches and school buses
- Freight Traffic – Heavy commercial vehicles
- General Traffic – Private vehicles, taxis and small commercial vehicles i.e. couriers

An example of a Strategic Objective and Principle for Cycling is provided below:

Strategic Objective: A prioritised network that supports cycling trips as the preferred mode of travel for trips within the wider Mangawhai area.

Primary Routes: Provide direct, safe and prioritised routes between the three village centres.

Secondary Routes: Provide linkages to primary routes from residential and community areas and community recreational facilities.

The Strategic Objectives and Principles are developed and refined through a collaborative process with key stakeholders and road user groups, and further tested through the development of the NOF.

Network Links and Places

Identifying key origins and destinations is an important part of the NOF process as this determines the key movements that should be supported by transport infrastructure and services. The Principles developed are used to determine mode-based priority routes that connect these key land uses identified.

The key land uses, and mode-based priority routes were reviewed in Workshop 1 and modified and agreed upon during Workshop 2.

Modal Priorities

The modal priority maps developed as part of Workshop 2 identified areas where several modes may be competing for priority and thus considers the level of priority for each mode relative to other modes on the identified route. These maps provide a framework for making trade-off decisions and identifying opportunities to minimise or reduce modal conflicts. Key modal conflicts and modal priority networks were identified through discussions and an interactive stakeholder workshop session held on 19th June 2020.

3. NETWORK CONTEXT

The Mangawhai area has a current total population of approximately 5,000 permanent residents. The area has experienced significant growth in the past few years, with a population increase of 60% between 2013 and 2018. This is double the rate of growth experienced between 2006 and 2013 (36.2%).

Under a medium growth projection, the population is expected to grow up to 15,000 people by 2043. These growth projections are based on permanent residents. The Mangawhai community also has a significant number of part time residents, which in the summer months swells the population by 200%, placing further stress on an already constrained network.

There are several development proposals including Mangawhai Central which will provide a new centre, industrial land and a residential development. These are either under construction at the time of preparing this NOF or due to commence within the next few years, which will further increase pressure on existing infrastructure in Mangawhai.

The existing transport network in Mangawhai is predominately rural with limited facilities for pedestrians or cyclists, this leaves very little opportunity for people to choose modes that are not car based.

There is an urgent need to understand the network that will be needed to support this projected growth, and prioritise the key interventions identified to create a transport system that encourages active mode choices and integrates transport with land use projections.

3.1. Geographic area

The Mangawhai area is made up of three smaller geographical areas: Mangawhai Rural, Mangawhai Heads and Mangawhai Village. For this NOF, we also considered the wider strategic transport connections to the Mangawhai area from the State Highway and Whangarei District.

Mangawhai has a key interrelationship with the State Highway network as a key piece of the State Highway Detour and Resilience requirements as identified in the Whangarei to Auckland State Highway Programme Business Case (PBC), with the State Highway 1 corridor relying on Mangawhai for alternative north and south bound travel options and therefore having a critical influence on the network in Mangawhai.

The Twin Coast Discovery Highway, including Tomarata Road, Kaiwaka Mangawhai Road, Molesworth Drive and Cove Roads all currently serve as the main detour and diversion routes in the case of crashes on the highway network and planned road closures for maintenance on the Brynderwyn Hill. In emergency and planned maintenance situations, traffic can also be rerouted south of Wellsford via Wayby Valley Road, Waiteitei Road and then on to the Twin Coast Discovery Highway through Mangawhai, Langs Beach and Waipu to connect with SH1 further north at Ruakaka.

Utilising these routes, Wellsford is approximately 24mins from Mangawhai, and 29 minutes via State Highway 1. In terms of connectivity to the north, connections to Whangarei can be made via Kaiwaka-Mangawhai Road and State Highway1 in approximately an hour.

As shown the role of the state highway plays a key role in influencing the trips made through Mangawhai, and to and from Mangawhai to other urban centres, and as such cause's modal conflicts and significant congestion in and around the towns.

Figure 2 below shows the extent of the Mangawhai area. The key links into Mangawhai include Mangawhai Road, Cove Road and Kaiwaka-Mangawhai Road.

Figure 2: Mangawhai area



4. STRATEGIC POLICY AND PLANNING

The following sections outline key strategy and planning documents that exist for the Mangawhai area over the past five years. Further detail on planning and policy at a national, regional and local level are summarised in [Appendix A](#).

4.1. Whangarei to Auckland Programme Business Case (PBC)

The Whangarei to Auckland PBC was published in August 2017. This PBC considered a corridor strategy to improve transport access within a multi modal environment.

The PBC identified a long-term goal of providing a divided carriageway on a good alignment between Auckland and Whangarei. To implement this, four key infrastructure projects have been identified

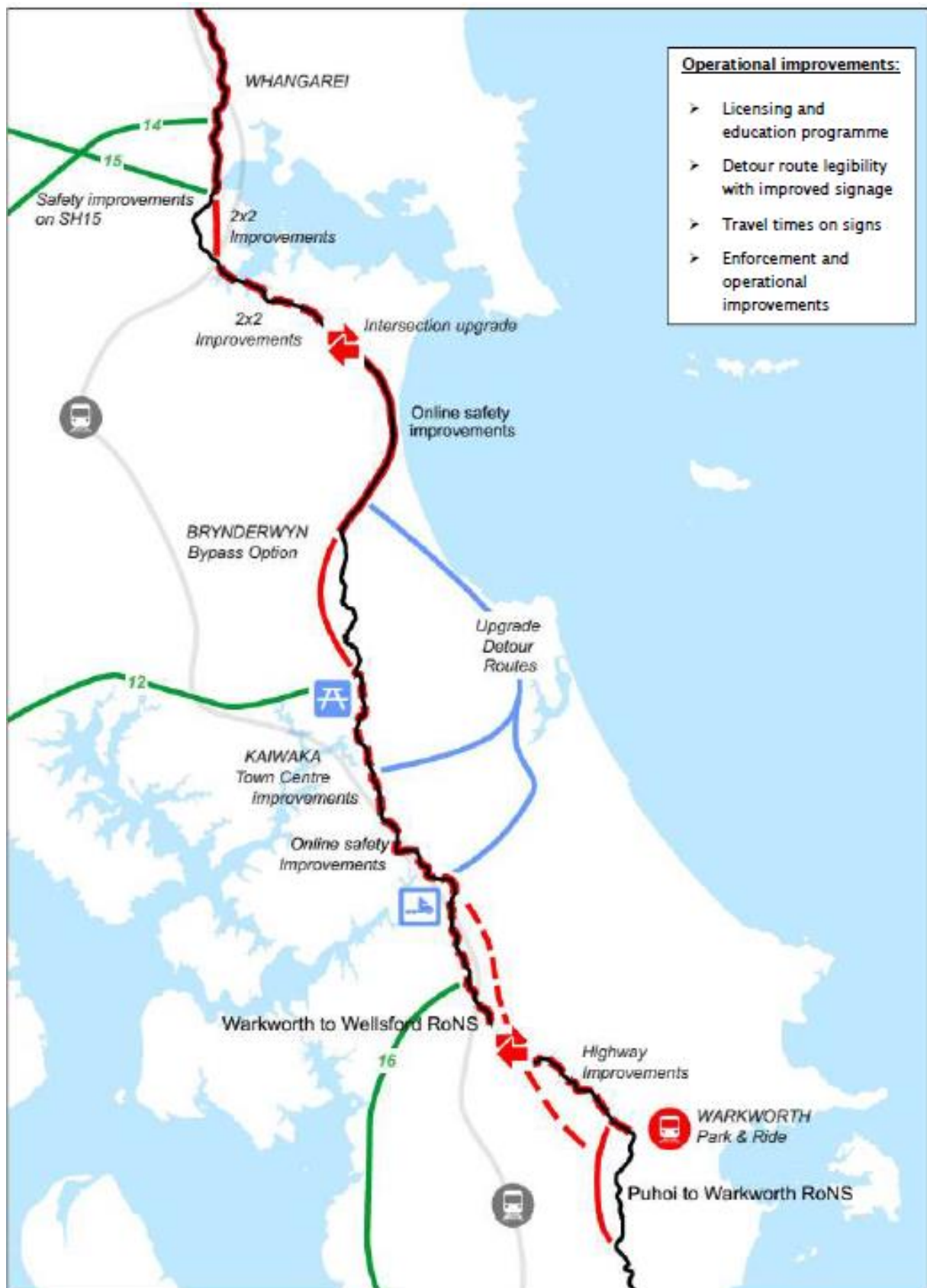
- A dual carriageway between Whangarei (SH14) and Port Marsden Highway
- A Brynderwyn Hill bypass
- Warkworth to Wellsford (currently working through designations)
- Puhoi to Warkworth (current under construction)

Safety improvements on the remaining sections will be progressed as well as reducing the impact of traffic on townships and upgrading existing detour routes.

The recommended programme is shown below in Figure 3

As can be seen these identified detour routes (shown in blue), include Kaiwaka-Mangawhai Road, Molesworth Drive and Mangawhai Heads Road. These roads are all within the study area of this NOF.

Figure 3: Whangarei to Auckland PBC Recommended Programme



4.2. Mangawhai Spatial Plan (2020)

A Spatial Plan for Mangawhai is being developed which aims to guide the town's growth and development over the next 20 to 25 years. Planners anticipate Mangawhai's current population of about 5,000 will reach more than 15,000 by 2043.

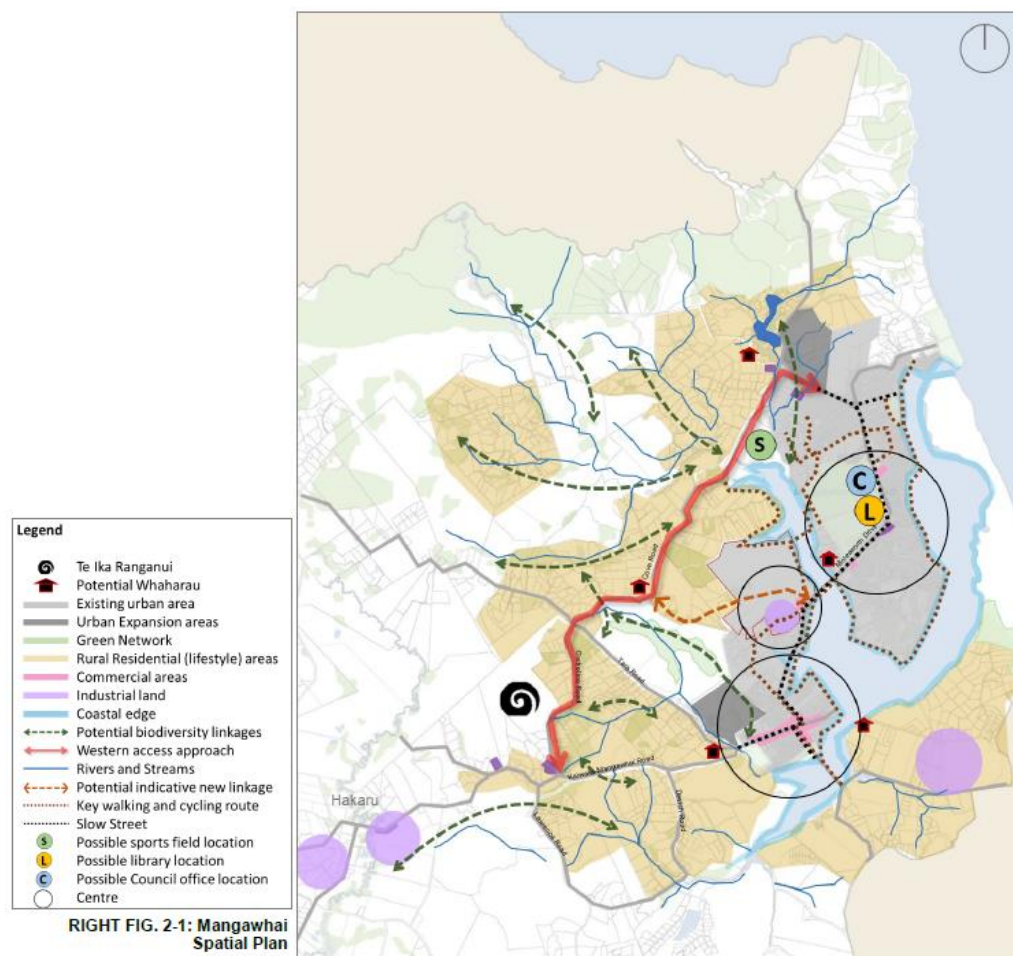
To successfully meet the demands of a growing population, planners have identified key challenges the town will have to overcome.

These included:

- Lack of public transport
- Lack of cycling and pedestrian networks
- Limited community facilities
- Lack of business-zoned land
- Limited information on stormwater catchments
- Traffic congestion
- Low visibility of Maori and early settlers' history and culture

The following sets out the proposed plan.

Figure 4: Proposed Spatial Plan for Mangawhai area



Mangawhai Community Plan (2018)

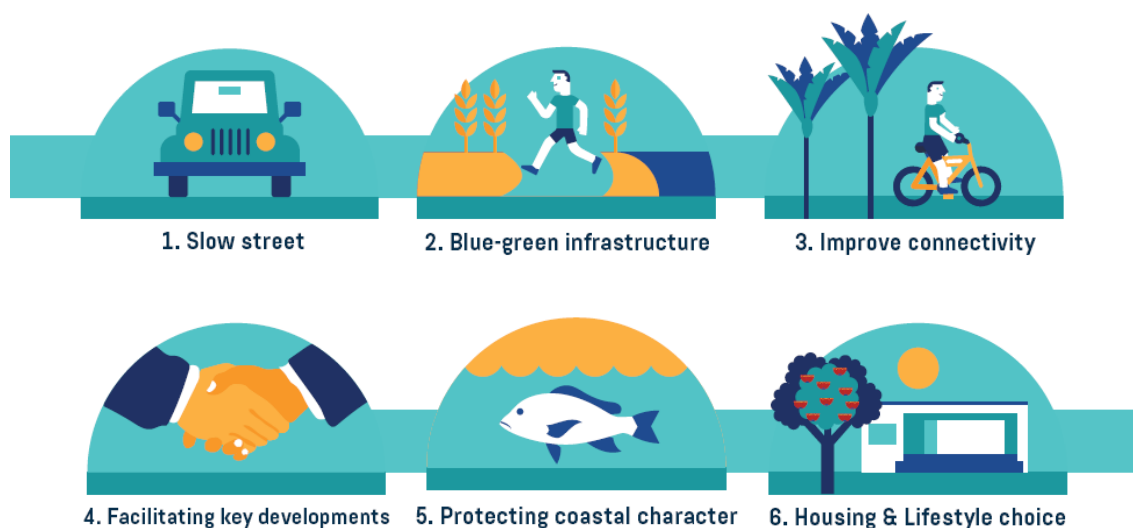
The Mangawhai Community Plan (MCP) is a document to provide guidance to Kaipara District Council in the management of growth in Mangawhai.

This plan is confined to the roles of Council, these being planning and regulation, and investment in services and infrastructure for transport, water supply, stormwater, wastewater, and parks and reserves. It does not include services provided by central government or the private sector.

In mid-2016, Council set up a panel of community representatives to make recommendations for this plan. The recommendations were received by Council in July 2017 and this draft Community Plan is consistent with these recommendations.

Six key Moves were identified as outlined in the figure below. The draft MCP also integrates the Council's vision through each key move.

Figure 5: Six key moves



4.3. Mangawhai Transport Study (2018)

The WSP Opus Mangawhai Transport Study is predominately a traditional traffic study considering predicted traffic growth and junction capacity. It considers three problem statements.

1. Parts of the urban road network lack capacity to support the current or projected volume of traffic on the arterial road network over the next 10 years (40% of the problem).
2. The existing road network provides limited alternative routes in the event of disruptions on the State Highway network, increasing pressure on arterial network capacity during closure periods (20%).
3. Provisions on the arterial road network for pedestrians and cyclists are poor, resulting in a lack of connected and cohesive links for these modes between urban centres (40%).

The road network was assessed in a 2017 base year, a 2027 future year condition for two growth scenarios – medium (3%) and high (7%). Analysis indicated that mid-block sections of road had sufficient capacity under future growth scenarios, but some junctions would experience congestion which would need improvements to provide acceptable levels of service.

It recommends improvements are carried out to the following intersections with the indicated time periods.

- Insley Street / Moir Street intersection is upgraded within the next 4 years.
- Moir Street intersection with Molesworth Drive upgrade within the next 6 years,
- Old Waipu Road intersection with Molesworth Drive upgrade within the next 9 years or earlier in conjunction with Mangawhai Central development and/or connection with Old Waipu Road North; and
- Thelma intersection with Estuary and Molesworth Drive upgrade within the next 10 years (or in conjunction with a Thelma Road link connection).

The Study develops an infrastructure implementation plan for the above intersection improvements along with a programme to upgrade and implement shared paths mainly along Molesworth Drive linking Mangawhai Village with Mangawhai Heads.

The Study does not recommend a bypass to resolve the State Highway lack of resilience issues within a 10-year programme but indicates that an improved diversion route via Cove Road would alleviate the need to travel through Mangawhai and Mangawhai Heads.

4.4. Mangawhai Shared Path Connections Options Report (2018)

Kaipara District Council commissioned WSP to undertake The Mangawhai Shared Path Connections Options Report. The report is a detailed evaluation of options for the shared path routes identified in the MCP for the greater Mangawhai area, connecting Mangawhai Village to Mangawhai Heads Town Centre and Mangawhai Heads Beach, (School to Beach). The report delivers quite specific detail around the various options considered for each section of the complete shared path and provides specific recommendations for the final option for each stage and for design and implementation of these options.

4.5. Mangawhai and Mangawhai Heads Infrastructure Plan Transportation (2016)

Kaipara District Council commissioned MWH to undertake the Transportation section of the Mangawhai Town Infrastructure Plan.

Issues considered included arterial road function, road safety including traffic speeds, Wood Street function as a village centre, Mangawhai Village including junction capacity and alternate junction design, pedestrian facilities (lack of), cycling facilities, shared paths and parking facilities. The infrastructure plan considered deficiencies to these transport facilities and recommended improvements such as;

- A shared path from Mangawhai to Mangawhai Heads Beach via Wood Street
- Transition speed limits

- Safety improvements to roadsides
- Footpath improvements
- Intersection improvements at Molesworth Drive / Wood Street potentially a roundabout
- Roundabouts at Estuary Estate, Moir Point Road and Thelma Road with Molesworth Drive
- Feasibility drawings of different junction arrangements at Insley / Moir and Moir / Molesworth
- Parking improvements to Wood Street - Fagan Place car park and Mangawhai Heads Beach car park.

4.6. Kaipara Walking and Cycling Strategy (2017)

Kaipara Walking and Cycling Strategy is a district wide strategy which considers national, regional and local cycling and walking frameworks that walking and cycling initiatives in Kaipara District seek to align with.

The guidance is generally high level, advising on priorities for the district to join in with larger walking and cycling networks. However, the Implementation Plan proposes several cycleways and footpath improvements in Mangawhai.

4.7. Infrastructure Strategy 2015 – 2045 KDC (2017)

The Infrastructure Strategy considers roads, water, wastewater, stormwater, and flood protection at a district wide level.

Many of the issues in Mangawhai, are related to a growing population and increasing levels of congestion are not issues for the rest of Kaipara, and consequently the strategy provides limited advice on the specific transport issues in Mangawhai.

4.8. Mangawhai & Mangawhai Heads – Review of Speed Limit Provisions (2017)

This is a technical report which considers speed limits in accordance with NZTA's "Guidelines for setting speed limits and procedures for calculating speed limits". It recommends changes to speed limits (in many cases the recommended speed limit is lower than the current speed) and suggests that there may be the ability to reduce the speed limits further if road infrastructure was altered to encourage such lower speeds.

5. LAND USE AND GROWTH

The NOF aims to integrate land use with the transport network. This is a key part to the NOF and therefore land use planning and growth was emphasized in stakeholder discussions during the workshops.

Stakeholder discussions included existing and future land use and key activity areas in the Mangawhai area, which informed the strategic networking mapping process. Key land use types identified include:

- Schools and community facilities
- Tourism, recreation and leisure
- Retail and commercial areas
- Residential
- Industrial

5.1. Land use planning and development in Mangawhai

Kaipara District Council (KDC) are currently in the process of updating the District Plan. The Mangawhai Spatial Plan (2020) provides direction and will inform the review and preparation of the Operative District Plan and KDC Long Term Plan.

5.2. Operative District Plan

The Operative District Plan is the current District Plan for zoning and land use. The District Plan outlines several objectives under its Land Use and Development Strategy¹, which are as follows:

1. To encourage and establish an effective and sustainable supply of residential and business land to meet the current and future demands of the Kaipara District and enable the community to provide for their social and economic well-being.
2. To minimise the ad hoc expansion of residential and business activities in the rural heartland, where such activities have the potential to give rise to adverse environmental effects and issues of reverse sensitivity.
3. To restrict growth of residential and business activities in inappropriate locations where such activities have the potential to give rise to adverse effects on sensitive receiving environments.
4. To ensure emissions, discharges and effects of residential and business development are managed so that adverse effects on the surrounding environment, including existing settlement areas, are comprehensively addressed.
5. To provide appropriate infrastructure and servicing in advance of or alongside future residential and business development.
6. To provide clear direction on the information, planning and management requirements considered to be required to enable future changes in land use within the identified development areas.
7. To minimise potential conflicts between natural and physical limitations, including hazards and future residential and business areas

¹ Operative Kaipara District Plan – Chapter 3: Land Use and Development Strategy

8. To provide adequate areas to accommodate future residential development which maximise the use of existing infrastructure.

5.3. Mangawhai Structure Plan

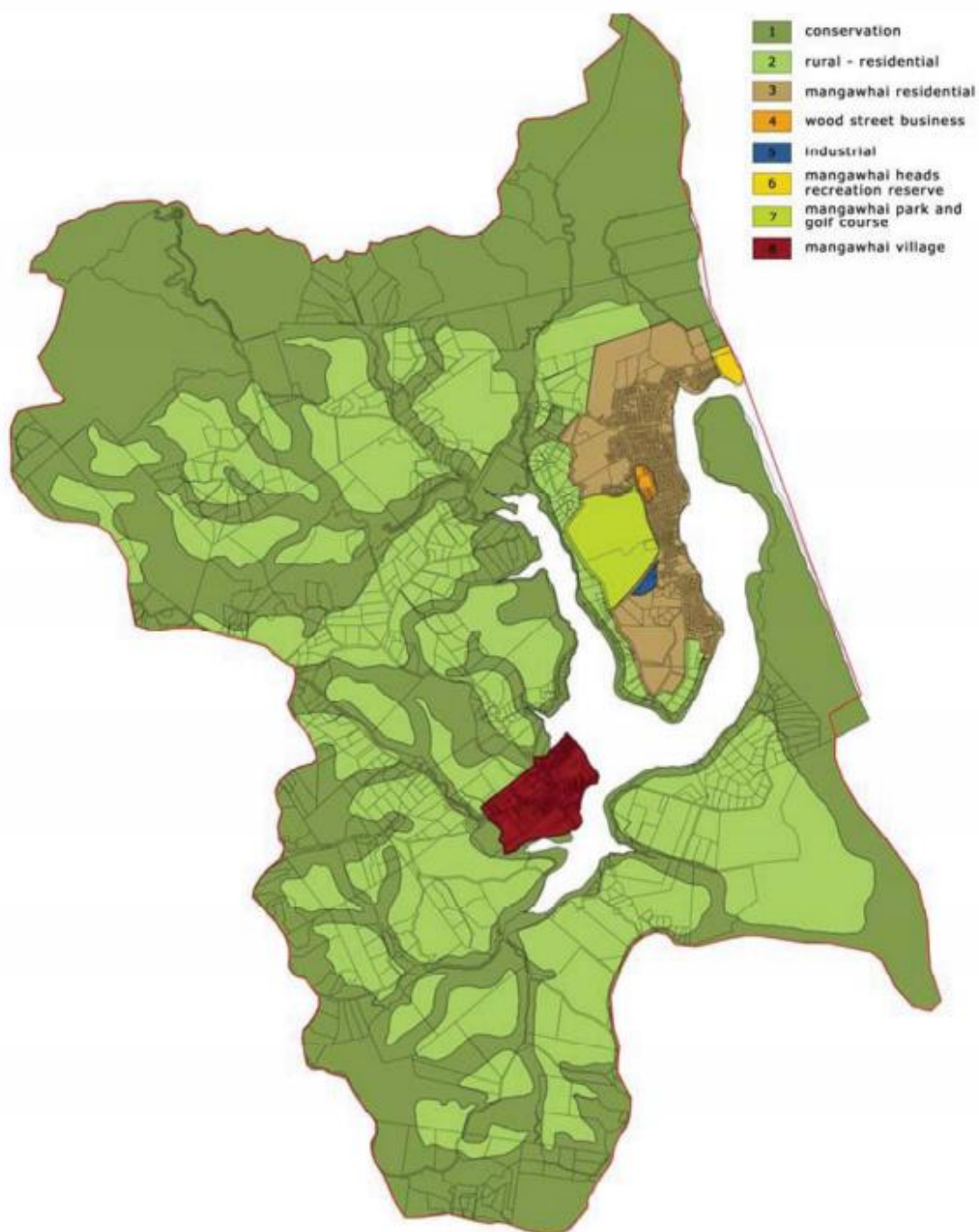
Kaipara District Council have previously undertaken structure planning for Mangawhai. The Mangawhai Structure Plan provides a means for the Kaipara District Council and Mangawhai communities to manage the effects of growth. This strategic framework provides guidance on development decisions, infrastructural management and environmental matters for Mangawhai over the next 20 years.

The Structure Plan identifies a series of growth management and development principles which are represented as eight Policy Areas. These Policy Areas suggest the character of any future development and provide recommended design principles for properties and wider areas within the Policy Area.

An overview map of the Policy Areas in Mangawhai from the Structure Plan is shown in Figure 6. It is noted that the Structure Plan was developed in 2005 and Policy Areas / growth areas have been reflected in the KDC Operative District Plan (2013).

Figure 6: Mangawhai Structure Plan Policy Areas²

Figure 3A-1: Mangawhai Structure Plan - Policy Areas



(Source: Mangawhai Structure Plan)

Note 1: While the District Plan Maps reflect the Policy Areas in Figure 3A-1, the Policy Areas are not different zones under the District Plan.

² Mangawhai Structure Plan – Kaipara District Council (January 2005)

The following summarises the key potential future growth or development areas identified in the Mangawhai Structure Plan:

- **Policy Area 2: Rural – Residential (potential subdivision growth pressure areas)**
 - Cove Road – Mangawhai Heads Road
 - Estuary Edge and Waterfront
 - Lower Tara Road and Waipu Cove Road
 - Kaiwaka – Mangawhai Road and Upper Tara Road
 - Upper catchment
- **Policy Area 3: Mangawhai Residential**
 - Steady residential growth anticipated. Control residential infill through a carefully framed development process that seeks to maximise amenity
- **Policy Area 4: Wood Street**
 - To consolidate and enhance the identity of Wood Street as a commercial centre for Mangawhai
 - Enable flexible land use options to encourage a mixed-use development environment focussing on commercial, community services, residential, recreational, entertainment, retirement housing

5.4. Mangawhai Spatial Plan (2020)

A Spatial Plan for Mangawhai has been developed and adopted by Council which aims to guide the town's growth and development over the next 20 to 25 years. The Spatial Plan will provide a high-level 'spatial picture' of how Mangawhai could grow and will address the community's social, economic, and environmental needs, while responding to its local context.

The Spatial Plan envisages a cohesive Mangawhai community that:

- Respects its natural setting,
- Offers diverse and affordable living and working choices, and
- Celebrates its iwi culture, its heritage, and embraces the future.

This vision supports the overall vision for Mangawhai set out in the Mangawhai Community Plan 2017 (MCP).

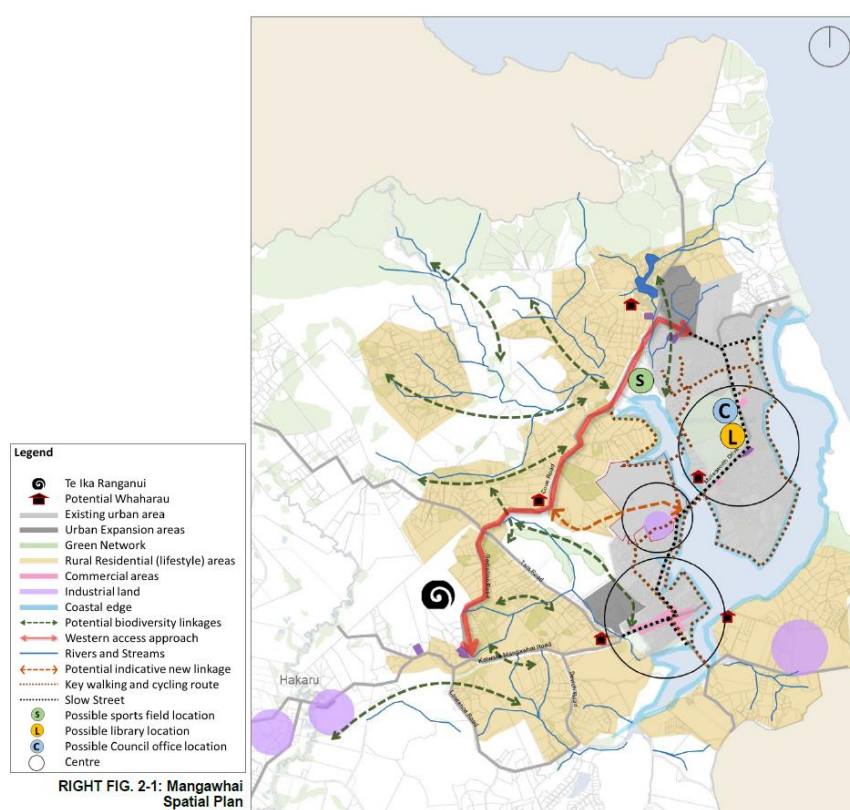
To achieve the vision and respond to the opportunities identified through the process, the Spatial Plan has developed seven themes, each with a clear objective. The themes are shown in the Figure 7.

Figure 7: Spatial Plan Themes

Natural environment	· Protect and enhance biodiversity links, waterways, and the coastal area.
Iwi and cultural	· Celebrate Māori culture and make local history visible.
Three Waters	· Provide efficient, clean infrastructure that will serve the community well into the future.
Living environment	· Direct growth outcomes which support community needs and housing choices.
Community	· Strengthen, enable and connect the local community through facilities and programmes.
Employment	· Support the local economy, and attract more visitors, entrepreneurs, and employment uses.
Transport	· Improve safe walking and cycling options, and manage vehicular traffic.

The Mangawhai Spatial Plan is shown in Figure 8. It aims to achieve the key vision considering the seven themes identified.

Figure 8: Mangawhai Spatial Plan³



³ Mangawhai Spatial Plan, Kaipara District Council (Draft 15 May 2020)

The opportunities identified through the Spatial Plan process are shown in Figure 9, which are based on the seven themes identified.

Figure 9: Mangawhai Spatial Plan opportunities⁴



5.5. Key Land Use Sensitivities

Based on the above the following areas have been identified as key areas adjacent to the transport network that will need careful consideration.

These include

- Mangawhai Village including the area around Moir Street and Molesworth Drive
- Mangawhai Heads town centre including the area around Wood Street
- Future centres around Mangawhai Centre

⁴ Mangawhai Spatial Plan, Kaipara District Council (Draft 15 May 2020)

6. NETWORK OPERATING FRAMEWORK DEVELOPMENT

A balanced transport network approach effectively caters for the needs of different road user groups and considers how each group will use the network. The Mangawhai area encompasses both permanent residential dwellings and non-permanent dwellings, either through holiday homes or tourist visitors. These areas generate high demands for pedestrian and cyclist movements as well as having many camper vans and tourist vehicles on the road network, in addition to the usual resident travel patterns.

This NOF takes a balanced and integrated approach to support Master Planning, land use and mode prioritisation in Mangawhai.

6.1. Operating Framework Horizon

The Network Operating Framework horizon considers a future aspirational transport network based on population and land use growth assumptions. This acknowledges potential changes in land use and growth in the future and thus promotes forward thinking for network planning, not limiting the transport network to current challenges only. This horizon was considered when developing the strategic transport networks to understand how stakeholders aspire to operate the network. The time horizon reflects a step towards achieving Mangawhai's long-term aspirations for its transport network.

Stakeholders agreed a **short-term aspiration (5 – 10years)** for the transport network and a **final aspiration (10+ years)** for land use was appropriate given the expected increase in population, development, and pressures on the network.

The short-term timeframe ensures that we are capturing the existing modal conflicts.

The 20-year consideration allows the NOF to consider the longer-term growth possibilities and resulting changes in land use and rate of development (for residential and commercial) and any planned future development.

7. STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES AND PRINCIPLES

The Strategic Objectives and Principles set the strategic context and guide the development of the Strategic Network and the overall NOF. These were established based on existing policy and planning goals and visions and stakeholder knowledge.

The Strategic Objectives and Principles were developed and refined for each mode through a collaborative process with key stakeholders during Workshop 1. From workshop discussions, the overarching objectives, and principles for the overall Mangawhai transport system were agreed, which aspired for a transport system that:

- Integrates with the growth aspirations of the area
- Improves connectivity to and through Mangawhai
- Provides a safe and resilient detour route for State Highway 1
- Provides a safe slow speed environment within Mangawhai that creates attractive environment for pedestrians and cyclists
- Enables active modes to be the mode of choice within Mangawhai area

Objective	How this objective is relevant to Mangawhai
Integrates with the growth aspirations of the area	<p>Mangawhai is expected to experience significant levels of growth in the future years. Careful and sensitive consideration of how the road network interfaces and relates to the surrounding road network will need to be part of network planning in the area.</p> <p>Consideration of the existing town centres in Mangawhai Heads, Wood Street and Mangawhai Village will be needed, and also how these centres integrate with new centres such as Mangawhai Central.</p>
Improves connectivity to and through Mangawhai	<p>The network needs to deliver a network that enables connections to Mangawhai and through the urban extents, connecting Mangawhai Heads with Mangawhai, key land uses including recreational spaces such as the beach, schools and employment opportunities and residential areas.</p>
Provides a safe and resilient detour route for State Highway 1	<p>The network needs to provide safe and resilient routes that support detours from the State Highway, however these routes need to also acknowledge the existing and future urban environment in Mangawhai and recognise the slower speed environment desired on the corridors within Mangawhai.</p>
Provides a safe slow speed environment within Mangawhai that creates attractive environment for pedestrians and cyclists	<p>Part of the existing and future aspirations for the Mangawhai area include fostering an environment that encourages residents and visitors to travel by foot and by bike. To support this, the network needs to provide a safe and slow environment along key corridors connecting land use activities.</p>

Enables active modes to be the mode of choice within Mangawhai area

Connected to the above objective, to enable active modes to be the mode of choice, walking and cycling needs to be seen as easy, safe and along routes that provide direct connections to the desired destinations.

With these transport system objectives in mind, Waka Kotahi's One Network Road Classification (ONRC) and One Network Framework (ONF) were used to consider people, place and function of roads for each transport mode, and a strategic objective and network principle was identified for each mode.

In addition to this, the future land use outcomes are considered in conjunction with these objectives, integrating land use and transport objectives.

The Strategic Objectives and Principles support the outcomes of the Mangawhai Spatial Plan, the Mangawhai Community Plan, and regional documents such as the Kaipara Walking and Cycling Strategy and thus frame the transport aspirations of Kaipara District Council, Communities, and key Stakeholders for Mangawhai.

The following sections summarise the key outputs from stakeholder discussions and the resulting Strategic Objectives and Principles for each mode.

7.1. Pedestrians

Key considerations from stakeholder discussions include:

- Safe and secure pedestrian network that is accessible for all users
- Pedestrian prioritisation within village centres
- Importance of connectivity between source and key destinations and between village centres, schools, community facilities and recreational and residential areas
- Coastal walkway and track network provide range of options for less direct routes mainly for recreational purposes
- Linkage to existing walking tracks / trails
- Considerations for a shared path

Strategic Objective:

A safe network that ensures walking for all short local trips is easy and preferable to private vehicle travel within Mangawhai Heads, Mangawhai Village, Mangawhai Beach and Mangawhai Beach School.



Principles:

Primary Network

Provide safe and secure connections prioritising pedestrians between Mangawhai Beach School, three main village centres, Mangawhai Beach and Mangawhai Community Centre

Secondary Network

Provide linkages to primary routes from residential and community areas and community recreational facilities whilst making the most of the coastal and natural amenity.

7.2. Cyclists

The themes discussed were similar to the pedestrian modes. Key considerations from stakeholder discussions include:

- Safe and secure cycling network that is accessible for all users
- Cyclist prioritisation and direct links to encourage both commuting and tourist movement
- Importance of connectivity between source and destination and between village centres, schools, community facilities and residential areas as well as connecting to the wider Mangawhai area
- Coastal track network provides a range of options for less direct routes mainly for recreational purposes
- Catering for tourism and recreation with links to key destinations and attractions as well as connections to the existing cycling strategic network
- Emphasis on the need for safe crossing infrastructure for cyclists

Strategic Objective:

A prioritised network that supports cycling trips as the preferred mode of travel for trips within the wider Mangawhai area



Principles:

Primary Network

Provide direct, safe and prioritised routes between the three village centres.

Secondary pedestrian routes

Provide linkages to primary routes from residential and community areas and community recreational facilities

7.3. Public Transport

Key considerations from stakeholder discussions include:

- Summer bus services to support tourist activities
- Weekly bus services (such as weekly shopper type services) to support communities
- Connection between Mangawhai Village and Mangawhai Heads and to the wider Mangawhai area
- Bus routes / bus infrastructure linked into walking and cycling networks
- School buses and routes
- Link to Kaiwaka Train Station

Strategic Objective:

Provide a network that connects well with the wider region (and beyond) and to the key village centres.



Principles:

Primary Network

Routes that provide connection between village centres and the wider region.

Secondary pedestrian routes

Local routes that enable movement of people from residential areas to village centres and summer peak requirements.

7.4. Freight

Key considerations from stakeholder discussions include:

- Viable alternative routes that are safe and resilient and avoid going through village centres (additional commentary on this is provided in Section 7.3 General Traffic)
- Minimise disruption on active modes and general traffic within village centres
- Village centre serviced by smaller commercial vehicles

Strategic Objective:

Promote freight movement that provides access to village centres but that does not degrade the amenity of these villages.



Principles:

Primary Network

Provide routes that avoid key land use areas of high amenity or community value

Secondary pedestrian routes

Provide connections linking primary routes and commercial and industrial centres

7.5. General Traffic

Key considerations from stakeholder discussions include:

- Current car dominance is not the preferred future for Mangawhai
- Slow speed routes within key village areas
- Viable alternative routes for SH closures that avoid going through key village areas
- Direct and safe routes to destinations
- Urbanised road environment to encourage slow speeds
- Importance of maintaining coastal environment
- Alternative route for State Highway 1

Workshop discussions recognised that the general traffic transport network may be represented as both a current scenario and a future scenario. The current scenario better portrays the existing traffic conflicts on the network and the future scenario conveys the preferred traffic network that we want to achieve. In addition, the general traffic transport network has been developed based on three principles (as opposed to two): Strategic, Primary and Secondary. This reflects the level of granularity required to represent and prioritise the varying types and levels of general traffic movements through a network.

Key discussions with stakeholders acknowledged that the Mangawhai general traffic and freight network plays a key supporting role for the State Highway network providing a detour route during maintenance or unplanned incidents on the state highway network.

This role is expected to increase in the future with planned investment including safety works on the State Highway network. This increased reliance on the detour route is expected to impact on the aspirations for slower, more active mode attractive corridors within Mangawhai and the stakeholders have identified that a more appropriate detour route that minimises these conflicts will be necessary in the future.

Strategic Objective:

Promote a slow speed general traffic network that compliments other modes and provides safe and predictable access whilst ensuring high community amenity in the three village areas.

Principles:



Strategic Network

Provide inter-regional (and detour) route that avoids key village areas where possible and allows residents to get to their homes safely and efficiently

Primary Network

Provide slow speed routes that support key land use areas of high amenity or community value

Secondary Network

Provide connections linking primary routes and commercial and industrial centres

8. MULTI-MODAL NETWORK PRIORITISATION

A Network Operating Framework recognises the various needs of all transport and road users and the strategic intent for the network. The outcome sought from a Network Operating Framework is an effective multi-modal network, and this is achieved through the development of a strategic transport network that defines user priority by mode, place, and time of day.

The following tables summarise the aspirational strategic transport network for each road user group, which were developed based the Strategic Objectives and Principles defined in Section 7.

Figure 10 below is the combined map showing the strategic transport network for all modes. Individual maps are included in **Appendix B**.

Figure 10: Combined strategic transport network

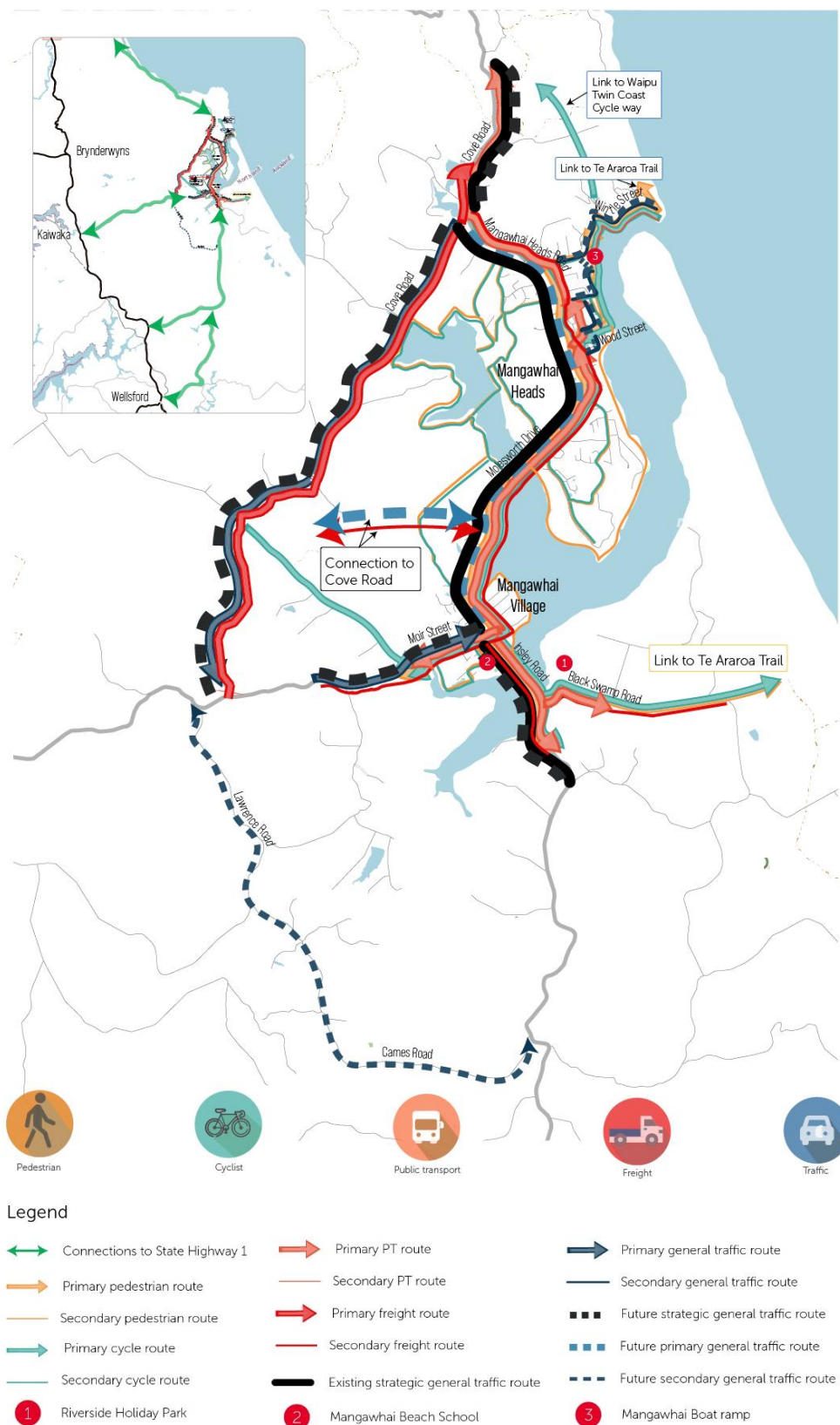


Table 1: Summary of the strategic transport network by road user group

Road user group	Primary Routes	Secondary Routes
<p>Pedestrians</p> <p><u>Strategic Objective:</u></p> <p>A safe network that ensures walking for all short local trips is easy and preferable to private vehicle travel within Mangawhai Heads, Mangawhai Village, Mangawhai Beach and Mangawhai Beach School.</p>	<p><u>Primary Network:</u></p> <p>Provide safe and secure connections prioritising pedestrians between Mangawhai Beach School, three main village centres, Mangawhai Beach and Mangawhai Community Centre</p> <p><u>Primary routes include:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Molesworth Drive and Moir Street • Mangawhai Heads Road (from Mangawhai Heads Holiday Park to Jack Boyd Drive) • Insley Street and Tomarata Road • Wood Street • Wintle Street • Link to Te Araroa Trail • New connections / trails along the coast 	<p><u>Secondary Network:</u></p> <p>Provide linkages to primary routes from residential and community areas and community recreational facilities whilst making the most of the coastal and natural amenity.</p> <p><u>Secondary routes include:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Black Swamp Road • Kedge Drive • North Avenue and Robert Street • Jack Boyd Drive • Thelma Road • Old Waipu Road • Mangawhai Heads Road (between Jack Boyd Road and Cove Road) • Estuary Drive and Moir Point Road • New connections / trails along the coast
<p>Cyclists</p> <p><u>Strategic Objective:</u></p> <p>A prioritised network that supports cycling trips as the preferred mode of travel for trips within the wider Mangawhai area</p>	<p><u>Primary Network:</u></p> <p>Provide direct, safe, and prioritised routes between the three village centres and key destinations including school and beach</p> <p><u>Primary routes include:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kaiwaka-Mangawhai Road (between Moir Street and Hakaru) • Tara Road • Insley Road and Tomarata Road • Black Swamp Road • Molesworth Drive (between Moir Street and Wood Street) and Moir Street 	<p><u>Secondary Network:</u></p> <p>Provide linkages to primary routes from residential and community areas and community recreational facilities</p> <p><u>Secondary routes include:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mangawhai Heads Road • Kedge Drive • Estuary Drive and Moir Point Road • North Avenue and Robert Street • Jack Boyd Drive • Thelma Road • Old Waipu Road

Road user group	Primary Routes	Secondary Routes
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wood Street Wintle Street Link to Waipu (Twin Coast Cycleway link) Future strategic connection to Maungaturoto New connections / trails along the coast 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mangawhai Heads Road (between Jack Boyd Road and Cove Road) New connections / trails along the coast
Public Transport	<p><u>Primary Network:</u></p> <p>Routes that provide connection between village centres and the wider region.</p> <p><u>Primary routes include:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Molesworth Drive and Moir Street Loop route to/from Molesworth Drive via Wood Street, Margaret Street, Holiday Crescent and North Avenue Insley Street, Tomarata Road and Black Swamp Road (from Insley Street to Riverside Holiday Park) Kaiwaka-Mangawhai Road Mangawhai Heads Road (from Molesworth Drive to Cove Road) and Cove Road (north of Mangawhai Heads Road) 	<p><u>Secondary Network:</u></p> <p>Local routes that enable movement of people from residential areas to village centres and summer peak requirements.</p> <p><u>Secondary routes include:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mangawhai Heads Road (east of Molesworth Drive) and Wintle Street State Highway 1 (between Settlement Road and State Highway 12)
Freight	<p><u>Primary Network:</u></p> <p>Provide routes that avoid key land use areas of high amenity or community value <u>and provide for State Highway detours</u></p> <p><u>Primary routes include:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kaiwaka-Mangawhai Road (between Kaiwaka and Garbolino Road) Garbolino Road and Cove Road 	<p><u>Secondary Network:</u></p> <p>Provide connections linking primary routes and commercial and industrial centres</p> <p><u>Secondary routes include:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kaiwaka-Mangawhai Road (east of Garbolino Road) Moir Street, Molesworth Drive and Mangawhai Heads Road (west of Molesworth Drive) Insley Street and Tomarata Road Black Swamp Road

Road user group	Primary Routes	Secondary Routes
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Future connection between Molesworth Drive and Cove Road through Mangawhai Central.

As noted previously, for the General Traffic road user group, the strategic transport network has been developed for a current scenario and future (preferred) scenario based on three principles: Strategic, Primary and Secondary.

Table 2: Summary of the strategic transport map for General Traffic

Road user group	Strategic Routes	Primary Routes	Secondary Routes
	<u>Strategic routes include:</u>	<u>Primary routes include:</u>	<u>Secondary routes include:</u>
General Traffic (current situation)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cove Road (north of Mangawhai Heads Road) Mangawhai Heads Road (between Cove Road and Molesworth Drive) Molesworth Drive Insley Road and Tomarata Road 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kaiwaka-Mangawhai Road and Moir Street Garbolino Road and Cove Road 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Findlay Street and Ellen Street Wood Street and Robert Street North Avenue Mangawhai Heads Road (between Molesworth Drive and Wintle Street) and Wintle Street
General Traffic (future situation)	<u>Strategic Network:</u> Provide inter-regional (and detour) route that avoids key village areas where possible and allows residents to get to their homes safely and efficiently <u>Strategic routes include:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kaiwaka-Mangawhai Road and Moir Street Garbolino Road and Cove Road 	<u>Primary Network:</u> Provide slow speed routes that support key land use areas of high amenity or community value <u>Primary routes include:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mangawhai Heads Road (between Cove Road and Molesworth Drive) Molesworth Drive 	<u>Secondary Network:</u> Provide connections linking primary routes and commercial and industrial centres <u>Secondary routes include:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Findlay Street and Ellen Street Wood Street and Robert Street North Avenue Cames Road and Lawrence Road

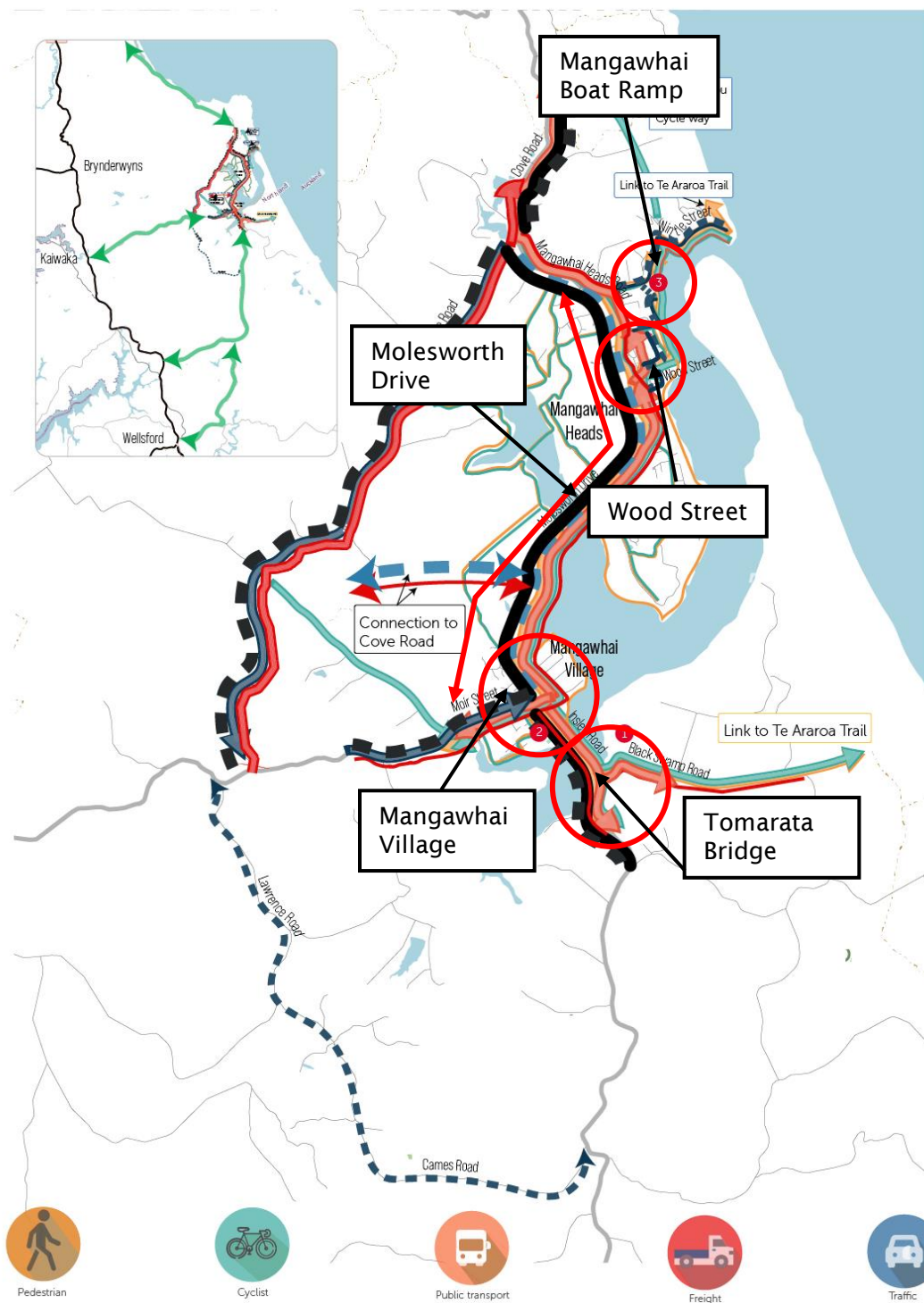
ensuring high community amenity in the three village areas.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tara Road • Insley Road and Tomarata Road 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New connection between Molesworth Drive and Cove Road 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mangawhai Heads Road (between Molesworth Drive and Wintle Street) and Wintle Street • New connection between Mangawhai Heads Road and North Avenue (boat ramp access)
---	--	---	--

9. MODAL PRIORITY CONFLICTS AND CRITICAL NETWORK CAPABILITIES

Modal conflicts occur when there are several modes competing for priority at a single location. Using the strategic transport maps created earlier in the process and existing understanding of the unique environments in Mangawhai, stakeholders were able to identify areas where modal conflicts would occur in the future. Figure 11 shows the location of potential future conflict points.

The Network Operating Framework is not expected to resolve modal conflict; however, the following sections discuss potential opportunities to minimise or relieve competing demands and also provides some information on the key interdependencies in the provision of an integrated transport network for Mangawhai.

Figure 11: Potential modal conflict points



9.1. Wood Street

Currently, North Avenue is the main link to the Mangawhai boat ramp. However, with a petrol station, four square and fishing supplies located on Wood Street, this has become a regularly frequented route by those travelling to the boat ramp. This is also a primary pedestrian and cycle route, and as such this has generated modal conflict on Wood Street, impacting on the safety of pedestrians and cyclists. Wood Street is also currently congested during peak summer holiday seasons and will continue to attract vehicles without mechanisms to encourage traffic on alternative routes.

The stakeholders identified a desire to relieve traffic congestion and prioritise active modes in the Wood Street village. The innovating streets funding from Waka Kotahi allowed for some interim solutions to be trialled and final long-term outcomes for Wood Street identified. These include a revitalised people friendly area where patrons can dine in open air settings, a one way system to relieve congestion, an extra car parking area behind the shopping complex with connection to this from Wood Street through the old fire station property and upgraded existing as well as new walking and cycling facilities. These are included in the 2021-31 LTP. Additionally, an extra connection between Mangawhai Heads Road and Alamar Crescent that provides for additional parking and easing boat ramp congestion during the busy summer months has been identified and planned in the 2021-31 LTP. These improvements are all aimed to divert traffic from Wood Street, therefore enabling active modes to be prioritised on this road.

9.2. Mangawhai Boat Ramp

Mangawhai boat ramp attracts active modes and vehicles that generate competing demands for access, leading to delays especially during peak holiday seasons. There needs to be higher levels of consideration for active modes on sections of road (such as North Avenue and Robert Street) leading to the boat ramp. Constraints such as limited access roads and location of the gas station make future aspirations to satisfactorily provide for both active modes and general traffic challenging. However, as noted previously, the new secondary traffic route between Mangawhai Heads Road and North Avenue is likely to cater for general traffic, therefore enabling active modes to be prioritised on other roads leading to the boat ramp.

9.3. Molesworth Drive

Molesworth Drive is the main connection between Mangawhai Village and Mangawhai Heads. It is the only existing route providing a direct north-south link, therefore resulting in conflicting demand between all modes. This route is currently a primary walking and cycling route, primary public transport route, strategic general traffic route and a primary freight route. Given Molesworth Drive is a critical connection, with adjacent land uses being both residential and commercial, modal conflict is unavoidable, however can be relieved to an extent.

The future general traffic strategic transport network indicates Garbolino Road, Tara Road and Cove Road as the Strategic General Traffic Route as such reducing the emphasis placed on the general traffic on Molesworth Drive (which will become the Primary General Traffic Route). Molesworth Drive is intended to become a 'slow street' route and with slow speed interventions vehicles travelling through Mangawhai will be encouraged to utilise Garbolino Road, Tara Road and Cove Road. Further detail on this route is provided in Section 9.5. Slow speed interventions on Molesworth Drive are also likely to divert through freight traffic

onto Cove Road. Further, the stakeholders considered limiting Molesworth Drive to only small commercial freight trucks which could reduce freight traffic and provide a safer environment for active modes.

The Mangawhai Shared Path Connections Options Report proposes a shared walking and cycling path on Molesworth Drive, which will ensure a safe and secure primary walking and cycling route. The 'slow street' environment and shared path infrastructure should promote active mode priority and safety by minimising conflict with vehicles (including buses) in the way of reducing both traffic volumes and speeds along Molesworth Drive.

9.4. Mangawhai Village (Molesworth Drive / Moir Street / Insley Street area)

Mangawhai Village is a dense residential catchment with community facilities, commercial businesses and schools located at its centre, while Insley Street is the main gateway into Mangawhai for vehicles travelling from the south. In this regard, Mangawhai Village prioritises both movement and access and therefore currently experiences many conflicting movements involving all modes. Molesworth Drive, Moir Street and Insley Street within Mangawhai Village are primary pedestrian and cycling, primary public transport, primary freight and strategic general traffic routes. The conflict is likely to continue or exacerbate with increasing traffic volumes until through traffic is encouraged to travel via Cove Road (future strategic general traffic route). Further, Mangawhai Village is a critical conflict point as all five modes intersect at the Insley Street / Moir Street intersection.

A shared walking and cycling paths are envisaged on Molesworth Drive, Moir Street and Insley Street within Mangawhai Village which minimises conflict between those using active modes and vehicles to help ensure a safe environment for vulnerable users. This is particularly important as Mangawhai Beach School and Mangawhai Kindergarten are accessed off Insley Street. In this regard, stakeholders emphasised the importance of safe crossing points, slow speed interventions and safe bus stop locations near the schools. Further, the primary public transport route through Mangawhai promotes travel via modes other than vehicular and assists school bus operations which specifically benefits this area.

The stakeholders agreed that the preferred outcome for Mangawhai Village is an environment that is less car-centric and the future strategic general traffic route (Garbolino Road, Cove Road and Tara Road) achieves this aspiration. However, it is not likely that all private vehicle use can be removed from Mangawhai Village given the land use and location. Notwithstanding this, the implementation of the strategic general traffic route is likely to reduce general traffic and freight traffic volumes, therefore relieving the modal conflict to some extent.

9.5. Kaiwaka Mangawhai Road and Cove Road

As identified in this NOF the general traffic and freight route in Mangawhai has a key interrelationship with the State Highway network. The ability to achieve the outcomes for roads internal to Mangawhai such as those mentioned above is contingent on the ability of Kaiwaka Mangawhai Road and Cove Road to provide a detour function for the State Highway.

In order to achieve this there are some key functional improvements that would be required to Kaiwaka Mangawhai Road and Cove Road including upgrades/strengthening to one-way bridges, Road Safety Improvements and Road Alignment/Geometry improvements.

This link is critical to achieving active mode objectives within the internal road network in Mangawhai – with the removal of through traffic this creates the opportunity to implement a slower, safer environment for pedestrians and cyclists.

This route provides an appropriate alternative SH1 detour route that links to the strategic direction of the State Highway PBC and, supports the strategic mode shift of the network while not compromising the local outcomes sought.

9.6. Tomarata Bridge/Cames Road

The Tomarata Bridge currently provides the main access to and from Mangawhai from the south. Given this the bridge is a key link for all modes entering and exiting the community, there is a degree of modal conflict in this corridor. This is further compounded due to the proximity of the corridor to the Mangawhai Village and the local school.

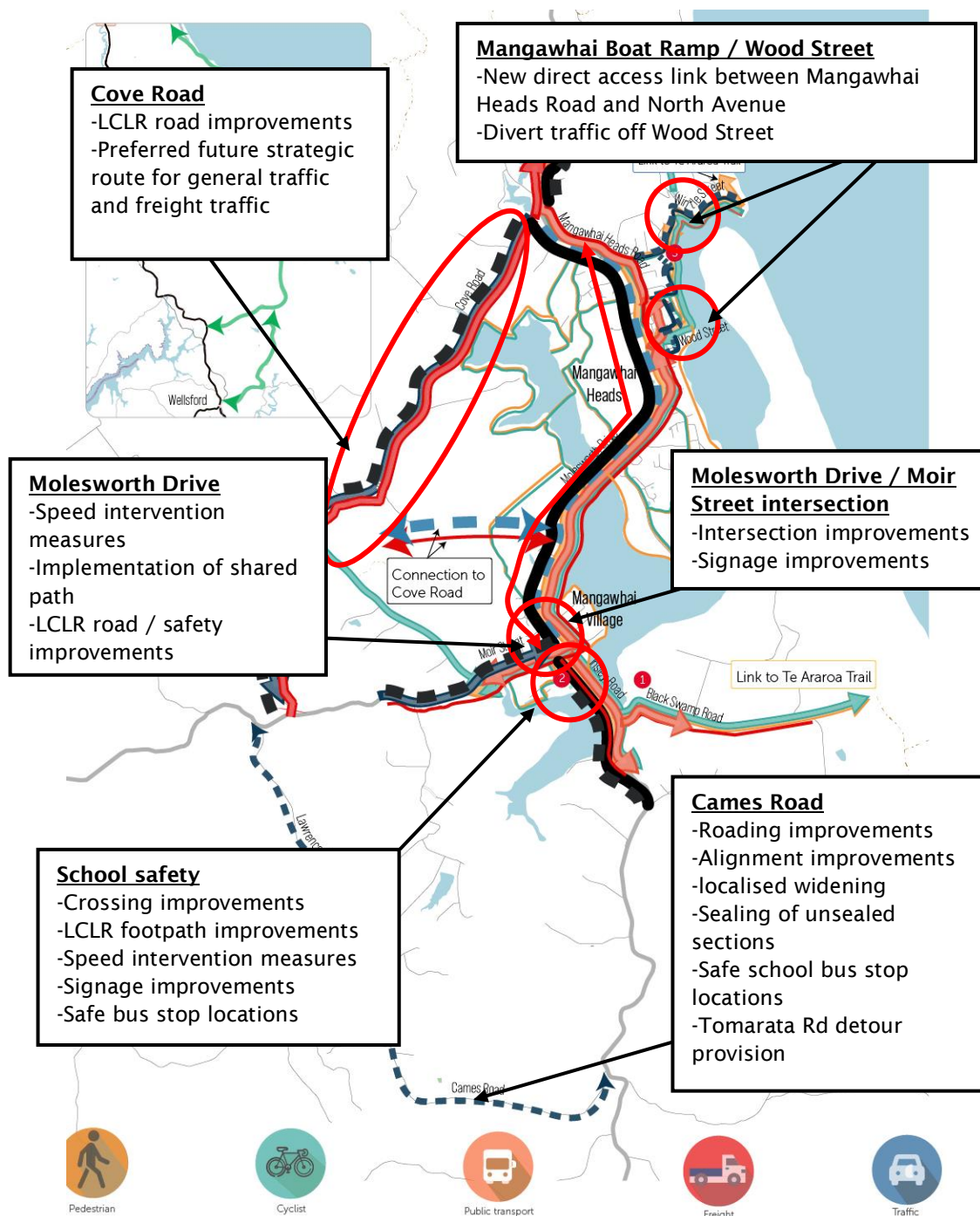
The Tomarata Bridge will require replacement within the next 10 to 15 years, as the bridge reaches the end of its lifespan. This replacement will result in significant access implications to Mangawhai from the south and associated detour routes utilised for State Highway 1.

An additional traffic route via Cames Road has been identified from the south to facilitate access to the Mangawhai area. This route provides additional resilience to the network and enables replacement, maintenance or unplanned incidents on this route to be managed.

9.7. Summary

Figure 12 below show the potential intervention solutions or opportunities that stakeholders raised to address modal conflict.

Figure 12: Indicative solutions / opportunities to address modal conflict



10. APPLICATION OF NETWORK OPERATING FRAMEWORK

10.1. Business Case Development

The development of this NOF was predicated on its ability to inform the strategic case and need for transport interventions in Mangawhai at a programme level to allow these projects to go straight to the SSBC phase.

To assist in this, during Workshop 2 several transport interventions were identified to address the conflict areas identified in the NOF. These are shown in Figure 12.

The NOF will form part of the strategic case and POE for these projects as they progress to an SSBC.

10.2. Network Operating Framework lifecycle

This NOF is a live document that can be refined to complement and support future changes in relevant policies, land use and the network. The NOF has been developed following collaborative stakeholder workshop sessions and therefore incorporates stakeholder input and workshop outcomes. While informing strategic planning in the future through Master Planning and Business Cases, this live NOF is an iterative approach that can be further refined to encompass the outcomes from Master Planning and Business Cases. The strategic transport network developed for the five modes may need to be altered in future stages, however this would be justified and informed accordingly.

10.3. Network Operating Plans

The Network Operating Framework can be used to guide the development of Network Operating Plans. These plans would generally be used for summer peak events, particularly during holiday seasons. The Network Operating Plans will predominantly assist in the development of traffic management plans on such event days for each of the modes, depending on the required closures. The traffic management plans could consider operations such as diverting traffic away from areas affected by summer peak events.

11. APPENDIX A

This section summarises the alignment with planning and policy documents at a national, regional and local level.

Planning / Policy Documents	Commentary
<p>Government Policy Statement on Land Transport Funding</p> <p>GPS 2021/2022 – 2030/2031</p>	<p>The work completed is directly aligned with the current GPS and will support safety, better travel options, improving freight connections and climate change outcomes. The purpose of the Mangawhai Network Operating Framework is to identify modal priorities for corridors in the Mangawhai transport network. This will enable contributions to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Safety – a significant contribution to safety in particular active modes. • Access (Transport Choice) – capable of making a significant contribution particular in walking and cycling mode choice, which in turn will support climate change objectives. • Freight connections – identification of the key routes to support efficient connections for freight and economic value.
<p>Northland Regional Land Transport Plan (RLTP)</p>	<p>The Northland RLTP identifies three key problems:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Difficult geology which restricts the development of sustainable, resilient infrastructure which results in lost opportunities for regional economic development (including tourism) • Some communities have poor access to employment education and recreational opportunities. The region better needs to prioritise available investment • Proportion of unsealed road – heavy vehicles are often required to use unsealed roads to access arterial routes which is negatively impacting on the amenity and health of our communities <p>It also lists its regional priorities as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Regional and national connectivity. 2. Economic and tourism development (including addressing perceptions of travel in the region). 3. Route resilience and security. 4. Addressing constraints due to topography and geography. 5. Future proofing and long-term planning. 6. Reducing the environmental effects of the transport network. 7. Greater alignment between central and local government. 8. Considering the needs of the transport disadvantaged (includes addressing social deprivation). 9. Improving transport choices in rural communities

The Mangawhai Network Operating Framework responds to the regional problems identified in the RLTP for Northland. In particular the priorities of connectivity, economic and tourism development, long term planning and improving transport choice.

By improving safety and movements by mode other than private vehicle in Mangawhai, this will support the economic wellbeing for residents of Mangawhai, reducing transport costs. Also progress towards the Te Araroa Trail will encourage tourism and economic opportunities for the Mangawhai community.

**Tai Tokerau Northland
Economic Action Plan
(NEAP)**

This plan was developed in response to a 2015 Growth Study that identified economic opportunities to grow investment, jobs and incomes in Te Tai Tokerau. Transport was identified as a key enabler for this strategy with a particular focus on connectivity. Connectivity is emerging as one of the key problems within Mangawhai to be further interrogated.

**Twin Coast Discovery
Route (TCDR) PBC and
DBC**

The seven NZTA TCDR DBCs are currently in development and there are clear overlaps with the location of Mangawhai and addressing problems such as safety and connectivity between communities and using the transport system to enable opportunities.

Mangawhai is a key connector for two cycling routes proposed within the Cycle Implementation plan (as part of the TCDR DBC's).

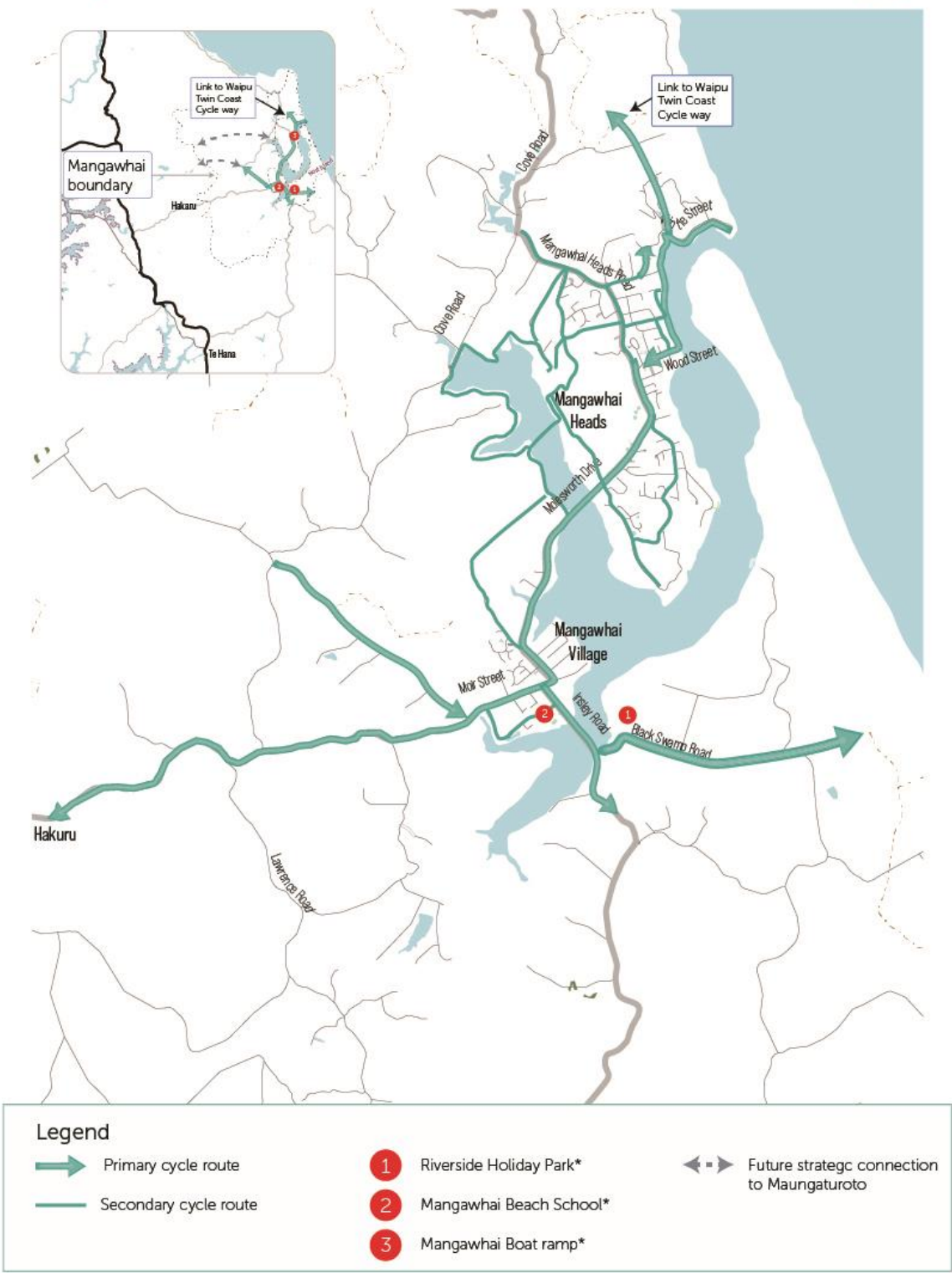
**Kaipara Long Term
Plan**

LTP 2018/2028

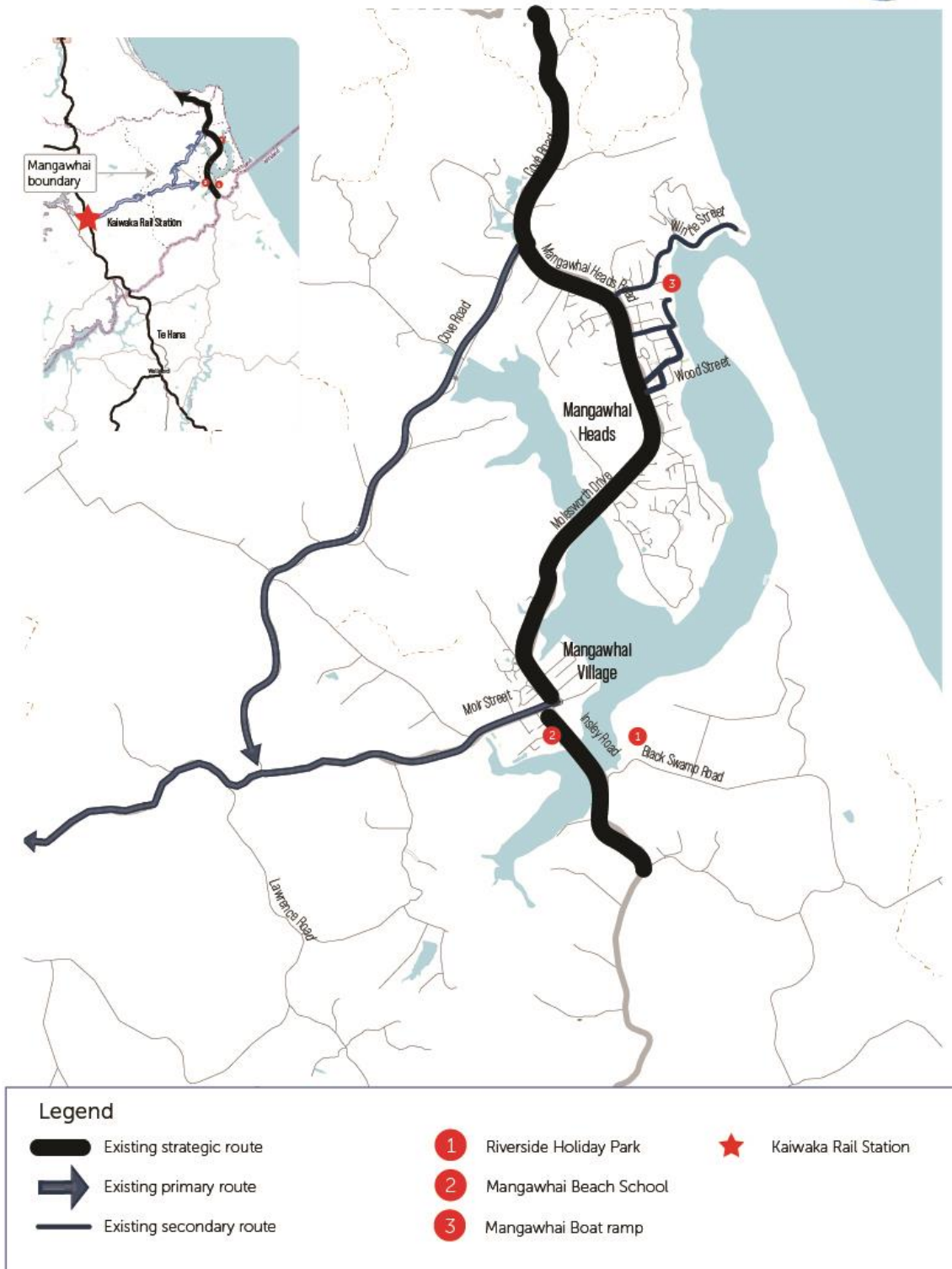
This plan sets out Council's financial strategy and position for the next 10 years for which an update to the plan is required every three years. This prioritisation work will directly inform the next LTP.

12. APPENDIX B

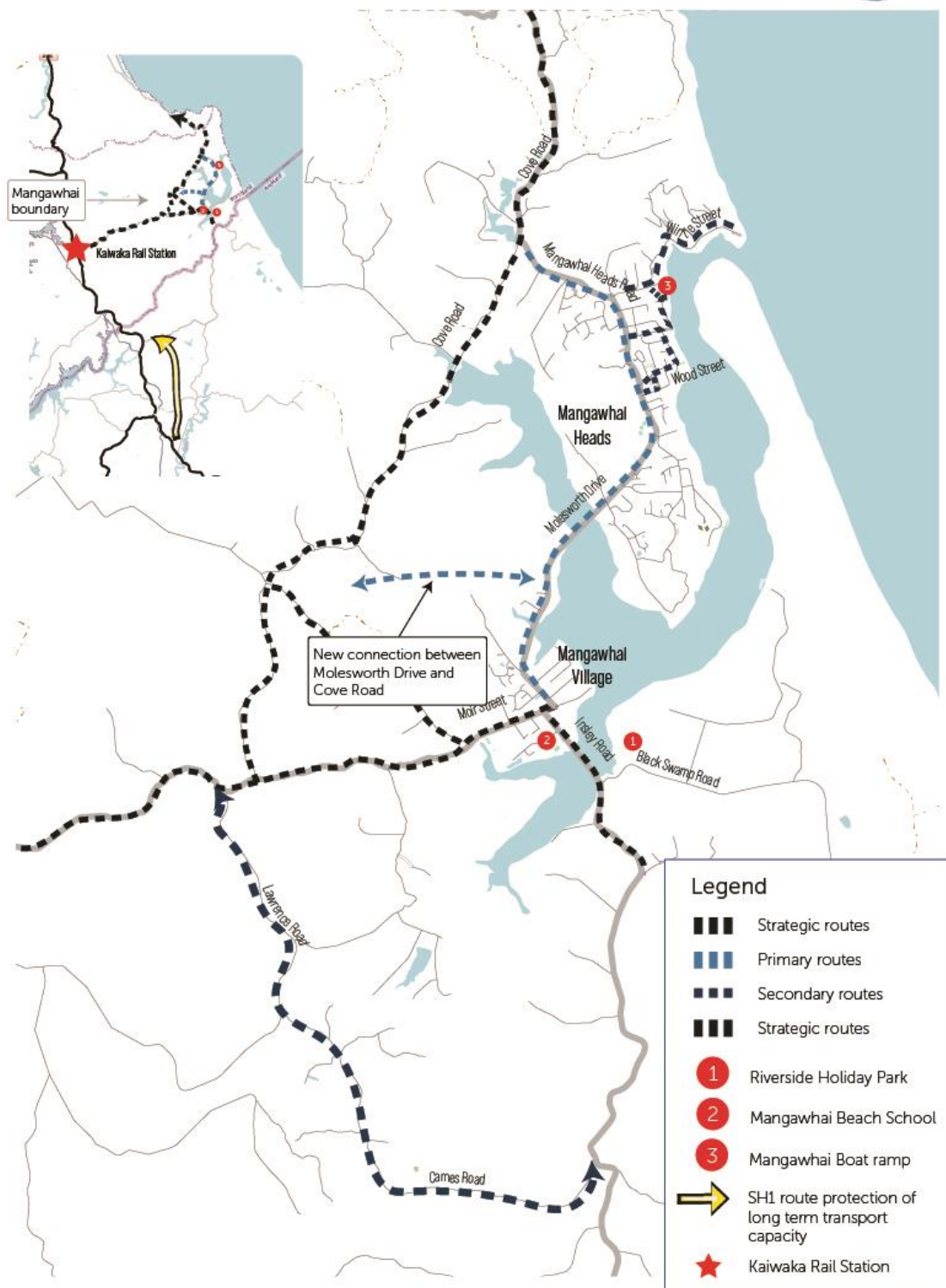
Cycle Network



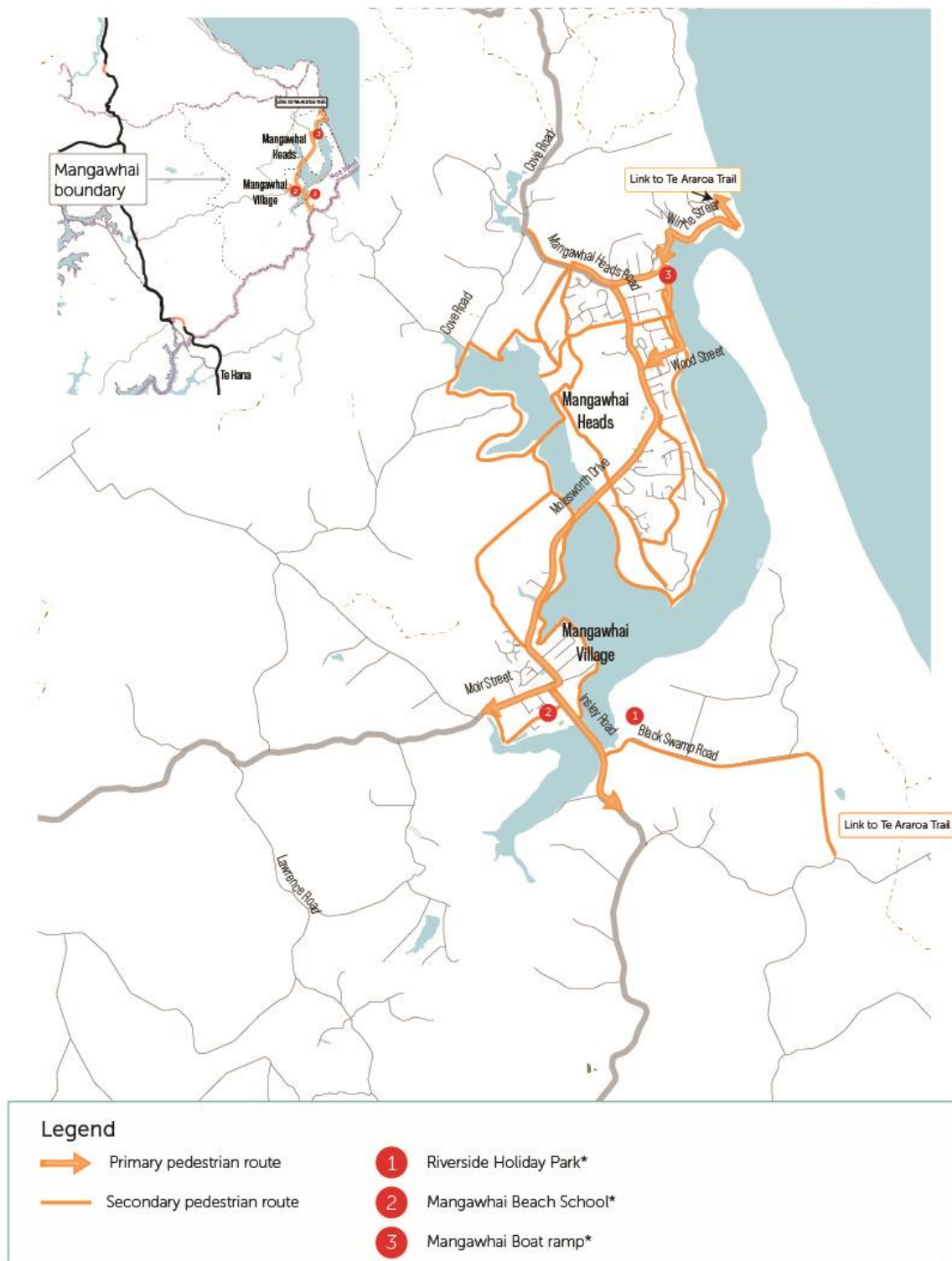
General Traffic (Current Situation)



General Traffic (Future Situation)



Pedestrian Network



Public Transport Network

